

**МІНІСТЕРСТВО ОСВІТИ І НАУКИ УКРАЇНИ  
КИЇВСЬКИЙ НАЦІОНАЛЬНИЙ ЛІНГВІСТИЧНИЙ УНІВЕРСИТЕТ**

**Г.І. Сташко, Н.Ю. Титова**

# **ВЖИВАЄМО АНГЛІЙСЬКУ - II**

**Навчальний посібник з англійської мови  
як другої іноземної  
для студентів II курсу факультету перекладознавства**

**Київ  
Видавничий центр КНЛУ  
2021**

УДК 811.111 (075.8)  
С 78

Друкується за рішенням вченої ради  
Київського національного лінгвістичного університету  
(протокол № 2 від 27 вересня 2021 р.)

**Рецензенти:** **Черхава О.О.** – доктор філологічних наук, доцент, завідувач кафедри англійської мови факультету перекладознавства Київського національного лінгвістичного університету;  
**Скрябіна В.Б.** – кандидат філологічних наук, доцент, доцент кафедри англійської філології і перекладу імені професора І.В. Корунця Київського національного лінгвістичного університету;  
**Шевелько К.О.** – кандидат педагогічних наук, доцент іноземної філології та перекладу Київського національного торговельно-економічного університету;  
**Трептов К.** – доктор філософії університету Іллінойса, головний редактор видавництва HISTRIA BOOKS.

**Сташко Г.І., Титова Н.Ю.**

**С 78 English-in-Use - II / Вживаємо англійську - II.** Навч. посібник з англійської мови як другої іноземної для студентів II курсу факультету перекладознавства. – К.: Видавничий центр КНЛУ, 2021. – 251 с.

**ISBN 978-966-638-348-1**

© Сташко Г., Титова Н., 2021  
© Вид. центр КНЛУ, 2021

## ПЕРЕДМОВА

Запропонований навчальний посібник розрахований на студентів другого курсу факультету перекладознавства.

Посібник має на меті розвиток мовленнєвих і перекладацьких навичок та вмінь з англійської мови як другої іноземної, подальший розвиток соціокультурної та мовної (фонетичної, граматичної та лексичної) компетенцій студентів.

Структурно посібник складається з двох модулів: “Пори року та погода” (“Seasons and Weather”), “Місто та транспорт” (“City and Transport”), кожен з підтемами, які розроблено у відповідності до змісту типової та робочої програм з дисципліни в умовах кредитно-модульної системи.

На початку кожного модуля подано перелік мовного матеріалу, що представлений тематичною лексикою, яка активізується протягом вивчення модуля. В кінці посібника подана теорія з граматичних явищ, які присутні в обох модулях.

У посібнику передбачено різноманітні вправи для розвитку вмінь аудіювання, читання, усного та писемного мовлення, перекладу. Завдання спрямовані як на роботу студентів в аудиторії під керівництвом викладача, так і позааудиторну самостійну роботу. Розроблено вправи для багаторівневої аудиторії, що допомагають студенту та викладачеві не лише сконцентруватись на базовому матеріалі, а й охопити складні лексико-граматичні явища.

Текстовий матеріал посібника відзначається автентичністю та інформативністю, а також базується на сучасних джерелах інформації, перелік яких подано наприкінці посібника.

Укладачі вдячні рецензентам посібника – О.О. Черхавій, доктору філологічних наук, професору, завідувачу кафедри англійської мови факультету перекладознавства Київського національного лінгвістичного університету, В.Б. Скрябіній, кандидату філологічних наук, доценту кафедри англійської філології і перекладу імені професора І.В. Корунця Київського національного лінгвістичного університету та К.О. Шевелько, кандидату педагогічних наук, доценту кафедри іноземної філології та перекладу Київського національного торговельно-економічного університету за ретельний фаховий аналіз лінгвістичних та методичних властивостей посібника.

# MODULE ONE: SEASONS AND WEATHER

## SECTION I: SEASONS AND WEATHER. NATURAL PHENOMENA

### GRAMMAR:

- The Present Perfect Tense
- The Present Perfect Continuous Tense

### Vocabulary

Season	Пора Року
winter	зима
• <i>severe</i> ~	• <i>сувора</i> ~
• <i>mild</i> ~	• <i>м'яка</i> ~
spring	весна
summer	літо
• <i>Indian summer / Saint Martin's</i> ~	• <i>бабине</i> ~
autumn / fall ( <i>AmE</i> )	осінь

Climate	Клімат
continental	континентальний
damp / wet	вологий
dry	сухий
hot	спекотний
insular	острівний
mild	м'який
moderate / temperate	помірний
subtropical	субтропічний
tropical	тропічний

<i>What's the Weather like Today?</i>	<i>Яка Сьогодні Погода?</i>
<b>Opinion Adjectives about Good Weather</b>	<b>Суб'єктивна Оцінка Гарної Погоди</b>
beautiful / fine / good / nice	гарна
clear / fair	ясна
favourable	сприятлива
gorgeous	розкішна
great / marvelous	чудова
lovely / terrific / wonderful	прекрасна
pleasant	приємна

• <i>to be too good to last</i>	• бути занадто доброю, щоб продовжуватися
a spell	короткий проміжок часу, період
• <i>to be in a ~ of fine weather</i>	• мати короткий період гарної погоди
<b>Opinion Adjectives about Bad Weather</b>	<b>Суб'єктивна Оцінка Поганої Погоди</b>
abominable / rotten / wretched	огидна
dull / dismal	похмура
bad / miserable	погана
foul / stormy	вітряна, буряна
awful / beastly / terrible	жахлива
lousy / nasty	паскудна, паршива
unfavourable	несприятлива
unpleasant	неприємна
• <i>to leave much to be desired</i>	• залишити бажати кращого
• <i>to go from bad to worse</i>	• ставати дедалі поганішою
• <i>to be in a spell of bad weather</i>	• мати короткий період поганої погоди
<b>Fact Adjectives about Weather</b>	<b>Об'єктивна Оцінка Погоди</b>
hot	спекотна
stuffy	важка, душна
sunny	сонячна
warm	тепла
mild	м'яка, тепла (коли зазвичай холодно)
sultry	надзвичайно спекотна
arid	посушлива
dry	суха
cold	холодна
• <i>bitterly cold</i>	• жахливо холодна
• <i>How bitterly cold it is!</i>	• Як зимно!
• <i>catch-cold</i>	• така холодна, що легко захворіти
• <i>to be cold</i>	• змерзнути
• <i>to be chilled to the bones</i>	• замерзнути до кісток
• <i>to be numb</i>	• залякнуту, задубіти
• <i>to chatter with cold</i>	• стукотіти від холоду (про зуби)
• <i>to tremble with cold</i>	• тремтіти від холоду
cool / chilly	прохолодна
freezing	дуже холодна, морозна

frosty / nippy	морозна
icy	крижана
snowy	сніжна
calm / windless	спокійна, безвітряна
windy / rough	вітряна
blustery / blustering	бурхлива, з сильним вітром
cloudy	хмарна
damp / humid / wet / moist	волога
foggy	туманна
hazy	імліста
misty	трохи туманна (як серпанок)
rainy	дощова
smoggy	туманна (з димом та кіптявою)
steady / certain / settled / unchangeable	постійна, незмінна
catching / unsteady / uncertain / unsettled / changeable	нестійка, мінлива
<b>The Air</b>	<b>Повітря</b>
close / oppressive	задушливе, важке
crisp	свіже, що бадьорить
damp / humid / moist / wet	вологе
dust / dusty	пил / пильне, запилене
fragrant	ароматне, запашне
fresh	свіже
frosty	морозне
stifling / suffocating	задушливе
atmospheric pressure	атмосферний тиск
<b>Temperature</b>	<b>Температура</b>
average	середня
falling / going down / decreasing / dropping	та, що падає; падаюча
• <i>a drop in temperature</i>	• <i>зниження температури</i>
rising / going up / increasing	та, що підіймається; зростаюча
• <i>a rise in temperature</i>	• <i>підвищення температури</i>
high	висока
low	низька
• <i>the highest / lowest day (night) temperature</i>	• <i>найвища / найнижча температура вдень (вночі)</i>
• <i>fluctuations in temperature</i>	• <i>коливання температури</i>
a thermometer	термометр, градусник

a degree	градус
•5 degrees Celsius / Fahrenheit	•5 градусів за Цельсієм/Фаренгейтом
•5 degrees <i>above</i> zero	•5 градусів вище нуля
•5 degrees <i>below</i> zero	•5 градусів нижче нуля

<b>The Sky</b>	<b>Небо</b>
blue	блакитне
clear	ясне
cloudless	безхмарне
cloudy	хмарне
dark	темне
grey	сіре
leaden	свинцеве
overcast ( <i>with clouds</i> )	затягнуте (хмарами)
starlit	вкрите зірками
a cloud	хмара
•a nasty-looking ~	•страшна ~
•variable / intermittent clouds	•мінлива хмарність, хмарність з проясненнями

<b>The Sun</b>	<b>Сонце</b>
blazing	яскраво палюче
boiling	пекуче (негативно)
bright	яскраве
hot	спекотне
scorching	пекуче
sultry	палюче
wintry	зимове
a sunbeam / a sunray	сонячний промінь
sunlight / sunshine	сонячне світло
sunrise	схід сонця
sunset	захід сонця
dawn	світанок, ранкова зоря
twilight / dusk	сутінки, присмерки; напівтемрява
heat	спека
a drought	засуха
sunny / bright periods	прояснення
•to glitter <i>in the sun</i>	•блищати, блискати на сонці
•to bask <i>in the sun</i>	•грітися; насолоджуватися теплом
•to bathe <i>in the sun</i>	•приймати сонячні ванни, загоряти

<b>Snow</b>	<b>Сніг</b>
a snowdrift / a snowbank	кучугура, сніговий замет
• <i>to be half a meter deep</i>	• <i>бути півметра вглиб</i>
a snowfall	снігопад
• <i>a heavy ~</i>	• <i>сильний ~</i>
a snowstorm / a blizzard	хуртовина, сніжна буря
a snowflake	сніжинка
a snowman	сніговик, снігова баба
frost	мороз
• <i>severe ~ / bitter ~</i>	• <i>суворий, сильний ~</i>
• <i>light frosts</i>	• <i>заморозки</i>
• <i>ground frost early at night</i>	• <i>заморозки на ґрунті вночі</i>
• <i>to burn with frost</i>	• <i>палати від морозу</i>
a frostbite	обморожене місце
glazed frost	ожеледиця
hoar-frost	іній
ice	лід, крига
• <i>slippery with ~</i>	• <i>слизький; слизько від льоду</i>
an icicle	льодова бурулька
• <i>~s glitter in the sun</i>	• <i>бурульки блищать на сонці</i>
icy	покритий льодом, кригою
sleet	сніг (круп) з дощем; сльота
slush	талий сніг із брудом
thaw	відлига

<b>Wind</b>	<b>Вітер</b>
• <i>a gust / a blast / a flaw of wind</i>	• <i>сильний порив вітру</i>
• <i>a capful of wind</i>	• <i>легкий порив вітру</i>
• <i>a counterblast</i>	• <i>зустрічний порив вітру</i>
biting / sharp	гострий, різкий
blustery / blusterous	що реве
chilly	прохолодний
fitful	поривчастий
foul	зустрічний
gentle	легкий
icy	крижаний, дуже холодний
light	слабкий
piercing	пронизливий
severe	суворий
strong / violent	сильний



variable	змінних напрямків
a breeze	легкий вітерець, бриз
a draught	протяг
a dust storm	шквал вітру, що здіймає пил
a gale	сильний вітер; шторм; буря над морем
a hurricane	ураган
a sandstorm	самум, піщана буря
a tornado	торнадо, смерч
a typhoon	тайфун
a whirlwind	вихор; ураган, смерч
a windstorm	буря, ураган
•to sweep smb. off one's feet	•збивати когось з ніг (про вітер)

<b>Fog</b>	<b>Туман</b>
thick / dense	густиий
moderate	помірний
haze / mist / brume / gauze	імла, мла, серпанок
pea-souper	густиий жовтий туман
smog	туман (з димом та кіптявою)
dew	роса
clarity	ясність
visibility	видимість

<b>Rain</b>	<b>Дощ</b>
abundant	рясний
continuous / perpetual	тривалий
heavy	сильний
pelting / pouring / torrential	проливний
a deluge	злива; потоп, повінь
a downpour / a downfall / a cloudburst / a heavy shower / a rainfall / a torrent	злива
drizzle	дрібний дощ, мряка
hail	град
•hailstones	•градіни
a rainstorm	злива з ураганом
humidity / moisture	волога
a dew point	точка роси; температура конденсації
a flood	повінь
a flurry	несподівана злива чи снігопад
precipitation	опади
a puddle	калюжа

● <i>sloppy</i>	● мокрий, у калюжах (про дорогу)
a rainbow	веселка, райдуга
a raindrop	дощова крапля
a shower	коротка злива
● <i>scattered ~s</i>	● зливи в окремих районах, місцями ~
● <i>possible ~s</i>	● очікуються (можливі) дощі
● <i>heavy ~s at times</i>	● часом сильні дощі
mud	бруд
● <i>muddy</i>	● брудний
lightning	блискавка
● <i>a bolt of ~ / a flash of ~</i>	● спалах блискавки
thunder	грім
● <i>a clap of ~ / a bolt of ~ / a thunderclap / a thunderbolt</i>	● удар грому
thunderstorm	гроза
<i>It's raining cats and dogs.</i> <i>It's pouring <b>with</b> rain.</i>	<i>Дощ лє як з відра.</i>
<i>It looks like rain.</i>	<i>Схоже на те, що буде дощ.</i>
<i>to be caught <b>in</b> the rain</i>	<i>потрапити під дощ</i>
<i>to get wet <b>to</b> the bone</i>	<i>промокнути до кісток</i>
<i>to get wet / soaked <b>to</b> the skin</i>	<i>промокнути до нитки</i>
<i>to be dripping / soaking wet (clothes)</i>	<i>вмок до нитки (одяг)</i>
<i>to wet one's feet</i>	<i>замочити ноги</i>

“Weather” Verbs	“Погодні” Дієслова
to awake	пробуджуватись
to bloom	цвісти (про квіти)
to blossom	цвісти (про дерева)
to blow	дути
to bud / to put forth little buds	давати бруньки; пускати паростки
to clear <b>up</b>	розпогодитися
to come <b>up</b> / to shoot <b>up</b>	сходити, проростати (про рослини)
to dissipate	розганяти
to drizzle	мрячити
to fade	в'янути
● <i>to fade away</i>	● поступово зникати, згасати
to fall	1) опадати, падати (про листя) 2) падати, знижатися (про температуру)
● <i>fallen / dead leaves</i>	● опале листя
● <i>to fall thick / heavily</i>	● іти, падати рясно (про дощ, сніг)

to flood	залити, затоплювати
to fluctuate	коливатися
to freeze	1) замерзати, покриватися льодом 2) морозити; підморозувати (про погоду)
to frost	1) побити морозом (рослини) 2) підморозувати; покриватися інієм
to frostbite	обморозувати, прибити морозом
• <i>to be frostbitten</i>	• <i>обморозитися</i>
to grow green	зеленіти
to hail	іти (про град); сипатися градом
to improve	поліпшуватися
to lull	вщухати
to lessen <b>in</b> force ( <i>about wind</i> )	зменшуватися у силі (про вітер)
to melt / to thaw	танути
to nip	щипати
• <i>There is a nip in the air.</i>	• <i>Мороз щипле.</i>
to overcast	закриватися хмарами (про небо)
to overflow the banks	виступати з берегів, розливатися (про річку)
to pour	лити (про сильний дощ)
• <i>to pour down</i>	• <i>падати (про сильний дощ)</i>
to rain	іти (про дощ); дощити
to set in	встановлюватися, наступати
to shine	світити
to skate	кататися на ковзанах
• <i>a skating rink</i>	• <i>ковзанка</i>
to ski	кататися на лижах
to snow	іти (про сніг); сніжити
to sleet	іти (про дощ зі снігом)
to thicken	згущатися
to toboggan / to sledge	кататися на санчатах
to try ( <i>about the sun</i> )	пробиватися крізь хмари (про сонце)
to whirl	вертіти, кружляти (про сніг, листя)

<b>Cardinal Points</b>	<b>Сторони Світу</b>
▲ north – northern	▲ північ – північний
▼ south – southern	▼ південь – південний
▶▶ east – eastern	▶▶ схід – східний
◀◀ west – western	◀◀ захід – західний

<b>Birds</b>	<b>Птахи</b>
a bullfinch	снігур
a crane	журавель
a cross bill	клест
a crow	ворона
a cuckoo	зозуля
an eagle	орел
a falcon	сокіл
a gull	чайка
a hawk	яструб; сокіл
a heron	чапля
a hoopoe	одуд
a jay	сойка
a kite	шуліка (рос.: коршун)
a lark	жайворонок
a magpie	сорока
a nightingale	соловейко
an oriole	іволга
an owl	сова
a pheasant	фазан
a pigeon	голуб
a quail	перепел
a sparrow	горобець
a starling	шпак (рос.: скворец)
a swallow	ластівка
a swan	лебідь
a tit	синиця
a thrush	дрізд
a woodpecker	дятел
to chirp	цвірінькати
to caw	каркати
to hoot	ухкати
to sing	співати
to twitter	щебетати

<b>Flowers</b>	<b>Квіти</b>
an aster	айстра
a bell flower / a bluebell	дзвоник
a carnation	гвоздика
a chrysanthemum	хризантема

a crocus	крокіс, шафран
a clover	конюшина
a shamrock	трилисник
a cornflower	волошка
a dahlia	жоржина
a daffodil	блідо-жовтий нарцис
a narcissus	білий нарцис
a daisy	маргаритка
a dandelion	кульбаба
a geranium	герань
a gladiolus	гладіолус
a hydrangea	гортензія
an iris	ірис, півники
a jasmin(e)	жасмин
a lilac	бузок
a lily	лілія
a lily of the valley	конвалія
a mallow	мальва, рожа
a marigold	чорнобривець, нагідка
a mercury	пролісок
a morning glory	кручені паничі, іпомея
night-scented stock	матіюла
an orchid	орхідея
an ox-eye daisy / c(h)amomile	ромашка
a pansy	братки
a petunia	петунія
a poppy	мак
a primrose	первоцвіт
a primula	примула
a rose	троянда
a snowdrop	підсніжник
a strawflower / an immortelle	сухоцвіт, імортель
a sunflower	соняшник
a tulip	тюльпан
a violet	фіалка
a waterlily	водяна лілія, латаття

✓ *When we speak about weather in English, we may use several methods. We may opt for:*

**1. verbs** (*to rain, to pour, to blow*)

Advice: Find a suitable notional subject or use the formal subject **it**.

Example: *It is raining now. / It rained yesterday. / It always rains in autumn.*  
*The wind was blowing. / The rain is pouring down.*

## 2. adjectives (*sunny, cloudy, cold*)

Advice: Choose a suitable notional subject or use the formal subject **it**.

Example: *It is sunny. / The weather is foggy. / The sky is cloudy.*  
*It was cold. / It gets cold. / The day is cold.*

## 3. nouns (*frost, wind, heat*)

Advice: Add some nice verbs or adjectives.

Example: *The wind is fitful. / Strong winds often blow from the north. /*  
*The frost is severe. / The day is gloomy. / The heat is oppressive.*

1

**Read the text, translate it into Ukrainian and answer the questions after the text.**

### *Seasons and Weather, Climate*

As we know, the weather depends on the season and climate of the country and the latter depends on the **geographical position** of the country.

Our country, Ukraine, has a **moderate-continental** climate.

The United Kingdom has a **rather damp** climate **due to the effect** of the warm **current** of the Gulf Stream. The British Isles **are surrounded by** the ocean and the seas and have an **insular climate**.

The USA has an **equable** continental climate, except for Florida and the Mexican coast, where the climate is **tropical** and **subtropical**.

There are four **seasons** in a **year** and three **months** in every season. **Spring, summer, autumn** and **winter** are the four seasons. **March, April** and **May** are the spring months; **June, July** and **August** are the summer months; **September, October** and **November** are the autumn months; **December, January** and **February** are the winter months.



The weather changes with the change of the season. **Consider** autumn, for example. In **autumn**, the weather leaves much to be desired. The sky is often **cloudy**. The sun **hides** behind the clouds and then appears again. Its rays have already lost their **strength** and the sun is not so bright now as it was in summer. The air is **moist**. Days get shorter and nights get longer. As autumn is a rainy season, the weather is mostly **dull**. And, of course, it is not **attractive**. November rains, **fogs** and **mist**, and **sleet** are not pleasant things. As a matter of fact, I don't like rain of any kind, even if it just **drizzles**. But in late September there is a **spell** of sunny weather, which we call **Indian summer**, when the sun shines brightly, the sky is **cloudless** and there is a carpet of **multicoloured** leaves on the ground. It is really golden autumn, but in any case, nature begins **to fade away**. Later hard **frost** will **cover the ground** at night and **remind** us of winter. As for me, I am

not fond of autumn, but there are a lot of people who try to look at the reverse side of the medal. Strange as it may seem, they prefer autumn to any other season. As they say, it is the time of beautiful golden leaves, when nature is very attractive. It is the time of **harvest**, tasty fruit and vegetables. There are a lot of **apples, grapes, pears, persimmons, plums, and peaches**, which get ripe and may be **pickled**. But many men – many minds.



When autumn is over, **winter sets in**. Days are the shortest and nights are the longest. In winter, the sun seldom shines. It sets early, rises late and its rays lose their strength and turn **pale**. It is very cold and from time to time it freezes hard. It often **snows**, large **snowflakes** slowly fall to the ground, and the streets are **slippery with** ice. There is much snow on the roads. The temperature is **below zero**, it may **drop to 30 degrees below zero Celsius**. Cold winds blow from **the north** and the air is very **frosty**. It is the season of **snowstorms, ice, frozen rivers and ponds, slippery streets and glittering icicles**. Going out in such weather is not pleasant and old people prefer staying at home. However, those who adore winter don't mind it at all. They consider winter to be the healthiest season and enjoy being out-of-doors. In winter, we can go in for winter kinds of sports: **skating on the ice, skiing or tobogganing in the countryside**. In snowy weather, **sledging** is children's favourite **pastime**. Children like making a snowman and throwing snowballs. Their cheeks are **burning with** frost. How **bitterly cold** it is! As you see, winter has its own peculiar interest and beauty, and there is no reason to be bored to death when there are interesting books, movies, theatres and concerts. Of course, if winter is **severe**, one must take care not to **get frost-bitten**.



By the end of winter, the temperature rises, bright spring **sunshine melts snow** and ice. **Thaw** sets in. **Spring** is in the air. The sun grows warmer and soon there won't be any ice but plenty of water. The rivers are in **flood**. Nature awakens from its long winter sleep. Birds come back from the warm lands, trees begin **to bud** and soon tiny green leaves will appear. Thin new **blades** of grass **come up**, fruit trees begin **to blossom**. Meadows and valleys **grow green** again. In March, forests are full of **snowdrops** and **mercuries**. It sometimes **rains heavily**, especially in April, but spring rains are warm and pleasant. We often have **thunderstorms**. "April **showers** bring May flowers", as the proverb goes. In May, wheat fields are bright because of blue **cornflowers** and red **poppies**. Purple **lilacs**, yellow **daffodils**, red and white **tulips** shine in the sun. Everything looks **magic** covered with a green carpet. Farmers **till** the **soil** and **sow** the seed. We all welcome the **advent** of spring. Nature looks full of promise. Spring is the season of hopes, as it's the season of revival of nature and people's dreams. It's my favourite season, I must admit.



After spring **summer** comes. It's no wonder that a lot of people prefer it to any other season because they have their holidays. We can enjoy resting after hard work during the whole year. It's good time for going to the seashore or a river bank, to bask in the sun, to become sunburnt, to swim, to pick berries and mushrooms, to gather flowers. We try to spend much time outdoors because it is very **warm** and sometimes even **hot**. On some days, the temperature rises to **30-35 degrees above zero Celsius**. If **heat** gets too **oppressive**, we can go to the **forest** or to the **mountains** and rest well. But the weather is quite changeable in summer. It is the time of showers, perpetual rains and **thunderstorms**.

To cut the long story short, I must confess that every season is beautiful and attractive in its own way. And as one of the famous poets says, "I see no reason to speak in praise of any season".

- 1. What does the climate of the country depend on?
- 2. What climate do Ukraine, the UK and the USA have?
- 3. How many seasons are there in a year? How many months are there in a year? What are the **autumn / winter / spring / summer** months?
- 4. What is the weather like in **autumn / winter / spring / summer**? What usually happens to the nature in this season?

2

**Give the English equivalents. Make up your own sentences with them.**



**a)** помірно-континентальний клімат; залежати від пори року; достатньо вологий; завдяки впливу течії; бути оточеним океаном;

**b)** брати до уваги (вважати); ховатися за хмарами; дощова пора року; не привабливий; насправді; в основному похмурий; мрячити;

дощити; короткий період сонячної погоди; бабине літо; світити яскраво; різнокольорове листя; золота осінь; в'янути; нагадувати про; зворотний бік медалі; час врожаїв;

**c)** обожнювати зиму; зимові види спорту; катання на лижах; бліді промені; катання на санчатах; сідати й підніматися (про сонце); сильний мороз; за такої погоди; бути на вулиці; встановлюватися; великі сніжинки; повільно падати; блищати на сонці; кататися на ковзанах на льоду; палати від морозу; гратися в сніжки; страшенно холодно;

**d)** танути; ставати теплішим; багато води; переповнитися (про річки); бути сповненим обіцянок; прокидатися від сну; повертатися з теплих країв; як говориться у прислів'ї; розпускати бруньки; паростки трави; цвісти; орати землю; сіяти зернові; прихід весни; відродження природи; визнати;



е) гнітюча спека; їздити до морського узбережжя; плавати; берег річки; ніжитися на сонці; засмагати; збирати гриби та ягоди; проводити час на вулиці; мінлива погода; відпочивати після важкої роботи; зізнаватися; прославляти.

**3** Transcribe the words from the left-hand column and match them with appropriate definitions from the right-hand column. Choose any item and describe your attitude to it.

- |                           |                                                             |
|---------------------------|-------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>a puddle</i>        | a) a current of cool air in a room or other confined space  |
| 2. <i>a cloud</i>         | b) a short period of light rain                             |
| 3. <i>a blizzard</i>      | c) a light and pleasant wind                                |
| 4. <i>a snowdrift</i>     | d) a great quantity of water in a place that is usually dry |
| 5. <i>a hail</i>          | e) falling snow with rain                                   |
| 6. <i>a draught</i>       | f) white frost, frozen dew on grass and leaves              |
| 7. <i>precipitation</i>   | g) a violent windstorm                                      |
| 8. <i>a deluge</i>        | h) dirty, brownish, half-water, half-snow                   |
| 9. <i>a breeze</i>        | i) the weather conditions that an area usually has          |
| 10. <i>thaw</i>           | j) frozen raindrops falling from the sky                    |
| 11. <i>slush</i>          | k) a deep pile of snow formed by the wind                   |
| 12. <i>a drizzle</i>      | l) a heavy snowfall with a strong wind                      |
| 13. <i>a shower</i>       | m) thunder and lightning, usually with heavy rain           |
| 14. <i>hoar-frost</i>     | n) melting snow and ice                                     |
| 15. <i>a climate</i>      | o) a continuous period of dry weather                       |
| 16. <i>a flood</i>        | p) a sudden, very heavy fall of rain                        |
| 17. <i>sleet</i>          | q) light rain falling in fine drops                         |
| 18. <i>a thunderstorm</i> | r) a visible mass of water vapour that floats in the sky    |
| 19. <i>a drought</i>      | s) rain, snow, sleet, or hail that falls to the ground      |
| 20. <i>a hurricane</i>    | t) a small pool of liquid, esp. of rainwater on the ground  |

**4** Put the adjectives below in the line with the noun they are associated with. Transcribe them and then translate into Ukrainian.

abundant	warm	fitful	rainy	falling	sunny
rising	sultry	subtropical	foggy	fair	windy
blazing	wonderful	fragrant	starlit	below zero	grey
beastly	continental	cloudy	nice	dark	chilly
dense	wintry	violent	leaden	crisp	close
sunny	freezing	blue	fresh	hot	bright

- |                     |                                |                             |
|---------------------|--------------------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>air</i> _____ | 4. <i>sun</i> _____            | 7. <i>temperature</i> _____ |
| 2. <i>sky</i> _____ | 5. <i>wind</i> _____           | 8. <i>weather</i> _____     |
| 3. <i>fog</i> _____ | 6. <i>rain</i> <u>abundant</u> | 9. <i>climate</i> _____     |

**5** Here are some common weather nouns. Form adjectives by adding -y or in some other way.

<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>	<i>noun</i>	<i>adjective</i>
sun	_____	frost	_____	winter	_____
ice	_____	storm	_____	cloud	_____
fog	_____	snow	_____	fragrance	_____
heat	_____	rain	_____	humidity	_____
cold	_____	smog	_____	warmth	_____
mud	_____	wind	_____	strength	_____

**6** Give the antonyms to the following words.

- sunny
- unsettled
- abundant
- scorching
- continuous
- oppressive
- grey
- dry
- hot
- clear
- sultry
- lovely
- warm
- falling
- severe

**7** Give the synonyms to the following words.

- fine
- thick
- nasty
- steady
- falling
- cloudy
- stifling
- sharp
- wet
- changeable

**8** Arrange these weather words in order from *the coldest (1)* to *the hottest (11)*.

- cold       cool       freezing       hot       mild       scorching  
 frosty       warm       chilly       catch-cold       sultry

**9** Divide these weather words into two columns: *good (1)* and *bad (2)* weather.

- gloomy     misty     fair     dismal     marvelous     catch-cold  
 clear     bright     windy     frosty     drizzling     dull     lovely     dusty

**10** Unjumble the following words to review the vocabulary. Mind the spelling rules.

- |             |       |              |       |             |       |
|-------------|-------|--------------|-------|-------------|-------|
| 1. ezreeb   | _____ | 7. lihngtgni | _____ | 13. linboig | _____ |
| 2. olco     | _____ | 8. ilmd      | _____ | 14. osfrr   | _____ |
| 3. ifne     | _____ | 9. onseas    | _____ | 15. smit    | _____ |
| 4. ecfostra | _____ | 10. oswher   | _____ | 16. airnbow | _____ |
| 5. licmate  | _____ | 11. nhisnsue | _____ | 17. torms   | _____ |
| 6. fregezin | _____ | 12. dehurtn  | _____ | 18. rntoado | _____ |

**11** Each of these pairs of words has a similar meaning, but one word in each pair is stronger. Find out which one is stronger and tick it (✓).

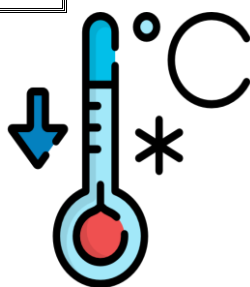
- |                    |                   |                         |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------------|
| 1) fog / mist      | 4) rain / drizzle | 7) chilly / catch-cold  |
| 2) cold / freezing | 5) breeze / wind  | 8) rain / downpour      |
| 3) cool / cold     | 6) hot / sultry   | 9) snowstorm / blizzard |

**12** Listen to the speaker and fill in the gaps with the information you hear. Translate it into Ukrainian. Pick the relevant words to the weather today.

- a)
- |          |           |           |           |           |
|----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 8. _____  | 15. _____ | 22. _____ | 29. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 9. _____  | 16. _____ | 23. _____ | 30. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 10. _____ | 17. _____ | 24. _____ | 31. _____ |
| 4. _____ | 11. _____ | 18. _____ | 25. _____ | 32. _____ |
| 5. _____ | 12. _____ | 19. _____ | 26. _____ | 33. _____ |
| 6. _____ | 13. _____ | 20. _____ | 27. _____ |           |
| 7. _____ | 14. _____ | 21. _____ | 28. _____ |           |

- b)
- |          |          |          |           |           |
|----------|----------|----------|-----------|-----------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____ | 7. _____ | 10. _____ | 13. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ | 11. _____ | 14. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ | 12. _____ |           |

**13** Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense.



1. It's bitterly cold. The temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (*drop*). 2. The weather is getting warmer and warmer. Finally, spring \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*). 3. The sky is clear and blue and the sun is shining. The rain \_\_\_\_\_ (*already/stop*). 4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/hear*) the weather forecast. Scattered showers are expected. 5. The streets are slippery with ice. The slush \_\_\_\_\_ (*freeze*). 6. There are a lot of puddles in the streets. The thaw \_\_\_\_\_ (*set in*) and the snow \_\_\_\_\_ (*melt*). 7. Look! New tiny blades of grass \_\_\_\_\_ (*shoot up*). 8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/see*) such a wonderful rainbow! It's fantastic! 9. The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*improve*) lately. Now we can spend more time outside. 10. The rivers are in flood. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*overflow*). 11. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/hear*) such a loud clap of thunder in her life. 12. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/snow/yet*) and our children \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/make*) a single snowman this winter. 13. The climate \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/change*) a lot in the last few years. 14. The heat \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/influence*) us. We are still active and energetic. 15. The snow \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/fall*) thick yet. 16. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/notice*) any changes in the weather today. 17. The hailstones \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/hurt*) our heads. We are safe. 18. Luckily the hurricane \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/take*) the roof off the old house.

14

**Make alternative and special questions to the underlined segments.**

1. Scientists have made progress in controlling the weather. 2. She has gone to India on holiday to get some sunshine. 3. We have been in for a cold spell for three days. 4. Meteorologists have relied on computers to forecast the weather. 5. The Smiths haven't had a barbecue in the garden for ages. 6. My umbrella has turned inside out because of this wind. 7. The weatherman has promised a wonderful day. 8. The bright sun has disappeared behind an enormous black cloud. 9. We all have heard about global warming. 10. We have lost our way in the dusk. 11. Hurricanes have caused lots of destruction.

15

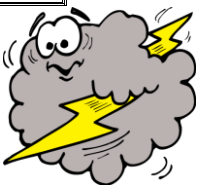
**Translate the following sentences into English.**



1. Дощ. Іде сильний дощ. 2. Небо в хмарах. Сонця немає. 3. Туман. Дуже густий туман. 4. Спека. Повітря задушливе. 5. Сонячно, але сьогодні трохи вітряно. 6. Я щойно прокинувся. Сонечко яскраво світить. 7. Влітку погода сонячна. 8. Весною часто йде дощ. 9. Вчора був вітер. 10. Минулого тижня йшов сильний сніг. 11. Сильний мороз. 12. Вітер? Ні, сильна спека. 13. Яка сьогодні погода в Києві? 14. Зима. Сніг іде кожен день. 15. Сьогодні +30°? 16. На вулиці дощ чи сніг? 17. Прохолодно сьогодні, вчора було тепліше. 18. Мороз. Сильний мороз. 19. Повітря духмяне. Весна. 20. Вітру немає. 21. Прийшла весна. Теплішає. 22. Дуже холодно. Вчора був сильний сніг. 23. Густий туман накрив усе місто. 24. Дощ щойно закінчився. Над річкою з'явилася веселка. 25. Сьогодні сухо. На небі ні хмаринки. 26. Холоднішає.

16

**Write the correct words next to the definitions below. The figure in the brackets signifies the number of letters in the words.**



1. A sudden flash of light in the sky during a storm (9) \_\_\_\_\_. 2. The light and heat that come from the sun (8) \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Extremely cold (8) \_\_\_\_\_. 4. A report saying what the weather tends to be like (8) \_\_\_\_\_. 5. A period of bad weather with a lot of wind and rain (5) \_\_\_\_\_. 6. Small drops of water in the air which make it difficult to see objects which are not near (4) \_\_\_\_\_. 7. One of the four periods of the year: spring, summer, autumn or winter (6) \_\_\_\_\_. 8. Slightly cold, but not too cold (4) \_\_\_\_\_. 9. Extremely hot (7) \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Sunny and not raining, generally pleasant weather (4) \_\_\_\_\_. 11. An extremely strong and dangerous wind that blows in a circle and destroys buildings as it moves along (7) \_\_\_\_\_. 12. The loud noise in the sky that you hear during a storm (7) \_\_\_\_\_. 13. Quite warm weather (4) \_\_\_\_\_. 14. A half circle of seven colours that you see in the sky when rain is falling and the sun is shining (7) \_\_\_\_\_. 15. A thin, white layer

of ice that is formed on surfaces at night when it is cold, or a period when the temperature is cold and water freezes (5) \_\_\_\_\_.

17

**Fill in the missing words from the list below. Change the verb forms if necessary. Words to fill in:**

to blossom, to hide, to fade away, to rise, to cover, to bud, to prefer,  
to appear, to drizzle, to sow, to melt, to go up;

oppressive --- overcast --- sunny --- attractive --- changeable --- pale --- dull --- tiny  
golden --- (the) healthiest --- brightly;

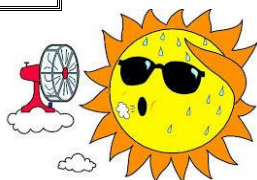
soil --- flood --- harvest --- fruit --- advent --- a spell --- blades --- icicles  
snowflakes --- out-of-doors.



1. In autumn, the sky is often \_\_\_\_\_, the sun \_\_\_\_\_ behind the clouds and then \_\_\_\_\_ again. 2. As autumn is a rainy season, the weather is mostly \_\_\_\_\_, and, of course, it is not \_\_\_\_\_. 3. I don't like rain of any kind, even if it just \_\_\_\_\_. 4. Nature begins \_\_\_\_\_ in autumn. 5. Strange as it may seem, people \_\_\_\_\_ autumn to any other season. 6. It is the time of \_\_\_\_\_, tasty \_\_\_\_\_ and vegetables, the time of beautiful \_\_\_\_\_ leaves, the time when nature is very \_\_\_\_\_. 7. People consider winter to be the \_\_\_\_\_ season. 8. In winter the sun doesn't shine \_\_\_\_\_, its rays are \_\_\_\_\_; it sets early and \_\_\_\_\_ late. 9. Large \_\_\_\_\_ slowly fall to the ground; streets and fields are \_\_\_\_\_ with ice. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ glitter in the sun in winter. 11. In winter, children enjoy being \_\_\_\_\_. 12. By the end of winter the temperature \_\_\_\_\_ and snow begins \_\_\_\_\_. 13. Rivers are in \_\_\_\_\_ in spring. 14. Trees begin \_\_\_\_\_ and soon \_\_\_\_\_ green leaves appear. 15. Thin new \_\_\_\_\_ of grass come up, fruit trees begin \_\_\_\_\_. 16. Farmers till the \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_ the seed. 17. We all welcome the \_\_\_\_\_ of spring. 18. In fact, heat is sometimes \_\_\_\_\_ in summer. 19. The weather is \_\_\_\_\_ in summer. It may rain and then be hot. 20. There is usually a \_\_\_\_\_ of sunny weather in September.

18

**Find the mistakes and correct them.**



1. Tomorrow the weather will be hot and humidity. 2. The roads was icy after the storm. 3. There were no clouds on the sky. 4. How is the weather? 5. There were a cool, pleasant breeze this afternoon. 6. The temperature today is rise. 7. It's rains. 8. It warms. 9. There are four months in every season. 10. In summer, the days are longest and the nights are shortest. 11. Sometimes it rains cats and mice. 12. The sky is often claudy. 13. "Fell", by the way, is the name of autumn in American English. 14. In winter, the days are shorter then the nights.

**19****Rearrange the words to make complete sentences.**

1. there / very / bad / was / a / down / storm / last / tree / night / and / our / fell
2. swept / a / through / the / state / tornado / causing / terrible / destruction
3. the / Mediterranean / is / good / for / growing / climate / citrus / fruit
4. forecast / going / said / it / was / the / weather / today / to / rain / later
5. winter / England / in / very / in / sometimes / it / is / cold
6. I / because / sleep / the / thunder / loud / couldn't / was / so
7. I / like / a / summer / job / outside / in / the / wouldn't / boiling / when / it's
8. ground / when / I / up / this / morning / the / woke / was / covered / with / frost
9. the / covered / villages / were / mountain / in / mist
10. rainbow / we / saw / a / in / the / sky / beautiful
11. I / shower / caught / in / got / a / and / got / wet
12. tree / was / that / by / lightning / struck
13. mild / had / a / winter / we've / this / year
14. in / my / country / season / is / as / wonderful / a / winter / as / summer
15. too / hot / was / not / and / we / had / a / it / cool / breeze / as / we / cycled / downhill
16. wind / a / cool / blows / in / our / sometimes / city
17. tomorrow / if / picnic / we / it's / fine / could / have / a
18. children / the / sunshine / were / out / playing / in / the

**20**

**👂👁️ Listen to the speaker telling about four seasons. Fill in the gaps and answer the questions below.**

### *Four Seasons*

I'm not sure how many people ever stop to think **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ four seasons are. I think people who live in cities don't care **2.** \_\_\_\_\_. City people spend half their lives **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. I live in the country and I love watching the seasons come and go. Every day is different **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. I love watching the crops grow **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. I watch them push their way up from the ground **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ and then grow tall in the summer sun. Just before **7.** \_\_\_\_\_, the farmer harvests them and then winter comes. Seasons means it's like **8.** \_\_\_\_\_. Everything changes. One wonderful thing about seasons is **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ you get. There's always something tasty that's just come **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

### *Autumn*



Autumn is such **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the year. Of course, it is cool because the temperatures **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ summer. But it is also cool because it's such a great time of the year. I love the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. The different autumn colours are one of nature's most **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. Sometimes I can't stop looking at the mountains near my house. They are like an **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ of golds, reds, yellows, browns and other autumnal colours. In America they call



autumn 'fall' because that is when **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ from the trees. I like **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ of autumn. Summer is over **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ still wear a T-shirt – just about. You can also spend hours outdoors **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. Autumn is the best time of the year to go hiking **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ long walks.

### *Winter*



Winter is my favourite season. I **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ it. I like the cold weather, which always makes the sky seem so blue. I also like **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ see my breath in the cold air. In summer, it's difficult to keep cool outside, but in winter, it's **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ warm. I really like hiking in winter. The cold really makes you feel alive. It's also **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ home to a nice warm room. Winter also has the best holidays. I love **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ with my family and then celebrating the New Year. Winter is a really good time to **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ because the sights are usually empty. If you go anywhere in Europe in winter, you can **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel room and you never have to **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ a museum.

### *Spring*



Spring is **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ things. It seems everyone is full of energy. The days become **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ spends **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. Winter is finishing, so the countryside becomes greener. I love watching the new flowers in my garden in spring. I watch the tulips grow and then I **4.** \_\_\_\_\_. I wonder what it's like to live in countries that don't **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. They miss out on what it's like to welcome spring and see **6.** \_\_\_\_\_. Spring has to be the best season. It definitely makes you **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ about life. It's a good time to clean your house from top to bottom. We call **8.** \_\_\_\_\_. Spring also means the weather gets warmer and you can do more things outside.

### *Summer*



The best thing about living **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ has four seasons is summer. Everyone looks forward to it. Summer is a time when we have **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ and the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. I go to the beach a lot in the summer and go hiking. It **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ hot. I live in a country where summers are nice. I'm not sure if I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ where summers are unbearable. I like shopping for summer clothes. **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ autumn when summer clothes are on sale. They're not **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ for the next summer, but I don't care. One thing I don't understand about summer is summer holidays. Everyone I know **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ country in the summer. That's crazy. It's warm here. Why not go to a warm country in the winter?

- **1.** What happens in **autumn / winter / spring / summer** in your area?
- **2.** Do seasons differ in the country and in cities? How?
- **3.** What adjectives would you use to describe **autumn / winter / spring / summer**?

- 4. What do you like to do in **autumn / winter / spring / summer** that you can't do in other seasons?
- 5. Would you like it to be **autumn / winter / spring / summer** forever? Why? Would you agree to live without one of the seasons? Why?
- 6. What things about **autumn / winter / spring / summer** do you like most / least?
- 7. Are there any special events that take place in **autumn / winter / spring / summer** in Ukraine?

21

**Translate the following sentences into English.**



1. Встановлюється осінь. Вулиці вкриті брудом, що прилипає до взуття.

2. Восени сонце заходить за хмари, а потім виходить знов. Його промені втрачають силу, і ми не відчуваємо тепла. Атмосфера – волога.

3. У жовтні люди очікують короткий період сонячної погоди, що називається "Бабине літо".

4. Різнокольорове та багряне листя падає на стежки, його змітають, складають в купи та вивозять.

5. У кінці осені темніє рано, часто буває мряка та туман. А вчора сильно дощило, і погода була дійсно неприємною. Небо було вкрито хмарами.



6. Взимку безліч сніжинок падають зі свинцевого неба та вкривають землю м'якою білою ковдрою.

7. Наступного дня встановлюється сильний мороз, на деревах паморозь, з дахів звисають крижані бурульки, а на дорогах слизько.

8. Різкий північний вітер перетворює сніг в снігопади та снігові замети, сковує річки та спричиняє бурі над морем.

9. Коли настає весна, сніг починає танути та з'являються перші квіти після тривалої зими і більш немає поривчастого вітру, що дме з півночі.

10. У березні температура зростає, стає тепло і починається відлига. На дорогах талий сніг і багнюка.



11. Прокидається природа: розпускається бузок, тюльпани, нарциси, скоро поля вкриються блакитними волошками та червоними маками.

12. – Яка температура на вулиці? – Температура 10° вище нуля за Цельсієм.

13. Навесні інколи йдуть дощі, але весняні дощі теплі й приємні.

14. Влітку небо блакитне, безхмарне, а сонце – яскраво-палюче. Опівночі я люблю спостерігати за чудовим небом, вкритим зорями.



15. Збирається гроза: після гнітючої тиші порив вітру піднімає пилюку, а потім ми бачимо спалах блискавки та чуємо удар грому.
16. Дощ охолоджує повітря, прибиває пилюку, і листя знов виглядає яскраво зеленим.
17. Коли йде нетривалий дощ, ми називаємо його зливою. Добре, коли йде дощ після спекотного літнього дня з задушливим повітрям.
18. Після грози небо прояснюється і з'являється веселка. Пахне вологою землею та бруньками. Пташки щебечуть і купаються в калюжах.
19. Яка максимальна температура зимою у Європі? Яка середня липнева температура у Франції?
20. – Що відбувається на вулиці? – Небо затягнуте важкими свинцевими хмарами, дме холодний вітер, іде сильний дощ.

22

a) Complete the sentences with the correct nouns describing the weather. The first letter is given.

1. Driving was dangerous because you couldn't see much of the road ahead. Then suddenly the f\_\_\_\_\_ lifted. 2. The f\_\_\_\_\_ was bitter last night and I am worried about the plants in the garden. I hope they haven't died. 3. It's only a s\_\_\_\_\_. We can go out and eat in the garden again in a couple of minutes. 4. The pavements were covered with i\_\_\_\_\_ today and mum nearly fell over. 5. There's a s\_\_\_\_\_ coming. Make sure you don't leave any windows open. 6. There were so many c\_\_\_\_\_ that we couldn't see the sun all day. 7. The t\_\_\_\_\_ that came with the storm was very loud and it scared the dog. 8. Children love the s\_\_\_\_\_, but their parents don't! They have to dig a way through it. 9. If there's a l\_\_\_\_\_ when you're out for a walk, do not shelter under a tree!

b) Form adjectives from nouns 1-9. Use the suffix -y. Which noun does not form an adjective by adding -y?

- |          |          |          |
|----------|----------|----------|
| 1. _____ | 4. _____ | 7. _____ |
| 2. _____ | 5. _____ | 8. _____ |
| 3. _____ | 6. _____ | 9. _____ |

23

Put the verbs in brackets into the Present Perfect Tense.



1. Multicolored dead leaves \_\_\_\_\_ (*cover*) the paths in the neighbouring park in the last three days. 2. The highest day temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (*rise*) up to 30 degrees. 3. The sky is overcast. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*hide*) behind the clouds. 4. This is the first time Peter \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) in such bad weather. 5. Her husband \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a new pair of winter boots. He likes it a

lot. **6.** I always \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to swim in the ocean. **7.** John is in hospital. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*break*) his leg on the skating rink. **8.** That terrible downpour \_\_\_\_\_ (*ruin*) my new shoes. **9.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) some coffee to warm you. **10.** It's sultry. The flowers \_\_\_\_\_ (*fade*). **11.** She may get chilled to the bone. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/put on*) warm clothes. **12.** Benjamin is thinking of going to the Alps. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/ski*) for ages. **13.** The farmers \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/sow*) the seeds yet. **14.** They \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/have*) rest at the seaside this year. **15.** Susan is scared. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/skate*) before. **16.** My family \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/travel*) to tropical countries yet. **17.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/meet*) since autumn. **18.** The weather is dull so he is at home. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) for a walk. **19.** The sun rays \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/lose*) their strength yet. **20.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/rain*) for two weeks. **21.** She \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/put*) her life in danger by going out skiing in a blizzard. **22.** It's pouring. I don't know what to do. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/decide*) yet.

24

**Complete the second sentence so that it follows on from the first. Use the Present Perfect Tense.**

**Model:** My car is clean now. I've washed my car.



**1.** It's very cold and the door is open. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the door. **2.** This is Oliver's drawing, look. Oliver \_\_\_\_\_ a picture. **3.** The snowman is broken. Someone \_\_\_\_\_ the snowman. **4.** My team are the winners. My team \_\_\_\_\_ the game. **5.** There's no more ice in the streets. The ice \_\_\_\_\_ in the streets. **6.** The floor is clean from puddles of water now. I \_\_\_\_\_ the floor. **7.** I know the weather forecast now. I \_\_\_\_\_ the weather forecast. **8.** The guests are here now. The guests \_\_\_\_\_. **9.** We're leaving tomorrow, you can't say no. I \_\_\_\_\_ the holiday. **10.** It's cooler in here now. My mother \_\_\_\_\_ the room. **11.** A storm is going to come. I just \_\_\_\_\_ a flash of lightning. **12.** Her sandals are ruined. She \_\_\_\_\_ in a big puddle of water. **13.** I don't want to go to Hungary again. I already \_\_\_\_\_ there twice. **14.** He isn't at the hotel. He \_\_\_\_\_ to the beach. **15.** It's not cloudy any more. It \_\_\_\_\_ up. **16.** May I borrow your umbrella? I \_\_\_\_\_ mine at home.

25

**Translate into English using the Present Perfect Tense.**



**1.** Чому ти ще не зробив уроки? Вже час йти кататися на санчатах. Ану хутчіше! **2.** Ти бачив його сад? На деревах уже з'явилися бруньки. **3.** Дні вже стали коротшими, а ночі – довгими. **4.** Тільки-но подивись! Важка бурулька впала та зламала дах нашої машини. Це жахливо! **5.** Щонайменше троє людей постраждали в аварії через погані погодні умови. **6.** Ми щойно повернулися з лісу. Ми назбирали багато грибів та ягід. **7.** Шкода, що

сніжинка розтанула. **8.** Поморозь вкрила дерева та кущі. Все навкруги виглядає надзвичайно чарівним, наче у казці. **9.** Я почуваюся краще зараз. Легкий вітерець трішки охолодив мене. **10.** Останнім часом стоїть засуха та дуже спекотна погода. **11.** Хіба ти не взяв парасольку? Вже пішов дощ. **12.** Суворя зима не зіпсувала наші плани на канікули. Ми вирушаємо у гори в понеділок. **13.** Листя вже пожовтіло та почервоніло. **14.** Ви коли-небудь каталися на санчатах? **15.** Вона запрошувала мене покататися на ковзанах декілька разів, але я не хочу йти з нею. **16.** Що трапилось з тобою? Ти потрапив під дощ? **17.** У кімнаті так душно, хоча я й увімкнула кондиціонер. **18.** Ліля вперше у житті бачить веселку.

26

**Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. If a sentence is false, write a true sentence about the weather.**

1. It often pours in the desert. Model: *False: It never pours in the desert.*
2. It can get very chilly in the desert at night.
3. Thunder makes a noise.
4. Lightning can kill people.
5. A shower is a light breeze.
6. A spell of hot weather may end in a thunderstorm.
7. When it is humid, the air is very dry.
8. Below 32° F / 0° C water turns to ice.
9. A drought is a long period of rain.
10. When it's foggy, you need sunglasses.

27

**Describe what kind of day is probably based on the sentences below. There may be more than one good answer. Pretend to be a parent. Give your argument to the requests.**

- |                           |                                            |
|---------------------------|--------------------------------------------|
| 1. Watch out for sunburn. | 6. Don't step in the puddles of water!     |
| 2. Wear a sweater.        | 7. You can't see ten feet in front of you! |
| 3. Wear your rain boots.  | 8. Walk carefully so you don't slip.       |
| 4. Wear your snow boots.  | 9. Leave your sweater at home today.       |
| 5. Wear your windbreaker. | 10. It's a good day for some ice cream.    |

28

**Fill in the gaps with the correct words. The first letters are given.**



My first experience of real winter weather was when I went to Northern Canada. I was used to the sort of snow that usually falls in London, which quickly turns into brown **1. s\_\_\_\_\_** with all the people walking on it. In fact, most of the time I was in London, it didn't really snow properly, it was mostly **2. s\_\_\_\_\_**. Apart from that,

British winters meant a bit of white 3. **h**\_\_\_\_\_ on my garden and occasionally having to drive very carefully on icy roads early in the morning. I had never experienced the 4. **b**\_\_\_\_\_ and 5. **s**\_\_\_\_\_ that can paralyse a whole city in less than an hour and close roads completely. However, when the ground finally 6. **t**\_\_\_\_\_ and all the snow 7. **m**\_\_\_\_\_ away in spring, everything comes to life again and looks more beautiful than ever.

29

🎧 Listen to the poem. Learn it by heart and be ready to recite in front of the class. In what way would you describe the months of the year in your country?

*January* brings the snow,  
Makes our feet and fingers glow.  
*February* brings the rain,  
Thaws the frozen lake again.  
*March* brings breezes loud and shrill,  
Stirs the dancing daffodil.  
*April* brings the primrose sweet,  
Scatters daisies at our feet.  
*May* brings flocks of pretty lambs,  
Skipping by their fleecy dams.  
*June* brings tulips, lilies, roses,  
Fills the children's hands with posies.

Hot *July* brings cooling showers,  
Apricots and gillyflowers.  
*August* brings the shaves of corn  
Then the harvest home is born.  
Warm *September* brings the fruit.  
Sportsmen then begin to shoot.  
Fresh *October* brings the pheasants,  
Then to gather nuts is pleasant.  
Dull *November* brings the blast,  
Then the leaves are whirling fast.  
Chill *December* brings the sleet,  
Blazing fire, and Christmas treat.

*Sara Coleridge*

30

Complete the sentences with the appropriate adjective from the list below. Transcribe the given adjectives.

light heavy overcast blustering torrential baking thick dry  
bitterly scattered sultry gale-force mild sunny boiling



1. It's a very \_\_\_\_\_ day; the umbrella will just blow away.  
2. You expect \_\_\_\_\_ rain in some tropical countries, but not here. 3. It was \_\_\_\_\_ hot and I couldn't stay on the beach.  
4. The forecast said there would be \_\_\_\_\_ showers across the region during the morning, but with much sunshine between them. 5. It's \_\_\_\_\_ cold outside, so dress up warm. 6. When it's very hot, a \_\_\_\_\_ breeze makes it bearable. 7. The \_\_\_\_\_ skies made us think that it was going to pour with rain any moment. 8. My dad doesn't like driving when there is \_\_\_\_\_ fog. 9. Several trees were blown down in the \_\_\_\_\_ winds. 10. After the rain, we'll have a \_\_\_\_\_ spell for a few days. 11. The footballers continued to play in spite of the \_\_\_\_\_ rain. 12. I wouldn't like a job outside in the summer when it's \_\_\_\_\_ hot. 13. We've had a \_\_\_\_\_ winter this year. 14. If it's \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow, we could have a picnic. 15. The heat was unbearable, the \_\_\_\_\_ sun made us sweat a lot.

31

Read these sentences and translate them into Ukrainian. Pay attention to the word and phrases in bold type. Use them in the examples of your own.

1. It is hot and **suffocating**. 2. We are in a **spell of fine weather**. 3. There is no bad weather; there are bad clothes (proverb). 4. The snow is half a meter deep.



5. It is raining heavily. My clothes are **dripping wet**. 6. I don't want to **put up with** this terrible weather, but I can't change it.

7. The strong wind has **lessened in force**. Clouds are **variable**.

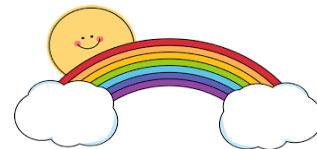
8. **How bitterly cold it is!** I am **numb**. 9. There is a **nip in the air**.

It is frosty. 10. It is windy. The cold sharp wind **has almost swept me off my feet**. 11. What a **mild winter** we are having this year. 12. In winter, we usually go to Dubai **for the sake of** sun and hot weather. 13. Nature awakens from its long winter sleep. 14. It is **freezing** hard. **Don't be frost-bitten**. 15. The weather **leaves much to be desired**. It is sleeting. 16. The rivers and lakes are frozen, the snow is **falling thick**. 17. It **looks like** rain. 18. Frost is expected at night it's **going from bad to worse**. 19. The weather is **improving**. Thin new blades of grass **come up**. 20. I am **chilled to the bone** and my **teeth are chattering with cold**. 21. I've got **soaked to the skin**. 22. The sun is **trying**.

32

You are going to listen to an interview about rainbows. Answer the questions and then complete the sentences below.

- What's the programme called?
- What does Nicola want to know?
- Where does Kate work?



1. The sun's energy is composed of \_\_\_\_\_, microwaves and light. 2. Light reaching the Earth is bent by \_\_\_\_\_ in the air. 3. Kate suggests looking closely at a \_\_\_\_\_. 4. We don't see rainbows in winter because the raindrops are \_\_\_\_\_. 5. You can create a rainbow by \_\_\_\_\_ into the air. 6. To do Kate's experiment, you need a mirror, the sun, a bowl of water and a \_\_\_\_\_. 7. The next question is about the cause of \_\_\_\_\_.

33

Complete the pairs of sentences with the correct words. Use the correct form of the verbs.

1. *climate / weather*

- We had to study the \_\_\_\_\_ of different countries at our geography lesson.
- What's the \_\_\_\_\_ going to be like at the weekend?

2. *fall / reach / drop / rise*

- The temperature \_\_\_\_\_ quickly yesterday and it \_\_\_\_\_ 34 degrees in the sun.
- The temperature always \_\_\_\_\_ down in the evening and last night it \_\_\_\_\_ to 5 degrees below zero Centigrade.



### 3. cool off / warm up

- a) You must be cold! Come in and \_\_\_\_\_.  
b) We were really hot and had to \_\_\_\_\_ in the pool.

### 4. freezing / chilly

- a) The evening wasn't as cold as in winter, but it was really \_\_\_\_\_, so we needed to dress up warm.  
b) It was \_\_\_\_\_ last night, so we put on thick coats, scarves and gloves!

### 5. mild / stifling

- a) It's been a \_\_\_\_\_ winter so far, with no snow and hardly any frosts.  
b) It was very \_\_\_\_\_ when we were on holiday and the air conditioning didn't work!

34

### Translate the following sentences into English.

1. – Яка сьогодні погода? – Жах як холодно, мороз кусається, а сильний холодний пронизливий поривчастий вітер ледве не збив мене з ніг. Вчора вночі був сильний снігопад. Тепер навкруги снігові замети, сніг півметра. На дорогах транспортні пробки. Я промерз до кісток і мої зуби стукотять від холоду.



2. Я залишуся вдома. Я терпіти не можу холод. На жаль, цього року в нас дуже сувора зима. Всі тільки говорять про погоду, але ніхто не може нічого зробити, щоб змінити її.

3. Здається, сьогодні прекрасний день! Я сподіваюсь, гарна погода протримається. Але вона надто гарна, щоб тривати довго.

4. Щодо мене, сьогодні дуже спекотно. Спека нестерпна, +30° C у тіні. На небі ні хмаринки. Пече сонце. Немає і подиху вітру. Душно. Не було ні краплини дощу протягом останнього місяця. Погода незабаром зміниться, я сподіваюсь. І не уникнути нам короткого періоду дощової погоди.

5. Вчора була також жаклива гроза і багато дерев попадали під час грози. Я потрапив під дощ і мій одяг промок наскрізь.



6. Небо проясняється, сонце пробивається. Поглянь на цю чудову веселку. Дійсно так, після зливи настає тиша. Це приємна зміна погоди після періоду дощів, гроз і граду.

7. Який порив вітру! Який спалах блискавки! Який жакливий удар грому! Зараз буде лити дощ.



8. Весною розпускаються бруньки на деревах, зеленіють луки і цвітуть квіти. Перелітні птахи повертаються на рідну землю, в'ють гнізда, несуть та висиджують яйця, виводять улітку пташок, щоб восени знову відлетіти в Італію чи Африку.

9. Фермери обробляють землю та сіють зерно. Згодом нові посіви починають швидко рости, дозрівають, і ось уже люди готуються до збирання врожаю.

10. Ще недавно цвіли дерева, а ось на них вже з'явилися плоди, які скоро дозріють і принесуть задоволення і дорослим, і малим.

35

🗨️ **Answer and discuss the following questions using the specific vocabulary.**

- 1. Are there four seasons (**autumn / winter / spring / summer**) in Ukraine?
  - 2. What countries do you know where there are only two seasons (rainy and dry)? Have you visited them?
  - 3. What's the average temperature in your country in the **autumn / winter / spring / summer** time?
- 
- 4. What is the hottest / the coldest month?
  - 5. What month gets the most rain in your country?
  - 6. In your opinion, which season is the most beautiful?
  - 7. Which season is the most comfortable for you? Why?
  - 8. Which season to your mind has more advantages than disadvantages?
- 9. What kind of climate do you prefer when choosing a place to go on vacation?
  - 10. Which is the best season for a holiday?
  - 11. What kind of weather do most people like and dislike? Why?
  - 12. What are your favourite summer, spring, winter and autumn activities?
- 
- 13. Which flowers do you like best? Why? What do they remind you of? Do any sweet memories come to your mind when you recall these flowers?
  - 14. What birds always migrate for the winter period or always stay in this country for winter?
- 15. Do you know any interesting myths or stories about weather?

36

**Translate the sentences into Ukrainian. Say what season such weather is typical of.**

1. It is warm and mainly dry, but with rain or drizzle at times. \_\_\_\_\_
2. It is cold and gloomy with heavy showers at times. \_\_\_\_\_
3. It is chilly. The sky is overcast. Scattered showers are possible. \_\_\_\_\_
4. That nasty-looking cloud promises rain. \_\_\_\_\_
5. The sky has veiled itself since the morning. \_\_\_\_\_
6. It is raining cats and dogs. \_\_\_\_\_
7. It is slippery. Huge icicles glitter in the sun. \_\_\_\_\_
8. I've got wet to the bone, though it is just drizzling. \_\_\_\_\_
9. It is snowy. Large snowflakes are slowly falling to the ground. \_\_\_\_\_
10. It is sloppy. \_\_\_\_\_

37

Combine the two sentences into one by introducing the Present Perfect Continuous.

**Model:** It started raining last Sunday. It is still raining. – It *has been raining since* last Sunday. or It *has been raining for* ten days.



1. Kevin is tobogganing. He began tobogganing two hours ago. – \_\_\_\_\_
2. My family and I moved to foggy London in 1978. We are still living in London. – \_\_\_\_\_
3. Our tourist group began travelling in the south of Spain a week ago. We're still travelling there. – \_\_\_\_\_
4. It is 8 p.m. and it is raining cats and dogs. It started raining in the morning. – \_\_\_\_\_
5. It started snowing at 7 o'clock. It's 8 o'clock, and it's still snowing. – \_\_\_\_\_
6. Mary's dream is to see the North Pole. Two years have passed but her dream hasn't come true yet. So, Mary is still looking forward to it. – \_\_\_\_\_
7. My friends went to the mountains to ski eight days ago. They are still skiing there. – \_\_\_\_\_
8. Ann is looking for her mittens. She began looking six days ago. – \_\_\_\_\_
9. George is skating in Scotland. He started doing it on January, 22. – \_\_\_\_\_
10. Harry began working at the Meteorological Bureau last year. He is still working there. – \_\_\_\_\_

38

Fill the spaces in the following sentences by using *for* or *since*.



1. That boy has been skating there \_\_\_\_\_ six o'clock.
2. I've been working in the meteorological bureau \_\_\_\_\_ two months.
3. They've been living in the mountains \_\_\_\_\_ 1970.
4. He has been in Spain \_\_\_\_\_ a year.
5. I've known about hurricanes \_\_\_\_\_ a long time.
6. They have been skiing \_\_\_\_\_ three hours.
7. Susan has been using the same skates \_\_\_\_\_ 1975.
8. Things have changed \_\_\_\_\_ I was a girl.
9. The kettle has been boiling \_\_\_\_\_ a quarter of an hour.
10. The central heating has been on \_\_\_\_\_ October.
11. He has been very ill \_\_\_\_\_ the last month.
12. I've been using this umbrella \_\_\_\_\_ two years.
13. We've been waiting when it stops raining \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour.
14. Mr. Smith has been in hospital \_\_\_\_\_ his accident.
15. Andrew hasn't spoken to me \_\_\_\_\_ the last meeting.
16. The Andersons have been on holiday in snowy Austria \_\_\_\_\_ December.
17. The heatwave has lasted \_\_\_\_\_ several weeks.
18. It has been very foggy \_\_\_\_\_ early morning.
19. They have been quarrelling ever \_\_\_\_\_ they got married.
20. I've been awake \_\_\_\_\_ four o'clock.
21. I've been awake \_\_\_\_\_ a long time.
22. I've earned my own living \_\_\_\_\_ I left school.
23. Nobody has seen hoar-frost \_\_\_\_\_ last week.
24. The police have been looking for him \_\_\_\_\_ four days.
25. He had a bad fall last week and \_\_\_\_\_ then he hasn't left the house.
26. He has been under water \_\_\_\_\_ half an hour.
27. That tree has been there \_\_\_\_\_ 2,000 years.
28. I've been trying to



open this door \_\_\_\_\_ forty-five minutes. **29.** He hasn't eaten anything \_\_\_\_\_ twenty-four hours. **30.** We've had terrible weather \_\_\_\_\_ the whole month. **31.** They have been farming this land \_\_\_\_\_ the tenth century.

**39** Make up all types of questions to each sentence.

**1.** Sam and Bob have been playing snowballs since midday. **2.** Steve has been telling Mary about tornadoes for 20 minutes. **3.** Carmen has been swimming in the pond for an hour. **4.** My sister and I have been watching the sunrise for ten minutes. **5.** It has been pouring since yesterday. **6.** My dog has been playing in the rain for 10 minutes.

**40** Describe what types of weather are good and bad for doing the things illustrated below.

**Model:** You want to ski.

*bad:* mild weather, which makes the snow melt; *good:* cold, clear days



**1.** You want to plant flowers in the garden. **2.** You would like to have an evening barbecue. **3.** You are going out in a small sailing boat. **4.** You want to spend a day of sightseeing in a big city. **5.** Your children want to make a snowman. **6.** You want to sunbathe. **7.** You want to study English at home. **8.** You want to toboggan.

**41** Now speak about the weather you like in each season and what your favourite summer, spring, winter and autumn activities are according to the plan below.



#### Plan

1. Seasons and their advantages and disadvantages
2. Seasonal activities
3. Your favourite seasonal activities

**42** Read the text and get ready to describe your favourite season in detail.

#### *My Favourite Season*

As we know, the weather **depends on** the season and **changes with** the changing of the season. Consider winter, for example. In our country it begins in December when the chilly days of autumn **change to** the cold days of winter. The first frosts arrive and **constant drizzling** and rain become sleet and then snow, **turning into** slush in the streets. I like winter, but when it is neither mild nor severe. There are some wonderful days when the temperature is about 5-7 degrees below zero; the air is crisp and nippy. There may be some blizzards and

snow may **fall thick** making snowdrifts **half a meter deep**. The rivers and lakes are frozen and everything **glitters in the sun**. On such days I can't stay at home, I enjoy being out of doors going skating, skiing and tobogganing, or just simply playing snowballs with **my cheeks burning with** frost. But I hate when it **freezes hard** and it's **bitterly cold**. If the temperature is about 20 degrees below zero, I **am chilled to the bone**, I am **numb**, the cold makes my hands **stiff** and my **teeth are chattering with the cold**. Of course, for me not to **get frost-bitten** I prefer staying at home on such **beastly** and **abominable** days.



Moreover, I want to add that I don't like when the winter is extremely mild. If the temperature is about zero in Kyiv, the weather is usually wretched, rotten and catch-cold. On such days, the humidity is high, so the air becomes moist and unpleasant, it often drizzles or sleet. The sky is overcast, the sun **isn't even trying**. Everything around looks gloomy and dull. Most of all I hate going somewhere in this dismal period, because the streets are very slippery with half-melted icy sheet and slush, so buses **splash** this mud **on** passers-by. What is more, if a day is a blustery one, the weather becomes absolutely **unbearable**, because the humidity makes the wind rough, fitful and piercing. But nevertheless, despite all the above-mentioned **drawbacks**, to me winter has its own peculiar interest and beauty, and there is no reason **to be bored to death** when there are interesting books, theatres and concerts, and the cinema.

43

**Translate the following sentences into English.**



1. Давайте поговоримо про пори року, адже в кожного є свої вподобання.
2. – Яка твоя улюблена пора року? – Як на мене, мені подобається весна. Я люблю, коли природа прокидається від довгого зимового сну. Повітря свіже, наповнене ароматом весняних квітів.

3. З приходом весни все довкола оживає, наповнюється новим життям. Нові сподівання та мрії оживають. Природа сповнена обіцянок.

4. А мені подобається літо. Це моя улюблена пора року. Подобається гаряче сонце, ніжний вітерець, а також літній дощ з громом і блискавками. Все таке свіже після дощу.



5. Немає нічого кращого ніж “Бабине літо”, коли встановлюється тепла погода, яскраво світить сонце. Небо майже безхмарне. Але пізня осінь з різким пронизливим вітром, мрякою, сльотою і брудом не для мене! Але восени багато стиглих фруктів та овочів і заради цього я можу примиритися з деякими незручностями.

6. А що може бути кращим за літні канікули? Я можу насолоджуватися відпочинком після важкої праці протягом цілого року. Можна поїхати до узбережжя моря або піти на річку, щоб загоряти і купатися.

7. Це може здаватися дивним, але я обожаю осінь. Земля вкрита м'яким килимом із різнокольорового листя.

8. Взимку все виглядає таким білим, чарівним. Мені більше всього подобаються сонячні ранки, коли дерева в інію і бурульки, що звисають з дахів, сяють на сонці. Особливо після сильного снігопаду дітям подобається проводити час на вулиці, ліпити снігову бабу, гратися в сніжки, кататися на ковзанах і санчатах. Коли на вулиці дуже холодно, їх щоки палають від морозу.

44

🔊 Listen to the dialogue between Mrs. Smith and Mrs. Jones and fill in the blanks in the sentences below. Answer the questions.

### *The Season of Change*

- It's become quite \_\_\_\_\_ all of a sudden.
- Yes, I think the summer is over at last and winter's \_\_\_\_\_.
- It gets \_\_\_\_\_ soon after teatime now.
- I don't mind \_\_\_\_\_ as long as the house is cosy and warm, and I adore the \_\_\_\_\_, \_\_\_\_\_ autumn air.
- I can't \_\_\_\_\_ the heat.
- Do you remember the \_\_\_\_\_ we had in July?
- I couldn't go and sleep at night and the milk \_\_\_\_\_ before you could put it in the fridge.
- The summers seem to \_\_\_\_\_ faster and faster every year.
- Have you noticed the old \_\_\_\_\_ in the lane?
- The leaves have \_\_\_\_\_ already.
- My hair was \_\_\_\_\_ once and now it's going \_\_\_\_\_, but no one says it looks beautiful any more.
- The trees will be \_\_\_\_\_ in a few weeks.

- 1. What's Mrs. Jones' preference in weather?
- 2. Which season does Mrs. Smith prefer? Why?
- 3. What's Mrs. Jones' attitude towards summer?
- 4. Does Mrs. Smith worry about growing old?

45

Read the dialogue and choose a weather word or words from the box to fill the gaps. (Note: not all the words are used.) Say what's your idea of awful weather.

pour with rain  
scattered showers  
floods

slushy  
overcast  
hail

mist  
sunny spells  
blizzards

drought  
changeable  
fog

Paul: *Awful weather we've been having, isn't it?*  
 Sue: Yes, I can't believe it's November already! It's been so cold and what about that **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ the other day?  
 Paul: *Yes, I had to stop my car. It was so heavy I thought some pieces would smash the windscreen.*  
 Sue: And then it was really **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ on the roads. Quite slippery, really.  
 Paul: *Yes, although better than the weather they've been having in Scotland, maybe. Did you hear about the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_?*  
 Sue: Yes, you wouldn't expect so much snow at this time of year, even in the north.  
 Paul: *No. Anyway, today looks like it might be a bit better.*  
 Sue: Yes, it does. The forecast was for **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ and **5.** \_\_\_\_\_.  
 Paul: *The usual forecast in the UK then – changeable! You have to make sure you take your umbrella out with you every day.*  
 Sue: At least there's no chance of a **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ where we live though, with all the rain we get.  
 Paul: *There's more likely to be **7.** \_\_\_\_\_, really. The rivers have been quite high recently.*  
 Sue: Don't tempt fate! I've heard it's going to **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow.

**46** ✎ **Make up a dialogue using the phrases from your vocabulary.**

- Abundant rain
- Hard frost
- Abominable weather
- Wintry sun
- Fitful wind
- White snowflakes
- Skiing and skating
- A spell of charming weather



- Stifling air
- Scorching sun
- Sultry
- Violent wind
- Tender breeze
- Windsurfing
- Crisp air
- Beastly weather

**47** ✎ **Describe the best and the worst seasons according to your liking.**

**Your Best Season**

Months:  
 Weather:  
 What happens:



**Your Worst Season**

Months:  
 Weather:  
 What happens:



**48** ✎ **Now speak about the worst season for you. Describe the activities and the weather typical of this season. State the reason(s) why you hate the season in question. Use your active vocabulary.**

49

Replace the infinitives in brackets using the Present Perfect or the Present Perfect Continuous.



1. Ralph is getting frustrated because he has to leave and it is still drizzling outside. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*drizzle*) for several hours. 2. The seller is taking down 'For Sale' sign. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) the umbrellas. 3. Mariel is traveling to the mountains on Tuesday. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a pair of skis. 4. Samanta is listening to the weather forecast for tomorrow. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/turn on*) the TV.

5. John started fixing the thermometer this morning. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*) it since 9 a.m. 6. Rachel is trying to stand up. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/fall over*) her skis. 7. Lisa started skating at 8 a.m. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*skate*) since 8 a.m. 8. Elaine is still waiting for the clouds to dissipate. The sky \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/clear up*) yet. 9. Since they were very young, the children \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) jumping in puddles of rain. 10. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*) heavily since this morning. 11. I'm pleased to say that the visibility \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) better. 12. I never \_\_\_\_\_ (*understand*) why we have to suffer severe frosts. 13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/see*) a rainbow. 14. In recent years, Brazilian companies \_\_\_\_\_ (*invest*) a lot of money into developing advanced antifog technology. 15. That man \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) over there for hours enjoying the glittering icicles. 16. The castle \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) on that hill for 900 years. 17. Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (*garden*) all the afternoon. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*plant*) many rose bushes as the weather is very favourable today. 18. James \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the beach to sunbathe, he is not home. 19. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) a lot of hoar-frost recently. 20. How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) in the hot sun? 21. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) long enough. I'm leaving as it is going to rain heavily. 22. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) to read weather clues for six years. 23. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) most of the vocabulary related to the topic *Weather*. 24. Look! Somebody \_\_\_\_\_ (*break*) the skis. 25. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) ill with flu for three weeks already. 26. You look pale. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) too long in the wind. 27. What \_\_\_\_\_ (*you/do*) since I saw you last summer? 28. This is the most disastrous hurricane I \_\_\_\_\_ (*ever/see*). 29. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/witness*) earthquakes before. 30. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/have*) skis in his life.

50

Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate present tense.



1. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*shine*) since the very morning. 2. The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) so good this summer that we \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the beach most weekends. 3. The rain \_\_\_\_\_ (*pour*) down since we got out of the taxi. 4. Perhaps they \_\_\_\_\_ (*already/hear*) the weather forecast. 5. Even when it \_\_\_\_\_ (*freeze*), some people just wear jeans and T-shirts. 6. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) heavily since midnight. So, the kids cannot play football in the yard. 7. This week we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) sailing because of



the weather. **8.** Australian scientists claim that they \_\_\_\_\_ (*develop*) the way of producing more accurate weather forecasts. **9.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) hot to stay in this room. Let's find a cooler place. **10.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) all day long. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*still/rain*) right now. **11.** Snow \_\_\_\_\_ (*cover*) much of the country now. **12.** Even though it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) March, the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*remind*) me of a hot June day. **13.** The last few days \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) hot. **14.** The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) unexpectedly stormy. **15.** The snow, which fell overnight, \_\_\_\_\_ (*cause*) traffic chaos. **16.** Work to repair the bridge \_\_\_\_\_ (*continue*) throughout this summer. **17.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) the football game since it stopped raining. **18.** This night, just as John predicted, a heavy snowfall \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) down. **19.** Anyone who \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) across the hills in such weather does it at their own risk. **20.** They \_\_\_\_\_ (*pull*) the sledge behind themselves through the snow for twenty minutes. **21.** The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very hot in Majorca, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) perfect for swimming. **22.** You'd better stay home tonight. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) cats and dogs. **23.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*ever/snow*) in Africa? **24.** The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*rise*) at 5.16 tomorrow. **25.** Weather conditions \_\_\_\_\_ (*improve*) over the past few weeks. **26.** Though, it may seem extraordinary, London \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) less rain than Rome. **27.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) much better after I had a stroll in the sun. **28.** Even though it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*), they \_\_\_\_\_ (*continue*) to work in the open air. **29.** Trees \_\_\_\_\_ (*grow*) more quickly in summer than in winter. **30.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/find*) it difficult to get up on winter mornings. **31.** The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/be*) hot in August. **32.** The last few days \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) gorgeous. **33.** There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a long drought in this area since last year. **34.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) very warm today, is it? **35.** I usually \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) a warm coat in winter, but today I \_\_\_\_\_ (*put*) on a vest. **36.** Look! The dog \_\_\_\_\_ (*chew*) your new rainboots. **37.** It is 8.30. Ben and Ann \_\_\_\_\_ (*shovel*) the snow in the yard. **38.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a weatherman nowadays. **39.** You \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/lose*) your gloves! Put them into your bag. **40.** Look! There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a bird sitting on the bench. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) at us. **41.** It's the brightest memory I \_\_\_\_\_ (*ever/have*) about rainbows. **42.** Let me show the spring flowers that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*paint*) this week. **43.** The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*rise*) in the east and \_\_\_\_\_ (*set*) in the west. **44.** It's the happiest winter evening I \_\_\_\_\_ (*ever/have*). **45.** The weather is awful, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) all day. **46.** You \_\_\_\_\_ (*eat*) three cold icicles! **47.** Who \_\_\_\_\_ (*predict*) weather in your family? **48.** I'm taking my sister out as she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/have*) any sun for a long time. **49.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/enjoy*) bungee jumping and snowboarding in my life. **50.** "Little boy", said a man, "why \_\_\_\_\_ (*you/carry*) that umbrella over your head? It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/rain*) and the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*shine*)."  
**51.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) this man at all. **52.** Listen! It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) outside. **53.** This year I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a good harvest of apples. **54.** We can go out now. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/drizzle*).



## SECTION II: THE CLIMATE OF UKRAINE. WEATHER AND MOOD.

### GRAMMAR:

- Adjectives to Describe Emotions
- The Formal Subjects *It* and *There*
- The Present Tenses (Revision)

### Vocabulary

<b>Climate</b>	<b>Клімат</b>
altitude	висота над рівнем моря
coastal	прибережний
fluctuation	коливання, нестійкість
•~s <i>in temperature</i>	•коливання температури
latitude	широта
a prevailing wind	переважаючий; пануючий вітер
proximity ( <i>to</i> )	близькість ( <i>до</i> )
relief	рельєф
• <i>terrain</i>	•рельєф ( <i>місцевості</i> )
steppe	степ
tundra	тундра
to determine	визначати, обумовлювати
to effect / to influence	впливати, мати вплив на щось
to range ( <i>from...to / between...and</i> )	коливатися ( <i>від...до / між...та</i> )
to vary	мінятися, змінюватися
<b>SAD (Seasonal Affective Disorder)</b>	<b>Сезонний Афективний Розлад (Сезонна Депресія)</b>
to affect	погано впливати, порушувати
to be predisposed ( <i>to</i> )	бути схильним ( <i>до</i> )
to endure	терпіти, мовчки зносити
to occur	траплятися, відбуватися
bad temper / low mood	поганий настрій
a disorder	розлад, хвороба
insomnia	безсоння
jet lag / bio-rhythmic confusion	розлад біоритмів
tiredness	втома
<b>Describing Mood and Emotions</b>	<b>Опис Настрою та Емоцій</b>
active	енергійний; активний
astonished / amazed	(вкрай) здивований, вражений
awful	жахливий
bewildered	збентежений, спантеличений

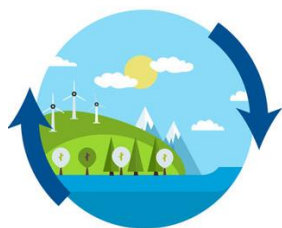
bored	який відчуває нудьгу
calm	спокійний, незворушний
cheerful / merry	веселий, радісний
confused	збентежений; поставлений у глухий кут
dejected	пригноблений; пригнічений
depressed	пригнічений; засмучений
disappointed / disillusioned / frustrated	розчарований, засмучений
ecstatic	який впав у транс
edgy	роздратований; нервовий
elated	у піднесеному настрої; у захваті
empty	спустошений
enthusiastic	сповнений ентузіазму
excited	збуджений; діяльний
exhausted / drained	змучений, виснажений; який видихнувся
fed up ( <i>with</i> )	ситий по горло
frivolous	легковажний, фривольний
full of longing	сповнений палкого бажання, прагнення
gloomy	сумний; хмурий
heart-broken	вбитий горем; з розбитим серцем
hopeful	який сподівається, оптимістичний
idle / lazy	ледачий
introspective	інтроспективний; який займається самоаналізом
irritable / easily annoyed	дратівливий; болісно чутливий
melancholic / pensive	сумний, схильний до меланхолії
miserable	жалюгідний, нещасний
moody	який легко піддається змінам настрою
optimistic	оптимістичний
overwhelmed	переповнений почуттями
playful	грайливий, веселий, жартівливий
positive	рішучий; категоричний
rash	безрозсудний; легковажний
refreshed	освіжений
relaxed	розслаблений
resentful / offended	ображений, обурений
restless	неспокійний, непосидючий
self-satisfied	самозадоволений, самозаспокоєний
sentimental	сентиментальний, чутливий
touchy / easily upset	підвищено чутливий



uncertain	нерішучий, що сумнівається
weary	невеселий, безрадісний

**1** Read and translate the text into Ukrainian. Discuss it in the class using the questions below.

### *The Climate of Ukraine*



The **geographical location** of Ukraine **determines** its climate. In general, the country's climate is **temperately continental** with cold winters and warm summers, and only on the southern coast of the Crimea, it is **subtropical** with mild, wet winters and hot, dry summers.

Many factors, such as the **latitude**, **relief**, **altitude**, the direction of the **prevailing winds** and **proximity to** seas and oceans cause the differences in climate. The climate **varies** not only from the north to the south, but also from the north-west to the south-east as the warm damp air moves from the north-west Atlantic and becomes drier.

The climate of Ukraine has considerable **fluctuation in** weather conditions from year to year. Alongside very wet years, there can be **droughts**, and alongside cold years, there are warm years.

Ukraine **is washed by** the Black and the Azov Seas but they have small influence on the climate and it is felt only in **coastal areas**. The warmest region is nearby the Black Sea, the coldest regions are in the northeast and in the Carpathian Mountains.

The average yearly temperature in Ukraine is +5°C to +7°C in the north, and +11°C to +13°C in the south. The coldest month is January, and the hottest month is July. Winter temperatures **range between** -8°C and -2°C, depending on location, and summer temperatures **range from** +18°C to +30°C.

Precipitation ranges from about 76 cm a year in the north to about 23 cm in the south. Rainfall is higher in the north and west of the country due to the influence of the Carpathian Mountains. There are regular snowfalls between November and April.

In general, Ukraine can be divided into four different climatic regions: cool snow forest climate, **steppe** climate, subtropical climate and mountain **tundra** climate.

- 1. What factors cause the differences in climate?
- 2. What factors influence the climate of Ukraine?
- 3. What is the variety of climatic regions in Ukraine?
- 4. What climate zone do you live in?
- 5. What is the average yearly temperature in Ukraine in the north / south?
- 6. What is the coldest / warmest month?

**2****Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

- |                           |                                                                                                                           |
|---------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>steppe</i>          | a) difference in height from the surrounding terrain; the amount of variation in elevation and slope in a particular area |
| 2. <i>tundra</i>          | b) the height of an object or point in relation to sea level or ground level                                              |
| 3. <i>precipitation</i>   | c) the type of wind that blows over that area most of the time                                                            |
| 4. <i>fluctuation</i>     | d) the weather conditions prevailing in an area in general or over a long period                                          |
| 5. <i>drought</i>         | e) nearness to a place                                                                                                    |
| 6. <i>climate</i>         | f) irregular rises and falls in number or amount; a variation                                                             |
| 7. <i>relief</i>          | g) a large area of flat grassy land where there are no trees                                                              |
| 8. <i>altitude</i>        | h) a vast area of land in which the ground below the top layer of soil is always frozen and no trees grow there           |
| 9. <i>prevailing wind</i> | i) rain, snow, sleet, or hail that falls to or condenses on the ground                                                    |
| 10. <i>proximity</i>      | j) a long period of time during which no rain falls                                                                       |

**3****Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Клімат України вирізняється мінливістю погодних умов з року в рік. Поряд з дуже вологими роками можуть бути посушливі роки, а поряд з дуже холодними – теплі.



2. Клімат України визначається її географічним положенням. Територія України знаходиться у помірному поясі. Її клімат помірно-континентальний, і лише на південному березі Криму – субтропічний.

3. Чорне і Азовське моря мало впливають на клімат, і їх вплив відчувається лише в прибережних районах. Найтепліший район знаходиться поряд з Чорним морем, а найхолодніший – на північному сході і в горах.

4. Середньорічна температура в Україні варіюється від +5°C на півночі до +11°C на півдні. Січень – найхолодніший місяць, а липень – найспекотніший.

5. У цілому Україна може бути поділена на чотири різні кліматичні регіони: холодний і сніговий лісовий клімат, степовий клімат, субтропічний клімат і клімат тундри. Ми маємо теплі літа і не дуже холодні зими, але вони завжди зі снігом.

**4****Listen to the information about the climate types in the UK and the USA and compare these two countries.**

5

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about climate change. Fill in the gaps and answer the questions below.

### *Climate Change*

Climate change is 1. \_\_\_\_\_ most worrying things for our planet. Many politicians and scientists say it is the biggest 2. \_\_\_\_\_. I read almost every day that climate change is changing 3. \_\_\_\_\_. Many species of animal, fish, insect, frog, etc. are dying. The 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the Arctic and Antarctica are melting. Our weather is changing 5. \_\_\_\_\_ getting warmer, or colder, or are having 6. \_\_\_\_\_ hurricanes. We all need to 7. \_\_\_\_\_ so that climate change does not destroy us. It's important to 8. \_\_\_\_\_ things that produce greenhouse gasses. These warm the planet and change the climate. Doing 9. \_\_\_\_\_ turning off lights and recycling 10. \_\_\_\_\_.



- 1. How do you feel about climate change?
- 2. Has climate change affected Ukraine?
- 3. Do you believe everything scientists say about climate change?
- 4. What do you think the world's climate will be like 50 years from now?
- 5. What do you do to try to limit the effects of climate change?
- 6. What are you most worried about with climate change?
- 7. Are there any positives to come from climate change?
- 8. What's the difference between global warming and climate change?

6

For points 1-10, read the text below and decide which answer (a, b, c or d) best fits each gap. Do you agree with the ideas mentioned in the text?

### *Climate and Character*

Does the climate of a country really 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the behaviour of the people who live in it and help to 2. \_\_\_\_\_ its culture? Have you ever heard of people from hot countries, being described 3. \_\_\_\_\_ “warm and friendly” while those from places with low temperatures and grey climates are sometimes called “cold and distant”?

The people who live in colder climates tend 4. \_\_\_\_\_ spend much more time at home 5. \_\_\_\_\_ television or wondering what colour to paint the living room. As a result of their being “shut in” at home for 6. \_\_\_\_\_ of their lives, perhaps they also develop personalities to match. Maybe they tend to be 7. \_\_\_\_\_ expressive in their everyday lives.

In 8. \_\_\_\_\_, we see that people who live in warm and sunny countries spend much more time outdoors. In squares all 9. \_\_\_\_\_ southern Europe, for example, we can see hundreds of people 10. \_\_\_\_\_ the day drinking coffee in cafés and chatting. It certainly seems clear how climate affects behavior. 11. \_\_\_\_\_, you have to be careful not to generalize too much.

- |     |                    |                    |                    |                      |
|-----|--------------------|--------------------|--------------------|----------------------|
| 1.  | a) <i>affect</i>   | b) <i>result</i>   | c) <i>make</i>     | d) <i>build</i>      |
| 2.  | a) <i>do</i>       | b) <i>create</i>   | c) <i>be</i>       | d) <i>invent</i>     |
| 3.  | a) <i>as</i>       | b) <i>while</i>    | c) <i>like</i>     | d) <i>during</i>     |
| 4.  | a) <i>to</i>       | b) <i>of</i>       | c) <i>at</i>       | d) <i>in</i>         |
| 5.  | a) <i>viewing</i>  | b) <i>looking</i>  | c) <i>watching</i> | d) <i>seeing</i>     |
| 6.  | a) <i>most</i>     | b) <i>lots</i>     | c) <i>many</i>     | d) <i>rest</i>       |
| 7.  | a) <i>least</i>    | b) <i>less</i>     | c) <i>little</i>   | d) <i>few</i>        |
| 8.  | a) <i>opposite</i> | b) <i>addition</i> | c) <i>contrast</i> | d) <i>similarity</i> |
| 9.  | a) <i>in</i>       | b) <i>into</i>     | c) <i>under</i>    | d) <i>over</i>       |
| 10. | a) <i>while</i>    | b) <i>during</i>   | c) <i>when</i>     | d) <i>as</i>         |
| 11. | a) <i>Although</i> | b) <i>However</i>  | c) <i>Despite</i>  | d) <i>Otherwise</i>  |

**7** Here are some of the most common adjectives we use to describe the way we feel. Each one has a clue with it, to help you understand the mood. Some of the clues contain useful phrases about the weather.

#### JAN

- |    |                                                         |                        |
|----|---------------------------------------------------------|------------------------|
| 1  | Another year gone never to return.                      | <b>melancholic</b>     |
| 7  | I suppose none of us is getting any younger.            | <b>pensive</b>         |
| 10 | I think nearly half the world is white with snow today. | <b>thoughtful</b>      |
| 16 | The snow never seems as white as it used to be.         | <b>nostalgic</b>       |
| 23 | Oh, for the spring!                                     | <b>full of longing</b> |
| 31 | Love Story on TV again tonight – super!                 | <b>sentimental</b>     |

#### FEB

- |    |                                                      |                   |
|----|------------------------------------------------------|-------------------|
| 3  | Another <b>grey, cloudy day</b> .                    | <b>bored</b>      |
| 7  | Yet another day of <b>drizzle</b> and <b>fog</b> .   | <b>miserable</b>  |
| 12 | <b>Heavy storms</b> and a few <b>sunny periods</b> . | <b>moody</b>      |
| 13 | Everyone got a rise in salary except me!             | <b>resentful</b>  |
| 21 | Why, oh why can't I seem to do things right?         | <b>frustrated</b> |
| 27 | Another series of repeats on telly – oh no!          | <b>fed up</b>     |

#### MAR

- |    |                                               |                      |
|----|-----------------------------------------------|----------------------|
| 4  | <b>Showers and rainbows</b> .                 | <b>confused</b>      |
| 9  | Umbrella and parasol?                         | <b>uncertain</b>     |
| 14 | Who am I? What am I?                          | <b>introspective</b> |
| 24 | Oh, sit still, will you!                      | <b>restless</b>      |
| 30 | I think <b>the rain is going to ease off!</b> | <b>hopeful</b>       |

#### APR

- |   |                                        |                  |
|---|----------------------------------------|------------------|
| 2 | <b>Sleet</b> and <b>biting winds</b> . | <b>edgy</b>      |
| 5 | <b>Frosty mornings</b> and icy roads.  | <b>touchy</b>    |
| 8 | You won't have any fingernails left.   | <b>nervous</b>   |
| 9 | OK, OK, don't bite my head off!        | <b>irritable</b> |

16 I heard a cuckoo. Did you hear it?

25 **The sun's coming out.**

### MAY

1 I think it's going to **clear up.**

6 I've booked the holiday, so you can't say no.

11 Just six more weeks and we'll be there.

19 How about a ten-mile walk tomorrow?

22 Oh, I loved it! Adored it! Fantastic!

26 You mean I've really won the Best Office Boy title?

### JUN

5 UK Best Office Boy Competition? No problem!

13 Not a **breath of wind.**

16 A **cool breeze**, a **cloudless sky.**

19 I could lie here forever.

24 It's too hot to move.

28 Oh yes, this is the life!

### JUL

1 She smiled at me! She actually smiled at me!

4 She said she'd come to dinner!

7 Now I know how the winner must have felt.

10 Jumping for joy!

18 Pinch me to let me know I'm not dreaming.

28 Paradise must be like this.

### AUG

2 I know I don't know you, but still you can marry me!

6 It's so **close** and heavy today, no air at all.

9 **Sticky, thundery heat.**

14 No energy, no emotion.

19 She's gone. I've got nothing left.

24 And it was going to be so good!

### SEP

1 And she was so, so nice.

4 That's the last holiday romance I'll ever have!

11 **The days are closing in.**

18 It's going to be a **long hard winter.**

24 Why bother? Why care?

29 I just don't understand.

### OCT

2 **An overcast sky.**

8 Why did you have to mention her name?

12 **The rain's set in** for the day.

17 Why are there no new people to meet?

**alert**

**cheerful**

**optimistic**

**positive**

**excited**

**active**

**enthusiastic**

**thrilled**

**confident**

**calm**

**refreshed**

**relaxed**

**idle/lazy**

**content**

**exhilarated**

**elated**

**triumphant**

**on top of the world**

**up in the clouds**

**ecstatic**

**wild/rash**

**wearry**

**drained**

**exhausted**

**empty**

**disappointed**

**heart-broken**

**disillusioned**

**gloomy**

**depressed**

**disheartened**

**bewildered**

**dejected**

**easily upset**

**distressed**

**lonely**

24 I don't want any new faces round here, thank you!

30 **Hailstorms** and **icy winds**.

### NOV

1 Redundant and thrown out of my flat? All alone.

2 To be or not to be?

8 Nextdoor's music is really getting on my nerves!

15 It's **brightening up**. I don't believe it.

16 It can't be true. I don't know what to say!

17 Come on, let's fly to Paris for breakfast.

### DEC

6 Fancy dress parties and drinks round at our place.

9 Snowball fights.

12 I must be the happiest man alive.

18 Skating on frozen puddles and falling over laughing.

24 Champagne bubbles and laughter.

31 I haven't done so badly this year after all!

**hostile**

**bitter**

**insecure**

**suicidal**

**easily annoyed**

**astonished/amazed**

**overwhelmed**

**light-headed**

**sociable**

**playful**

**over the moon**

**frivolous**

**merry**

**self-satisfied**

8

**Complete the sentences with suitable adjectives. Each space represents one letter and some letters are given:**



1. If you are **b \_ \_ \_ \_**, you feel tired and impatient because you have lost interest in something or because you have nothing to do. 2. If you are **r \_ \_ \_ x \_ \_**, you are calm and not worried or tense. 3. If you feel **e \_ \_ t \_**, you feel unhappy and have no energy, usually because you are very tired or have experienced something upsetting. 4. If you are **d \_ \_ \_ p \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_**, you are rather sad because something has not happened or because something is not as good as you have hoped. 5. If people are **g \_ \_ \_ \_ y**, they are unhappy and have no hope. 6. If you are **d \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_**, you are sad and feel that you cannot enjoy anything, because your situation is so difficult and unpleasant. 7. If you are **b \_ w \_ \_ \_ \_ r \_ \_**, you are very confused and cannot understand something or decide what you should do. 8. If you are **a \_ \_ \_ \_ \_** by something, you are very surprised about it. 9. If you are **p \_ \_ \_ f \_ \_**, you are friendly and humorous. 10. If you are **e \_ h \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_**, you lack physical or mental resources and very tired. 11. You are **r \_ \_ \_ \_ s \_ \_ \_** when you feel cooler or more energetic again after you were hot, tired, or thirsty. 12. If you are rather **m \_ \_ \_ r \_ \_ \_ \_**, you are very unhappy. 13. If people do not show or feel any worry, anger, or excitement, they are **c \_ \_ \_**. 14. You are **d \_ \_ \_ n \_ \_** if you lose all energy and become very tired. 15. If people are **ch \_ \_ \_ \_ \_ \_**, they are noticeably happy and optimistic.

9

🎧 Listen to Nick Haslam, Professor of Psychology at the University of Melbourne, who describes how sunny skies and rainy days can influence our mood and consequently change our behaviours and answer the questions below.

- 1. What metaphors connected with weather vocabulary do we know?
- 2. How does sun influence us?
- 3. How does our mood change our behaviour?
- 4. How does gloomy weather affect people?

10

a) For points 1-10, read and translate the text below and decide which answer best fits each gap.

### *Seasonal Affective Disorder*

Have you 1. \_\_\_\_\_ thought, “Oh, no! Not another grey rainy day!”? Bad weather can really affect your mood, 2. \_\_\_\_\_ it? Most of us get depressed at some point 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the winter, and we can’t wait for spring to come. For some people, 4. \_\_\_\_\_, those dark, cold winter days can cause real medical problems. Symptoms include tiredness, headaches, insomnia, and bad temper.

Hippocrates, the father of medicine, observed in the 4<sup>th</sup> century BC that “whoever wishes to pursue the science of medicine must first investigate the seasons of the year and what occurs in them”.

Doctors have 5. \_\_\_\_\_ a condition which is 6. \_\_\_\_\_ as SAD (Seasonal Affective Disorder – a feeling of tiredness and sadness that some people have during the autumn and winter when there is very little sunshine). SAD can be a big problem in countries in northern Europe where the winters are long and dark. SAD sufferers find it difficult to 7. \_\_\_\_\_, often feel depressed or anxious and their behavior affects the people 8. \_\_\_\_\_ them. In addition, they are often predisposed to overeat and need a great deal of sleep.

The whole problem is caused by a lack of sunlight. Bright light affects the chemistry of the brain, although scientists don’t understand 9. \_\_\_\_\_ how. For example, the inhabitants of the world’s most northerly city – Tromsø, Norway – have to endure two months in darkness. The result is bio-rhythmic confusion: many people can’t sleep, feel as if they have jet lag, put on weight.

Countries in the higher altitudes (including Sweden, Finland, Alaska, Iceland) often suffer psychological problems through lack of sunlight, with high rates of suicide, depression and alcoholism.

There are two main cures. The first is to travel to a country that has a warm 10. \_\_\_\_\_, with bright, sunny winters. The second is to use 11. \_\_\_\_\_ light. So, if it’s raining and you’re depressed, perhaps it’s time you had a holiday in the sun!



- |                         |                      |                      |                       |
|-------------------------|----------------------|----------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a) <i>hardly</i>     | b) <i>ever</i>       | c) <i>soon</i>       | d) <i>every</i>       |
| 2. a) <i>doesn't</i>    | b) <i>wouldn't</i>   | c) <i>can't</i>      | d) <i>isn't</i>       |
| 3. a) <i>during</i>     | b) <i>while</i>      | c) <i>into</i>       | d) <i>of</i>          |
| 4. a) <i>despite</i>    | b) <i>although</i>   | c) <i>yet</i>        | d) <i>however</i>     |
| 5. a) <i>invented</i>   | b) <i>developed</i>  | c) <i>discovered</i> | d) <i>produced</i>    |
| 6. a) <i>called</i>     | b) <i>known</i>      | c) <i>regarded</i>   | d) <i>named</i>       |
| 7. a) <i>imagine</i>    | b) <i>consider</i>   | c) <i>wonder</i>     | d) <i>concentrate</i> |
| 8. a) <i>around</i>     | b) <i>among</i>      | c) <i>nearby</i>     | d) <i>by</i>          |
| 9. a) <i>accurately</i> | b) <i>mainly</i>     | c) <i>closely</i>    | d) <i>exactly</i>     |
| 10. a) <i>weather</i>   | b) <i>sunshine</i>   | c) <i>climate</i>    | d) <i>season</i>      |
| 11. a) <i>false</i>     | b) <i>artificial</i> | c) <i>fake</i>       | d) <i>pretend</i>     |

**b) 🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about SAD and enumerate the symptoms.**

- |                                     |                           |
|-------------------------------------|---------------------------|
| - sleeping a lot but staying _____; | - lacking interest _____; |
| - craving _____;                    | - concentrating _____;    |
| - having low _____;                 | - feeling _____.          |

**c) 📖 Read the text again, listen to the speaker one more time and answer the questions.**



- 1. What is SAD?
- 2. What kind of symptoms does SAD have?
- 3. What kinds of treatment or cure were mentioned in the text?
- 4. What influence does weather have on you?
- 5. How does the weather change your feelings?
- 6. “There is really no such thing as bad weather, only different kinds of good weather.” What do you think of this quote?
- 7. “Wherever you go, no matter what the weather, always bring your own sunshine.” What do you think of this quote?

**11**

**🎧 Listen to the speaker telling about depression and SAD. Answer the questions below.**

- 1. What is the difference between depression and SAD?
- 2. Who is predisposed to suffer from SAD?
- 3. What is light therapy?
- 4. What do doctors recommend to do to fight SAD?
- 5. Why is sleep important?
- 6. What symptoms help people identify SAD?
- 7. What is another name for SAD?

## Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Чи впливає погода на настрій? Звичайно! Майже завжди настрої може змінюватися разом з погодою. Проте, погода по-своєму впливає на всіх нас. Якщо за вікном починається дощ, хтось відчуває легку тугу, стає підвищено чутливим та піддається змінам настрою, а хтось впадає і в справжню депресію, відчуваючи себе розчарованим, жалюгідним, збентеженим, пригніченим і дуже нещасним.



2. Коли виглядає сонце, воно змушує нас миттєво забути про всі неприємності та знову відчути смак життя. Ми у піднесеному настрої і сповнені ентузіазму, відчуваємося енергійними, радісними та оптимістичними.

3. Крім сонячного світла, важливу роль для нашого настрою грають також температура навколишнього середовища і вологість повітря. Так, якщо температура опускається нижче комфортних для нас 20 градусів, то ми стаємо більш замкнутими і незадоволеними всім навколо. Підвищена вологість, у свою чергу, викликає втому і породжує дратівливість.

4. Ми вважаємо, що відчуваємо підйом почуттів тому, що з ранку світить сонце, і, навпаки, впадаємо у відчай, якщо дощ ллє не перестаючи. Ми впевнені: погода безпосередньо впливає на наш настрій.

5. Наш організм – складна система різних ритмів. Різка зміна температури повітря, атмосферного тиску або сили вітру, підвищена сонячна активність можуть вивести організм зі стану стійкої рівноваги. І ми відчуваємо емоційний і фізичний дискомфорт.

6. Найчастіше незрозумілі перепади настрою трапляються в осінні і зимові дні. Але апатія, відчуття пригніченості пов'язані не з погодою, а викликані нестачею світла. Робота нашого організму, в тому числі нервової системи, визначається стабільністю циклу “день-ніч”. Чим краще освітленість, тим більше виробляється серотоніну – гормону, що регулює наш настрій. Коли його не вистачає, знижується здатність до концентрації.

7. Коли йде дощ, нам може стати сумно. Іноді ми хочемо над чимось подумати. Дощ завжди навіює якісь спогади та думки, згадки. Можна піти на прогулянку під дощем, але тільки влітку, на жаль. А коли сяє сонечко, у нас який настрій? Радісний, звичайно. Нам хочеться швидше вибігти на вулицю. І тільки спека може зіпсувати такий настрій, але це легко виправити прохолодним напоєм. І тоді можна робити все, що завгодно. Гуляти, їздити на велосипеді, грати в активні ігри або просто спостерігати за чудовою літньою погодою. Або коли йде сніг та не дуже холодно, нам теж кортить вийти на вулицю, щоб зліпити сніговика, пограти в сніжки, з'їхати з гори на санчатах та просто полежати на снігу.

13

Describe how you feel in different weather / different seasons. Use at least 25 adjectives from your active vocabulary.

14

Read these weather idioms and translate them into Ukrainian.

### *Weather Idioms*

#### Cloud

1. *to cloud up* – to grow very sad, as if to cry
2. *Every cloud has a silver lining* – there is something good in every bad thing
3. *to have one's head in the clouds* – to be unaware of what is going on
4. *to be on cloud nine* – to be very happy

#### Rain

1. *It never rains but it pours* – a lot of bad things tend to happen at the same time
2. *rain or shine* – no matter what the weather or other circumstances are like
3. *to save something for a rainy day* – to reserve something (usually money) for some future need
4. *not know enough to come in out of the rain* – to be very stupid

#### Snow

1. *to be as white as the driven snow* – extremely, totally white
2. *to do a snow job on somebody* – to deceive or confuse someone

#### Sun

1. *Make hay while the sun shines* – to make the most of an opportunity when it is available

#### Weather

1. *a fair-weather friend* – someone who is your friend only when things are going well for you (this person will desert you when things go badly for you)
2. *to keep one's weather eye open* – to watch for something to happen; to be on the alert for something
3. *to be / feel under the weather* – to be ill or feel ill

#### Wind

1. *to get wind of something* – to hear about something; to receive information about something
2. *to throw caution to the wind* – to do something without worrying about the risk or negative results
3. *to take the wind out of someone's sails* – to make somebody feel less confident by saying or doing something unexpected

15

**Fill in the blanks with the suitable idioms.**

1. When I got my promotion, I was \_\_\_\_\_. 2. My congratulations! I just \_\_\_\_\_ of your marriage. 3. Don't worry! I'll be there \_\_\_\_\_! 4. Some students in that class are not very smart and \_\_\_\_\_. 5. We have a new kitty whose fur is \_\_\_\_\_.



6. We wanted to \_\_\_\_\_, so we tried to finish the work in the garden while the weather was good. 7. I think Tom's a thief, so I try to \_\_\_\_\_ when he comes to me. 8. I missed my train in the morning, lost my wallet and spilt coffee all over myself. \_\_\_\_\_. 9. Even though he has lost the game, he has gained some experience and now he is more confident. \_\_\_\_\_. 10. Her face \_\_\_\_\_ when James started talking about her ex-husband. 11. I saw that the salesman was \_\_\_\_\_ that's why I didn't buy those skates. 12. I \_\_\_\_\_ and bought the most expensive car. 13. I don't want my colleagues to \_\_\_\_\_ of the fact that I'm leaving. 14. Bill wouldn't help me with my homework. He is just a \_\_\_\_\_. 15. The car won't start, the stairs broke, and the dog died. \_\_\_\_\_. 16. Go to school and get a good education while you are young. \_\_\_\_\_. 17. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ the teacher when he said that he was sick yesterday. 18. Keep some extra candy \_\_\_\_\_. 19. She walks around all day with \_\_\_\_\_. She must be in love. 20. John was bragging about how much money he earned until he learned that most of us make more. That \_\_\_\_\_. 21. Try to be more alert. Learn to \_\_\_\_\_. 22. A \_\_\_\_\_ isn't much help in an emergency. 23. There are many people here now. You should try to sell them soda pop \_\_\_\_\_. 24. I hate it when someone \_\_\_\_\_ me. I find it harder and harder to trust people. 25. He \_\_\_\_\_ and has a headache so he is going to bed early tonight. 26. You can count on me \_\_\_\_\_. 27. When the check came, I was \_\_\_\_\_. 28. I will \_\_\_\_\_ and go for a walk in this freezing weather. 29. It \_\_\_\_\_ when they told me that I was not doing my job well. 30. He'll never be able to run a business – he always has \_\_\_\_\_.

16

**Translate the following sentences into English.**

1. Він насупився, коли знов побачив за вікном дощ, хоча прогноз погоди передбачав сонячний день.
2. Аня вийшла на вулицю і відчула сильний холод. Незважаючи на те що вона запізнювалася до університету, дівчина змушена була повернутися додому, оскільки була одягнена у легке пальто. Нема добра без лиха, адже коли Аня зайшла в квартиру, вона побачила, що праска була ввімкнена.
3. Подивись, скільки снігу на вулиці – кучугури пів метра глибиною. Треба терміново йти кататися на санчатах, гратися у сніжки, ліпити снігову бабу. Треба кувати залізо поки гаряче.



4. Того приємного зимового ранку Катя сиділа на парі. За вікном сніжило і вона спостерігала, як легкі та пухнасті сніжинки падають на землю. Дівчина була замріяна та зовсім не думала про навчання. Аж раптом почула біля себе голос викладача: “Чому ти літаєш у хмарах, Катю?”

5. Я думаю, що коли здам іспити і навчальний рік буде закінчено, я буду на сьомому небі від щастя, адже зможу поїхати на море відпочивати.

6. Коли після закінчення школи моя подруга не привітала мене з днем народження, я зрозуміла, що вона була лише подругою на ліпші часи.



7. У будь-якому випадку я піду на концерт моєї улюбленої групи під відкритим небом.

8. Мама з дитинства вчить мене відкладати трошки грошей на чорний день.

9. Він настільки тупий, що на іспиті не зміг розповісти навіть про свою родину англійською.

10. Сукня нареченої була дуже дорога, вишукана, стильна та біла-біла як перший сніг.

11. Коли мені телефонують незнайомі люди і кажуть, що я виграла якийсь приз, я розумію, що мене водять за ніс.



12. Сьогодні явно не мій день. Вранці я отримала погану оцінку та посварилася з подругою. По дорозі додому впала на слизькій дорозі і забила руку. У метро хтось вкрав мій гаманець. Зараз я вже вдома і відчуваю, що захворюю. Таки дійсно, що біда ніколи сама не ходить.

13. Коли вночі йде дощ, а вранці починає морозити, то варто бути уважним та напоготові, коли їдеш машиною або йдеш пішки на роботу.

14. Мені сорока на хвості принесла, що ти в червні їдеш у літню школу у Велику Британію. Вітаю тебе з цим.

15. Коли їдеш в іншу країну, треба завжди залишатися уважним та не ставати безпечним.

16. Коли моя найкраща подруга не захотіла вступати разом зі мною, це вибило ґрунт з-під моїх ніг, я була дуже замучена та розчарована.

17

Fill each space in these sentences with it or there and an appropriate verb.



1. He put his jacket on because \_\_\_\_\_ getting cold. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ very expensive to buy a new car. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ difficult trying to reach her by phone so I sent an sms. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ me one hour to get to the station. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ to be some mistake – I’ve never met you before in my life. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ several fights outside the local stadium but no one was hurt. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ been some time since I wrote to you, as I’ve been

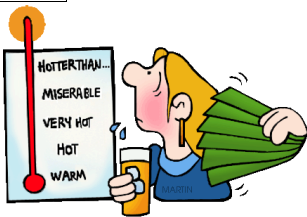


very busy. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ a pity you didn't come to the party; we had a lovely time. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ life after death? I wonder. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ be some kind of explanation for such strange behavior. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ no special way of doing it. 12. A few days ago \_\_\_\_\_ a storm. \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of damage. 13. \_\_\_\_\_ a beautiful day yesterday. We had a picnic. 14. I couldn't see anything. \_\_\_\_\_ completely dark. 15. How far \_\_\_\_\_ from Milan to Rome? 16. \_\_\_\_\_ anything on television, so I decided to turn it off. 17. Last winter \_\_\_\_\_ very cold and \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of snow. 18. I like the place where I live, but \_\_\_\_\_ nicer to live by the sea. 19. Look at the sky! \_\_\_\_\_ a storm. 20. – \_\_\_\_\_ time to leave? – Yes, \_\_\_\_\_ nearly midnight.

18

Fill each space in the paragraph below with *it* or *there*.

### *A Change in the Weather*



1. \_\_\_\_\_ has always been a disadvantage for visitors to Britain that the weather is very changeable and that 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is always raining, even in summer. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ are countless jokes about British weather and no doubt 4. \_\_\_\_\_ is a good reason for their popularity. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ is no smoke without fire. 6. \_\_\_\_\_ doesn't however seem to be the case anymore that Britain does not have summer. In fact, 7. \_\_\_\_\_ seems to be less and less rainfall nowadays, which is a worldwide phenomenon. What has happened is that 8. \_\_\_\_\_ has been a rise in the temperature of the planet as a whole. 9. \_\_\_\_\_ is getting hotter every year to such an extent that 10. \_\_\_\_\_ is no longer necessary to go abroad if you want to get a sun-tan. 11. \_\_\_\_\_ will be much quicker and cheaper to go to Brighton or Bournemouth. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ is a thought that global warming is having both positive and negative effects in different parts of the world. 13. \_\_\_\_\_ have been several conferences to find a solution to the problem but 14. \_\_\_\_\_ has become obvious that 15. \_\_\_\_\_ is no simple answer to the problem.

19

Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate present tense.



1. When the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) good, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) walking in the hills every weekend. 2. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/start*) raining, so he \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) where to find some shelter. 3. For most of the current journeys there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) clear blue sky. 4. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*) my eyes and \_\_\_\_\_ (*imagine*) lying on a deserted beach in the sunshine. 5. It is late night. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) the wind whistling through the trees outside. 6. The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) better since we came to the island and we \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) very little rain. 7. The passengers \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/look*) at the blazing sun, as it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) right over the plane. 8. The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) beautiful since yesterday. 9. Look! It \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*). 10. Traffic \_\_\_\_\_ (*build*)

up on the motorway as the fog \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) thicker and thicker. It is dangerous to drive now. **11.** With sunshine streaming through the window, Kiley \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) it impossible to sleep. **12.** There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a cold wind blowing from the north. **13.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*) heavily in Scotland these days so it can take Ann a long time to get here. **14.** Doctors \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/recommend*) to look directly at the sun during the eclipse. **15.** You \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/need*) the jacket. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) warmer. **16.** If the North Sea \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) frozen in winter, travelers \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) from London to Oslo. It is strange but some people like it. **17.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*hardly ever/see*) such a sunset. **18.** When you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a child, summers \_\_\_\_\_ (*usually/be*) warmer and winters \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) colder than at a mature age. **19.** Football \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) mainly a winter sport in Britain. **20.** The wind \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*) dust all the way from Africa. **21.** Most people here \_\_\_\_\_ (*seem*) to spend most of their winter skiing. **22.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*) all day. I wonder when it will stop. **23.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) how we \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to cope with the cold during the winter. **24.** A beach \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a place where I most \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) to be in the summer. **25.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) forward to a warm southerly wind this weekend. **26.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*love*) adventure sports. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) into snowboarding and bungee jumping. **27.** The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/be*) hot in August. **28.** The last few days \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) gorgeous. **29.** There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a long drought in this area since last year. **30.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) very warm today, is it?

20

**Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate present tense.**



**1.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) three major snowstorms so far this winter. **2.** The hot sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*beat*) down on us all day long. **3.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) cold outside, so you should put on a warm coat. **4.** A cold wind \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*) since last Monday. **5.** Living in the country \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) wonderful. I can't get over how fresh the air \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*)! **6.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) skiing since the spring of 1992. **7.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*seem*) to get lots of colds, particularly during the winter. **8.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*plan*) to grow tomatoes and carrots this summer. **9.** People with fair complexions \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) particularly careful when they \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) out in the sun. **10.** In summer I \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/try*) to spend as much time in the garden as I can. **11.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) tired. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*ski*) all day long. **12.** Oh! The day \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn out*) to be absolutely disgusting. **13.** Though the sky \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) clear, the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) worse and conditions \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) dangerous minute by minute. **14.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/go*) out when it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) cold. **15.** When I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in France, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*practice*) snowboarding, which \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) absolutely fantastic. **16.** The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) bad. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) and the wind \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*). The men \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) cold because they \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) thin coats. **17.** The seasons \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) predictable. For example, when spring \_\_\_\_\_



(*come*), the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) warmer. This \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*) every year. **18.** The weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) terrible lately. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) off and on for two days, and the temperature \_\_\_\_\_ (*drop*) at least to twenty degrees. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in the low 40's right now. **19.** The weather certainly \_\_\_\_\_ (*change*) quickly here. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/know*) what to expect. Nobody \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*). **20.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) under a tree as it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*). **21.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/see*) tornadoes. **22.** Mike \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) to school right now because it \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) summer. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*attend*) college from September to May every year, but in the summer he \_\_\_\_\_ (*usually/have*) a job at the post office. In fact, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) there this summer. **23.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) an umbrella because it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*). **24.** In her whole lifetime she \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/see*) a blizzard. **25.** Look! It \_\_\_\_\_ (*drizzle*) and there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a rainbow at the same time! **26.** There is mud on Kate's clothes. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) in the rain. **27.** She only \_\_\_\_\_ (*skate*) for two years, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) it very well. **28.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*toboggan*) all day long. **29.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*clean*) the driveway from snow. Doesn't it look nice?

21

Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Взимку ми можемо кататися на лижах і на ковзанах на катку. Діти також любляють їздити на санчатах з засніжених пагорбів, оскільки перший сніг випадає ще на початку грудня.



2. Весна встановлюється в кінці березня. Після відлиги сніг тане, часто йде дощ зі снігом, дороги стають брудними, лід на річках тріскається і річки розливаються.

3. Оранка та сівба навесні призводять до жнив восени, бо осінь – це пора достатку.

4. Я дуже люблю весну, тому що навесні часто ідуть сильні дощі, грози з громом та блискавкою.

5. Весною помітно витикаються блідо-зелені травинки, дерева цвітуть, наповнюючи повітря приємним ароматом. Весна – пробудження природи. Люди радіють приємному прогнозу погоди.

6. Дуже спекотний проміжок часу в погоді, як правило, закінчується грозою, часто це відбувається влітку та в кінці весни. Спочатку стає дуже волого, з'являється грім та блискавка і нарешті починається сильний дощ. Після грози стає більш прохолодно та свіжіше. Я люблю таку погоду.



7. Закінчиться літо і земля вкриється різнокольоровим листям, спека вже не буде така гнітюча, а грози зміняться постійними затяжними дощами. Ми будемо змушені змиритися з туманом, дощем зі снігом, який скоро перейде у сильні снігопади та завірюхи. І нашим улюбленим способом проводити час стане катання на ковзанах, лижах і санчатах.

## SECTION III: WEATHER FORECAST AND WEATHER WISDOM

### GRAMMAR:

- The Future Continuous Tense
- The Future Perfect / Perfect Continuous Tenses
- Future Tenses (Revision)
- Adjectives. Degrees of Comparison (Revision)
- Prepositions (Revision)

### Vocabulary

atmosphere	атмосфера
atmospheric / air pressure	атмосферний тиск
a barometer	барометр
a cyclone / an anticyclone	циклон / антициклон
destruction	зруйнування, знищення
the eye ( <i>of a storm</i> )	ядро тайфуну, епіцентр
the eyewall	хмарний вихор навколо ядра тайфуну
a heatwave	теплова хвиля, шалена спека
a hurricane	ураган
a hydrometer	гідрометр, водомір
a meteorological bureau	гідрометеослужба
a meteorologist	метеоролог
meteorology	метеорологія
the monsoon	мусон; дощовий сезон
storm surge	штормовий нагін (води)
a thermometer	градусник, термометр
a typhoon	тайфун
a warning	попередження; застереження
weather conditions	погодні умови
• <i>severe</i> ~	• <i>складні / погані</i> ~
a weather forecast	прогноз погоди
• <i>an accurate</i> ~	• <i>точний, правильний</i> ~
a weatherman / a weather forecaster	ведучий прогнозу погоди
weather wisdom	знання прикмет погоди
weather-wise	той, що вміє передбачати погоду
to be expected	очікуватися
to cause damage	заподіяти збитків; завдавати шкоди
to destroy	руйнувати
to foresee / to forecast / to predict	робити прогноз, прогнозувати
to spin	кружляти, описувати кола

1

You are going to read an extract from an article about the weather. For questions 1-6, choose the answer (a, b, c or d) which you think fits best according to the text.

### *Forecasts that Save Lives*



Being able to forecast the weather isn't just **to do with** informing people about whether or not they can go to the beach or have a picnic. When there are going to be **severe weather conditions**, the ability to prepare for *them* can be **a matter of life or death**. In America, being able to see **approaching hurricanes** with satellite technology and **warning** citizens **about** them is something that **saves lives**.

Hurricanes are very **severe tropical storms**, which exist in several different parts of the world. They can be found in the southern Atlantic Ocean, the Caribbean Sea, the Gulf of Mexico or in the eastern Pacific Ocean. In the western Pacific, they are called "**typhoons**" and in the Indian Ocean, they are called "**cyclones**". A hurricane needs certain weather conditions to start forming: warm tropical oceans with moisture and heat above them. If these conditions last long enough, then a hurricane can start to form, producing violent winds, incredible waves, very heavy rain and floods.

Hurricanes **spin in an anticlockwise direction** and they have winds of at least 120 km per hour. The centre of the hurricane is very calm and it is called the "**eye**", but the most violent activity takes place in the area immediately around the eye, which is called the "**eyewall**". In the Atlantic Ocean, there are approximately six hurricanes every year and about two of these hit the coast of the USA.

When hurricanes move onto the land from the sea, the heavy rain, strong winds and huge waves can cause unbelievable damage to buildings and trees, and cars can be picked up and thrown like matchboxes. The greatest danger, however, is in **the rise in the sea level** as it hits the land. This is called the "**storm surge**" and can be catastrophic. In the year 1900 in the south of the USA, the storm surge killed 6,000 people.

To measure how powerful an approaching hurricane is, meteorologists use something called the Saffir-Simpson Hurricane Scale. This means that a hurricane coming towards the land is given a number from 1 to 5 depending on how fast its winds are. The calmest hurricane is given the number 1 on the scale. It is called "minimal" and it has winds from 119-153 km per hour. Some damage will be caused to trees and bushes and some road signs, but buildings are safe. A scale 5 hurricane is called "catastrophic" and has winds of 249 kilometres per hour or more. This will **destroy** roofs of homes and most

buildings and **cause severe damage** to doors and windows. What is more, it will **uproot** all trees, bushes and will **blow down** road signs.

As technology has developed and we can now **forecast the weather**, it has meant that the **advance warnings** given have greatly reduced the number of deaths caused by hurricanes. However, the damage to property, which cannot be avoided still costs billions of dollars to repair.

1. What does “*them*” in the first paragraph refer to?
  - a) hurricanes
  - b) weather forecasts
  - c) picnics
  - d) severe weather conditions
2. Where do hurricanes take place?
  - a) in various areas of the world
  - b) in tropical areas
  - c) only in the USA
  - d) in cold countries
3. Which is the least active part of a hurricane?
  - a) the eyewall
  - b) the eye
  - c) the storm surge
  - d) the winds
4. At which point is the hurricane most dangerous?
  - a) when it has an eye
  - b) when it moves out of sea
  - c) when it knocks down trees
  - d) when it moves onto the land
5. What does Saffir-Simpson Scale measure?
  - a) which way a hurricane is moving
  - b) how big the waves are
  - c) how powerful a hurricane is
  - d) the number of hurricanes expected
6. Being able to forecast hurricanes has
  - a) reduced damage to property
  - b) saved governments money
  - c) reduced the number of people killed
  - d) helped protect trees and bushes

2

## Give the English equivalents.



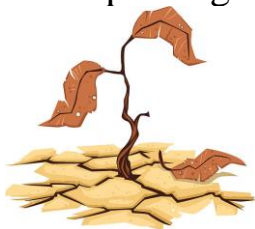
бути здатним прогнозувати погоду, шкала ураганів Саффіра-Сімпсона, крутитися проти годинникової стрілки, рятувати життя, викорчовувати дерева, попереджати мешканців міст, сильні повені та дощі, складні погодні умови, неймовірні хвилі, зносити вітром дахи, шалені вітри, здувати машини як сірники, питання життя та смерті, безпосередньо навколо ядра, завчасне попередження, підвищення рівня моря, штормовий нагін (води), хмарний вихор навколо ядра тайфуну, вдаряти по узбережжю, насуватися на землю з моря, завдавати неймовірної шкоди будинкам, ураган, що насувається, Мексиканська затока, Тихий океан, приблизно 6 ураганів на рік, потужний ураган, значно знизити кількість смертей, уникнути руйнувань.

3

Write the correct words next to the definitions below. The figure in the brackets signifies the number of letters in the words.

*Extreme Types of Weather*

- 1. A tropical storm in the region of the Indian Ocean (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 2. The calm region at the centre of a storm or hurricane (3) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 3. A storm with a violent wind, in particular a tropical cyclone in the Caribbean (9) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 4. Rising of the sea as a result of wind and atmospheric pressure changes associated with a storm (5) \_\_\_\_\_ (5) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 5. The area immediately outside the eye of a hurricane or cyclone, associated with tall clouds, heavy rainfall, and high winds (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 6. It's something which is said or written to tell people of a possible danger, problem, or other unpleasant thing that might happen (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 7. To turn or cause to turn or whirl around quickly (4) *to* \_\_\_\_\_.
- 8. Physical harm that is caused to an object (6) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 9. The act of destroying something, or the state of being destroyed (11) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 10. An overflow of a large amount of water beyond its normal limits, especially over what is normally dry land (5) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 11. A prolonged period of abnormally hot weather (8) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 12. A storm with thunder and lightning and typically also heavy rain or hail (12) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 13. A very heavy fall of snow, usually when there is also a strong wind blowing at the same time (9) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 14. A long period of time during which no rain falls (7) \_\_\_\_\_.
- 15. The season in southern Asia when there is a lot of very heavy rain (7) \_\_\_\_\_.



4

a) Before you listen to the weather forecasts, say, what these extreme types of weather are?

thunderstorms      floods      hurricane      heatwave      snowstorms

b) Listen to five short weather forecasts from around the world. Number the countries in the order you hear them.

*World Weather Warnings*

	Weather Conditions
<input type="checkbox"/> Hungary	
<input type="checkbox"/> The British Isles	
<input type="checkbox"/> Mexico	
<input type="checkbox"/> South Africa	
<input type="checkbox"/> Canada	

c) Listen again to the forecasts. Make notes about the weather in each country in the table above.

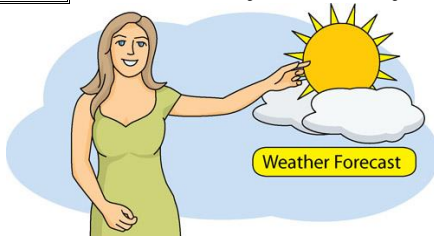
d) Work with a partner. Use you notes to describe the weather in each country.



5

**Answer the following questions.**

➤ 1. Do you always try and look at or read the weather forecast?



➤ 2. Where do you get your weather information?

➤ 3. How often do you check the weather for your city on the Internet?

➤ 4. How do you depend on the weather forecasts?

➤ 5. Do you believe the weather forecasts?

➤ 6. Why is it important to know future weather conditions in advance? Is it important for you?

➤ 7. Have you ever experienced extreme weather? If yes, which one?

➤ 8. Have you ever had to weather a storm / a hurricane / flood?

➤ 9. Do you have many disasters in your area, which are caused by weather? If yes, what are they?

➤ 10. When can knowing tomorrow's weather change you plans?

➤ 11. When was the last time the weather destroyed one of your plans?

➤ 12. Would you like to work as a weather forecaster?

➤ 13. What do you think the weather will be like in Ukraine 100 years from now?

➤ 14. Someone once said: "If you don't like the weather, wait a minute." What do you think of this quote?

6

**Make a new sentence to say what a person will be doing at a definite future moment. Use the Future Continuous Tense.**

**Model:** He's sleeping now. (when I arrive tonight) – He *will be sleeping* when I arrive tonight.



1. The kids are making snowmen. (at this time tomorrow)

2. Steve's lying in the sun. (while Terry's working hard)

3. We're having lunch in the open air. (at 1 o'clock)

4. The boys are playing snowballs. (at 5 o'clock)

5. They're lying on the beach in Greece. (in mid-June)

6. Helen's wearing a blue raincoat. (tomorrow morning)

7. I'm reading the book about natural phenomena. (all day tomorrow)

8. Jane and Kate are watching the video about migratory birds. (until midnight)

9. We're discussing the weather forecast. (at 11 a.m.)

7

**Put the verbs in brackets into the Future Perfect Tense.**

**Model:** He *will have done* it by Monday.



1. I hope they \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*) this road by the time it starts freezing. 2. By the end of next week my wife \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) her book about rainbows and we'll all be able to relax again. 3. Yes, I skate every week. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*cover*) about 200 km by the end of the

season. **4.** In two months' time he \_\_\_\_\_ (*finish*) his preliminary training on skiing and will be starting work. **5.** He spends all his spare time planting trees. He says that by the end of next year he \_\_\_\_\_ (*plant*) 2,000. **6.** I'll be back again at the end of next month. I hope I \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*) my biology test by then. If I have, I'll meet your train. **7.** Come back in an hour. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) my packing by then and we'll be able to have a talk. **8.** When he reaches Land's End, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) 1,500 miles. **9.** He started skiing when he was 20. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) to do it professionally by the time he's 23. **10.** By the end of next year I \_\_\_\_\_ (*discover*) new birds for 45 years. **11.** Apparently Venice is slowly sinking into the sea. Scientists are trying to save it but by the time they've found the answer, the city \_\_\_\_\_ (*sink*). **12.** By the end of my tour I \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) exactly the same lecture about dangerous insects 53 times. **13.** A hundred people have died of flood already. By the end of the week two hundred \_\_\_\_\_ (*die*). When are you going to send help? **14.** – Did you say you wanted to help pick apples? I could come on October, 1. – We \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) them all by then. But come all the same.

8

Complete the sentences with either the Future Perfect Tense or the Future Perfect Continuous Tense.



1. I'm going to read about typhoons today. I'll finish before you get back. – When you get back, I \_\_\_\_\_.
2. The company is spending \$5 million on developing the sun batteries before they go on sale. – By the time the sun batteries go on sale, the company \_\_\_\_\_.
3. So many people enter the race that the last skiers start ten minutes after the ones at the front. – By the time the last skiers start, the ones at the front \_\_\_\_\_.
4. I started writing this book 3 years ago. – By the next year I \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Every day Peter eats three bars of chocolate on the way home from school. – Before Peter gets home from school tonight, he \_\_\_\_\_.
6. Simon started to learn Spanish when he was 25. He is still learning Spanish. – When he's 40, he \_\_\_\_\_.

9

Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate future tense.



1. The weather was good yesterday and \_\_\_\_\_ (*continue*) over the next few days.
2. Take your umbrella. I think it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*).
3. As it is raining heavily, I think I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) home by taxi.
4. The weather conditions \_\_\_\_\_ (*become*) so dangerous that all mountain roads \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) closed.
5. The forecast says that tomorrow the whole country \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) storms and high winds all day.
6. On the weather forecast they say there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) showers this afternoon.



7. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/come*) because of the fog. 8. If you stand in the rain much longer, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) cold. 9. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) another stormy Sunday afternoon and we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) what to do with us. 10. When we get to the top of the hill, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/see*) anything because of the mist. 11. Because of the bad weather, all the schools in the city \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*). 12. Tomorrow the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) much cooler. 13. Because of the snow, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/get*) to the airport. 14. Seeing that the weather forecast \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) so bad, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) my raincoat and an umbrella. 15. The fog \_\_\_\_\_ (*clear*) by mid-morning in most western parts of the country. 16. We are all hoping that the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) warmer soon. 17. I'm feeling a bit under the weather at the moment, but I'm sure I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) okay tomorrow. 18. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) later. 19. This is a winter I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/forget*). 20. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go out*) later if the weather improves. 21. I think it \_\_\_\_\_ (*drizzle*) soon. 22. The sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) hot this afternoon. 23. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*shut*) the windows as soon as it starts to rain. 24. When the sun sets, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) the moon appearing in the sky. 25. Fog \_\_\_\_\_ (*reach*) each and every part of the country by morning. 26. When the snow starts falling, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) very light, believe me. 27. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) you a lift if it rains. 28. As soon as the snow gets heavier, you \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to realize danger. 29. If the snow carries on like this, very few people \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) to the concert. 30. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*catch*) cold if you go out like that. I think you should take a hat. 31. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a beautiful day if we are lucky. 32. I don't know what I \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) tomorrow. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) when the rain finishes. 33. Paul says he \_\_\_\_\_ (*present*) the weather forecast on TV when he grows up. 34. Look at that clear blue sky! It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a beautiful day, I am sure. 35. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*) this weekend, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) to Wales.

- 10** a) 🎧 Listen to the weather forecast for some popular destinations in Western Europe. Make notes about every part (*a*, *b*, *c*, *d*) and fill in the table.

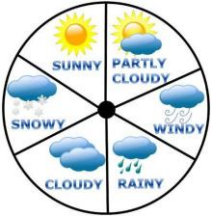
*Weather in Western Europe*

	Weather	Temperatures
a) Northern Ireland, Scotland, Scandinavia		
b) England, Wales, northern France, Belgium, Holland		
c) Southern France, Spain		
d) Switzerland, northern Italy		

- b) 🗣️ Using your notes, report the weather forecasts to the class.

11

Read the text and think of the word that best fits each gap. Use only one word in each line.



And here is the weather **0.** *forecast* for tomorrow. You haven't made plans to go out, **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ you? **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ the sun is shining and it's dry and pleasant now, that won't last for long, because tomorrow is going to be a wet, unpleasant day. In the morning, it will be pouring **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ rain and very windy. Later, this **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ turn into hail, if we are unlucky and it gets colder.

**5.** \_\_\_\_\_ we check the temperatures for tomorrow to see how likely that is? In the south, we can expect 10 degrees above zero Celsius – not too cold. In the north, **6.** \_\_\_\_\_, it'll be colder, reaching only 5 degrees above zero. It won't be a good day for travelling, **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ why don't you stay at home and relax? If you **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ planning to leave the house, wear a warm coat! Now, what about snow? We really don't want that so early in the season, **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ we? But it is possible. So, tomorrow will be a cold, wet day. But I hope in **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ of that, you'll have a good one.

12

Read the weather forecast and fill in the gaps with the suitable variant.

### *Weather Forecast*

Now let's go **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ to our weather forecaster, Mary. Yes, thank you and I'm afraid it does not **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ very bright at the moment. The trouble is that there are some very **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ rain clouds over the north. These will **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ some rainfall later this morning. Then the clouds will **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ farther south in the afternoon. And by early evening the **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ country will see the rain. But things will **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ tomorrow. In the early morning the sun will make an **8.** \_\_\_\_\_. But you'll have to be quick because it soon **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. And, of course, after that our old friend rain **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

- |     |               |                |              |               |
|-----|---------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1.  | a) on         | b) out         | c) over      | d) against    |
| 2.  | a) seem       | b) appearing   | c) see       | d) looking    |
| 3.  | a) fat        | b) heavy       | c) weighing  | d) dragging   |
| 4.  | a) bear       | b) carry       | c) produce   | d) present    |
| 5.  | a) transport  | b) convey      | c) direct    | d) move       |
| 6.  | a) whole      | b) total       | c) complete  | d) hole       |
| 7.  | a) better     | b) improvise   | c) increase  | d) improve    |
| 8.  | a) apparition | b) appearance  | c) appearing | d) appear     |
| 9.  | a) despairs   | b) disappoints | c) deserts   | d) disappears |
| 10. | a) repeats    | b) reports     | c) returns   | d) reacts     |

13

Fill in the missing *prepositions* in the text below.

### *Weather Forecast for the British Isles*

And now here is the weather forecast 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the next twenty-four hours 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the whole territory 3. \_\_\_\_\_ England, Wales, Scotland and Northern Ireland. Ah, starting 4. \_\_\_\_\_ Southern England and the Midlands, well, it'll be mainly dry and sunny, but quite cold, 5. \_\_\_\_\_ temperatures 6. \_\_\_\_\_ six or seven degrees Celsius. It should stay dry all day, but there'll be quite a wind, so wrap 7. \_\_\_\_\_ warm. And 8. \_\_\_\_\_ Wales and Northern Ireland, you can expect some rain 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the morning and afternoon and quite strong north easterly winds, and the temperature will be lower than yesterday, 10. \_\_\_\_\_ the three or four degrees mark. I don't think you'll see much 11. \_\_\_\_\_ the sun: cloudy all day, I'm afraid.

The east coast 12. \_\_\_\_\_ England will see the best 13. \_\_\_\_\_ today's weather. It'll be warmer than yesterday, no winds, and sunshine, so quite warm 14. \_\_\_\_\_ the time 15. \_\_\_\_\_ a year.

16. \_\_\_\_\_ Scotland and Northern Ireland, however, there'll be heavy rain and maybe some snow 17. \_\_\_\_\_ the afternoon, and 18. \_\_\_\_\_ the hills temperatures will drop to 19. \_\_\_\_\_ freezing, minus four 20. \_\_\_\_\_ five, and 21. \_\_\_\_\_ the highest spots minus ten.

22. \_\_\_\_\_ much of Scotland, it will be cloudy, and windy too as the cold front moves 23. \_\_\_\_\_ over the Atlantic. Northern Ireland can expect the same, but the rain will end 24. \_\_\_\_\_ dark. But again very cold, 25. \_\_\_\_\_ temperatures not going 26. \_\_\_\_\_ freezing. And that's all 27. \_\_\_\_\_ me.

14

You will hear a newsreader giving a weather forecast. Complete the following sentences.



1. The north can expect storms with \_\_\_\_\_ and lightning.
2. In the north, the storms might become \_\_\_\_\_.
3. In central parts, there will be \_\_\_\_\_ and maybe some rain.
4. In the south, the wind \_\_\_\_\_.
5. Later in the week, there will be \_\_\_\_\_ or snow.

15

Listen to the speaker telling about natural disasters. Fill in the gaps and tell about your experience in this matter.

### *Natural Disasters*

I don't know about you, but I think there are more 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Every time I 2. \_\_\_\_\_ there's some kind of disaster. There are bushfires in Australia and California, 3. \_\_\_\_\_, hurricanes in Mexico and 4. \_\_\_\_\_. I'm sure global warming is creating more natural disasters. I'm lucky. Where I live, we don't

really **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. I've never experienced **6.** \_\_\_\_\_. Japan has many natural disasters. They have earthquakes, **7.** \_\_\_\_\_, volcanoes, all kinds of things. They are lucky **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ to deal with them. There are countries in Africa **9.** \_\_\_\_\_. When a natural disaster hits them, everyone **10.** \_\_\_\_\_.

16

a) **Read and translate the weather forecasts. Pay attention to the phrases in bold and use them in the examples of your own.**

### *Europe Today*

Showers with thunderstorms **will develop** during the morning from Scotland to northern England. Showers **will shift** slowly north. Scotland **will have none**. Hot and humid air **will remain** over central Europe where scattered thunder showers will develop during the day.

Slightly cooler air **will flow into** western France, Belgium, and the Netherlands. Temperatures will drop to -5 °C. Spain will be sunny, but thunderstorms **may occur** in the north. Italy, Malta, and Greece will also be sunny. Thunderstorms **will** again **dampen** northern Turkey, but southern areas **will stay sunny and hot**.

### *Five-day Forecast*

A zone of low pressure over the Atlantic **will push cooler air** and scattered showers into the UK and western France. Temperatures will be above average for the season. Showers **may form** in the Benelux and Germany. Humid and warm condition, with scattered cooling afternoon thunder showers, **will persist** over central Europe. There may be severe thunderstorms in places. Greece will be dry and mainly sunny, but Cyprus will have showers.

### *24-hour Forecast*

Here is the weather forecast for the next 24 hours. In the north of Ukraine, there will be snow, with strong winds. In the morning, there will be some fog, but the fog **will clear up**, and in the south, it will be a fine day with some sunshine. In the west, it will be cold in the morning, but it **will get warmer** later. In the east, the day **will start fine**, but then the weather will change. In the afternoon, it will get cooler...

b) **Now write a detailed weather forecast for your area for the next 24 hours according to the following plan:**

- *morning / afternoon / evening / night* weather conditions;
- description of *sky / wind / air* details;
- precipitation issues;
- temperature status during the day.

## Translate the following sentences into English.

1. Ось прогноз погоди на найближчу добу. На півночі України короточасні дощі з сильним поривчастим вітром. Очікується зниження температури. Вночі на ґрунті заморозки. У центральних областях невеликий слабкий туман, але він згодом розсіється.



2. Прогноз погоди на найближчу добу не передбачає істотних змін. Тиск залишиться високим на заході країни. День почнеться сонячним та безхмарним. Якщо зранку буде роса, чекай погожої погоди. Опівдні сонце буде пекучим. Передбачається нестерпна спека й жодного подиху свіжого повітря. Температура сягатиме +30° С. До вечора спека спаде і подме свіжий вітерець.

3. Прослухайте прогноз погоди. На більшості території країни похмуро, переважно без опадів. Часом невеликий дощ та мряка. Вітер слабкий, змінних напрямків. Температура 7-10° С вище нуля.

4. Згідно з прогнозом, погода буде морозною та сухою в другій половині січня. У лютому температура впаде до 30° нижче нуля за Цельсієм.



5. – Ти, випадково, не чув прогноз погоди на сьогодні? – Ні, не чув. Але я можу сказати без будь-якого прогнозу, що погода сьогодні справді огидна і мерзотна, і стає ще гіршою. Схоже, що буде дощ. Небо затягнуте хмарами ще з самого ранку, і ці страшні хмари обіцяють сильну зливу.

Якщо не хочеш промокнути до нитки, візьми парасольку. Сподіваюсь, погода покращиться до вечора.

6. Дощова хмара складається з крихітних водяних краплинок.

7. Мусон – це такий вид вітру, що спричиняє тривалі періоди дощів.

8. Торнадо – це ураган, який спустошує все на своєму шляху, руйнує будинки, кидає важкі предмети, шкодить майно, розбиває все на шматки.

9. Ураган – це циклонічна буря, яку також називають тайфун та Вілі-Вілі. Він спустошує все, жорстокий вітер вириває з корінням дерева; припливи на берегових районах можуть спричинити жахливі руйнування.

10. Єдиним великим впливом на японську погоду є вітер, що дме з Тихого океану, спричиняючи дощову та вологу погоду.

## Watch the weather forecast in Ukrainian and give its overview in English.

**АСТРОКЛІМАТ. ПРОГНОЗ ПОГОДИ НА РІК.**

- Січень.** Відносно потеплішає 9-10 січня, але 12-13 температура знизиться і випаде сніг. Потім морози послабшають, і в середині місяця очікується м'яка та волога погода.
- Лютий.** На початку місяця – сніжно і вітряно. Згодом встановиться холодна суха погода. Буде тепліше в останній декаді місяця, що створить ілюзію ранньої весни.
- Березень.** Весняна волога погода не спричинить особливих паводків. До того ж, у 20-х числах березня температура не підвищиться, а знизиться. Кінець середини місяця холодний, із вітром та мокрим снігом.
- Квітень.** Сухий і холодний місяць почнеться ураганними вітрами. Друга половина обіцяє потепління, і вже з 20-го квітня запанує стійка тепла погода.
- Травень.** Спекотний і сухий, він принесе з собою посуху і нашестя комах. До середини травня зросте кількість пожеж. Але “під завісу” місяця спека дещо спаде, пройдуть холодні дощі. Період з 21-го травня по 1-ше червня для рослин небезпечний через дощі з градом та холодними поривчастими вітрами.
- Червень.** Для літнього періоду температура першої декади місяця досить помірна. Але після 1 червня спека посилить свої позиції, і до кінця червня буде досить спекотно.
- Липень.** Чудова літня погода. Місяць помірно вологий і теплий, але вітряний, сприятливий для сільського господарства. З 23 липня температура знизиться, і останній тиждень принесе прохолоду.
- Серпень.** Температура повітря помірна, не спекотна. Дрібний дощ з вітрами очікується 6-8 числа. В середині серпня теж пройдуть дощі. З 20-го серпня похолоднішає, і настане рання осінь.
- Вересень.** Холодна погода з сильними вітрами перших днів місяця зміниться помірно теплою. В другій декаді вересня шукатиме вчорашнього дня літо. Кінець місяця м'який, із сонячними днями та зоряними ночами.
- Жовтень.** Відносно теплий. Встановиться ясна, тепла та погожа погода. Похолодання передбачається під кінець місяця, а саме після 23 жовтня.
- Листопад.** Місяць досить теплий та сухий для осені. Хоча 19 листопада температура знизиться, під кінець місяця знову потепліє. Опадів не передбачається.
- Грудень.** Температура помірна. Осінь затримається ще на тиждень. Але з 6 грудня настане справжня зима.



a) Read this extract from a book. Would you like to do what the writer suggests?

### *Do-It-Yourself Forecast*

*When the wind is in the west, the weather is always best.*

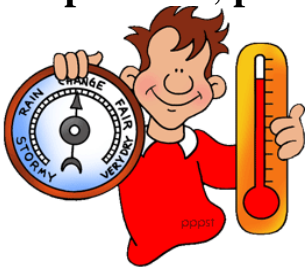
*When the wind is in the south, the rain is in its mouth.*

Have you heard sayings like these before? Or have you heard that when cows lie down it's going to rain? Maybe you've heard that a sunny Christmas Day means we're going to have a warm Easter. Many cultures have traditional ideas about how to forecast the weather and they all have one thing in common: they are not very **accurate**. Most of *them* are about as accurate as saying that the weather tomorrow will be more or less the same as today. The weather is too complicated to be forecast easily and simply.

How do **meteorologists** go about trying to forecast the weather? The first thing they need is information, and lots of it. Data is constantly collected from **weather stations** around the world. **Weather balloons** tell us what is happening at high altitude. **Satellites** give us images of cloud cover and wind direction. All this information is processed by computer and combined with information about the normal climate of a region to produce the forecast. Even so, we can only accurately forecast the weather for the next couple of days.

Can't we amateurs forecast the weather at all, then? Yes, we can, but to be a great amateur meteorologist you need to do some of the things the experts do. First of all, collect your information. You need to know about the climate in the area where you live. What's a typical summer like? How much rain normally falls in October? If your area never gets fog in the summer, then a forecast of fog in July is unlikely to be accurate.

The next thing you need to take into account is local geography. Are there any mountains nearby? They could affect the wind. Are you by the coast? That could affect rainfall. All these factors need to be considered when you are trying to understand what the weather is going to do next. You'll also need some basic equipment: a good **thermometer**, a **barometer** to measure pressure in the atmosphere and, if possible, a wind meter. Start **to keep records** of the **temperature, pressure and wind speed and direction** each day.



Then it's a question of using your eyes, and even your ears. Listen to the radio. Is there a lot of static? Together with falling atmospheric pressure, that probably means that the weather is going to get worse. Go outside and listen. Do sounds seem clearer than usual? Is there a kind of ring around the Sun or Moon? It could mean that it's going to rain. Is your barometer rising and do the clouds seem to be getting higher? It probably means that the weather is clearing up.

With a little practice, your forecasts will become more accurate. Soon, you'll be able to plan your day better. Are you playing football tomorrow? Well, a quick look at your equipment and a few minutes spent outside will tell you whether it's going to rain or not. Are you going skiing next week? Maybe you should forget it if there's no chance of snow.

Making your own forecasts can be a lot of fun, and who knows? You might even beat the experts!

**b) Read the sentences. Do you think the writer of the book agrees or disagrees with them?**

- 1) Traditional wisdom isn't very reliable.
- 2) The professionals rely on the amateurs.
- 3) You should know the usual weather patterns.
- 4) You can benefit from your forecasts.

**c) Read the text again. For questions 1-6, choose the answers (a, b, c or d) which you think fits best according to the text.**

1. What does "them" in line 7 refer to?
  - a) different cultures
  - b) traditional ideas about the weather
  - c) most weather forecasts
  - d) the weather on different days
2. The writer does not mention that forecasters collect information about
  - a) the weather very high in the atmosphere.
  - b) the accuracy of forecasts in the past.
  - c) the amount of cloud over an area.
  - d) the way the wind is blowing.
3. What does the writer say you need to know about your area?
  - a) the forecasts of the experts
  - b) the general patterns of weather
  - c) how rain affects local people
  - d) how summer fog is caused
4. The writer suggests that the amateur forecaster should
  - a) buy a lot of accurate equipment.
  - b) get a good map of the area.
  - c) make notes about changes in the weather.
  - d) live in a flat area away from the sea.
5. You might be able to forecast good weather when
  - a) the reading on your barometer is falling.
  - b) you can hear sounds very clearly.
  - c) low clouds start to disappear.
  - d) the moon is very bright in the sky.
6. To make accurate forecasts, you need to have
  - a) experience of forecasting.
  - b) good planning.
  - c) time to watch the weather change.
  - d) a good memory.

Read the text, translate it into Ukrainian and answer the questions below.

### *Weather Wisdom*



Some people watch **ants** for weather clues. Anytime you see ants industriously building huge mounds around their holes – prepare for rain. About two hours before a downpour, all kinds of ants – but especially large black and red ants – will break up their caravans, scurry into their nests, and begin building dams around the ant hill. These mounds, which are sometimes several inches in height, prevent rainwater from running into the ant hills.

**Bees** give weather clues, too. They are usually active several hours before it starts raining, but as the humidity increases, they return to their hives. Some American Indians say that the longer the increased activity lasts, the longer the rain will be.



Other insects are also good humidity indicators. **Butterflies** usually flit from flower to flower all day long. When they suddenly disappear and hide on tree trunks or on the underside of leaves, they are seeking shelter to protect their fragile wings from hard rain.

**Fireflies** fly very low when there is high relative humidity. But an old saying states: When fireflies are about in large numbers, the weather will be fair for the next three days.

And if you hear lots of **locusts** singing, you can be sure the air is dry, because locusts sing only when it is hot and dry.

**Plants** are also handy humidity indicators. They are affected in different ways. Just before a rain many flowers such as **daisies**, **dandelions** and **tulips** close their blossoms, and **clover plants** draw their leaves together. It is believed that the absorption of moisture from the air causes a change in the leaf stalk, making the leaves turn over. It may be that the rough underside of the leaf can absorb rain better than the smooth topside.

Animals are good at predicting the weather. **Frogs** croak when the air pressure rises. Before rain, ants move to higher ground and **sheep's wool** uncurls.

Almost everyone knows what humidity does to **hair**. Curly hair gets curlier and straight hair gets limp. The reason is that hair absorbs moisture from the damp air. Straight hair actually gets longer. A Swiss geologist used this fact to invent the first hydrometer. In 1783, Horace Benedict de Saussure fastened some human hair to a needle. The hair expanded when the air was moist and contracted when the air was dry, moving the needle across a numbered scale. His instrument is called a hair hydrometer and is still used by meteorologists.

Some people are very sensitive to humidity. **People who have arthritis** are, in a sense, “**living hydrometers**”. High humidity causes the fluids in their tissues and joints to increase, making movement difficult and painful. That is why many older people say: “It’s going to rain. I can feel it in my bones”. They actually can.

By learning to read weather signs, you can get a few hours advance warning if a storm is in the air. It may keep you from getting your new shoes ruined in the rain, from having a family picnic spoiled, or your garden beaten down by a storm. If you are backpacking, camping, boating, or doing similar outdoor activities, it might even save your life.

- 1. What is weather wisdom? Try to give your own definition.
- 2. What do we need weather wisdom for?
- 3. What are weather clues / signs? Try to define them in your own words.
- 4. How do insects help to predict changes in weather? How do they prepare for rain? Give examples
- 5. How can plants indicate changes in humidity? Are they good humidity indicators? Give examples.
- 6. How do you understand the saying: “Some people are living hydrometers”?
- 7. Do you usually feel any changes in weather? If yes, in what way?
- 8. Why do people need to learn to read weather signs?
- 9. What weather clues do you know? Do they help you to predict weather?
- 10. Can animals and birds help us to forecast the weather? How? Give examples
- 11. Give some other examples of other weather signs, which were not mentioned in the text.

22

**Give the English equivalents to the words and phrases given. Be ready to use them in the sentences of your own.**



мурашник, захищати тендітні крильця від дощу, втрачати форму/ставати м’яким (про волосся), розваги просто неба, квітконіжка, сарана, шукати притулок, квакати, поспішно бігти, перешкоджати / не допускати щось, жук-світляк, конюшина, будувати насипи, переховуватися у вуликах, перелітати з місця на місце, туристичний похід, закривати суцвіття, відпочинок у

наметовому таборі, кучерявитися, розвиватися (про пасма), зіпсований пікнік, чутливий до вологи, падіння/підвищення атмосферного тиску, перевертатися низом догори, шорсткувата нижня частина листка, поглинати воду, рідина у суглобах, відчувати біль у кістках та суглобах.

23

**Transcribe and explain the words from the text above. Make up your sentences with these words.**

- |              |                |               |
|--------------|----------------|---------------|
| ✓ a mound    | ✓ a locust     | ✓ to expand   |
| ✓ to scurry  | ✓ a stalk      | ✓ a scale     |
| ✓ a hive     | ✓ limp         | ✓ arthritis   |
| ✓ to flit    | ✓ a hydrometer | ✓ a fluid     |
| ✓ a firefly  | ✓ to fasten    | ✓ backpacking |
| ✓ to uncurl  | ✓ humidity     | ✓ to croak    |
| ✓ to prevent | ✓ a warning    | ✓ a butterfly |

24

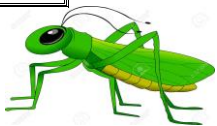
**Fill in the gaps with the information from the text in ex. 21.**



1. Such insects as \_\_\_\_\_ give weather clues. 2. Ants build their huge mounds around their \_\_\_\_\_. 3. \_\_\_\_\_ prevent \_\_\_\_\_ from running into a(n) \_\_\_\_\_. 4. If bees are active, \_\_\_\_\_ increases. 5. Bees return to their \_\_\_\_\_. 6. Butterflies \_\_\_\_\_ from flower to \_\_\_\_\_ and hide on the tree \_\_\_\_\_ or on the \_\_\_\_\_ of leaves. 7. Butterflies seek shelter to protect their \_\_\_\_\_ wings from a hard rain. 8. Insects and plants are good \_\_\_\_\_ indicators. 9. When there is a high relative humidity, \_\_\_\_\_ fly low. 10. Locusts sing when it is \_\_\_\_\_ and \_\_\_\_\_. 11. Frogs \_\_\_\_\_ when the air \_\_\_\_\_ rises. 12. Sheep's wool \_\_\_\_\_ before rain. 13. Such flowers as \_\_\_\_\_ close their \_\_\_\_\_. 14. \_\_\_\_\_ plants draw their leaves together. 15. The absorption of \_\_\_\_\_ from the air causes a change in the leaf \_\_\_\_\_. 16. The \_\_\_\_\_ of the leaf absorbs rain better than the \_\_\_\_\_. 17. Curly hair gets \_\_\_\_\_, straight hair gets \_\_\_\_\_. 18. Hair \_\_\_\_\_ moisture from the \_\_\_\_\_ air. 19. The hair expanded when the air was \_\_\_\_\_, and \_\_\_\_\_ when the air was dry. 20. High humidity causes the \_\_\_\_\_ in the tissues and \_\_\_\_\_ to increase.

25

**Say what kind of weather it is or is going to be, when:**



1. Locusts sing. 2. Ants build huge mounds. 3. Bees are active. 4. Bees return to their hives. 5. Bees remain active very long. 6. Butterflies flit from flower to flower all day long. 7. Butterflies disappear, seeking shelter. 8. Fireflies are about in large numbers. 9. Large black and red ants break up their caravans, scurry to their nests and build dams around the anthill. 10. Flowers close blossoms and draw leaves together. 11. Hair gets curly or limp. 12. It's painful for old people to move.

26

**Listen to the speakers telling about weather clues and say how the following "predictors" behave and what weather they can forecast.**

- |                |           |          |                     |
|----------------|-----------|----------|---------------------|
| ✓ night sky    | ✓ animals | ✓ clouds | ✓ birds and insects |
| ✓ air pressure | ✓ plants  | ✓ wind   | ✓ weather pattern   |



### Translate into English.



Наші далекі предки, навіть наші бабусі та дідусі можливо знали про природу куди більше, ніж ми зараз. По поведінці рослин і тварин, по різним природним явищам вони намагались передбачити погоду на найближчий час.

Навіть зараз, коли ми маємо сучасне обладнання, що дає можливість прогнозувати погоду на місяці вперед, деякі люди досі використовують народні прикмети. Дуже часто вони точні в своїх прогнозах і цікаві як для дітей, так і для дорослих. Ось деякі з них:

- ✓ Якщо восени швидко опадає листя, то буде багато снігу взимку.
- ✓ Якщо небо безхмарне і зірки яскраво блищать взимку, то буде мороз.
- ✓ Коли кішка шкребе підлогу, а потім ховається десь – готуйтеся до сильного вітру у будь-яку пору року, або до заметілі взимку.
- ✓ Жовтий або рожевий захід сонця влітку та навесні віщує гарну погоду.
- ✓ Ластівки літають низько – до дощу.
- ✓ Горобці купаються у калюжі – буде дощ.

### Write a passage/chapter about weather wisdom issues as part of the book about weather phenomena.

### Put the verbs in brackets into an appropriate tense or construction to express future actions.



1. Unless it rains, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) you up at 6 p.m.
2. There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) drizzle everywhere today except in Scotland.
3. The weather forecast has given a warning that France \_\_\_\_\_ (*face*) heavy snow.
4. Val has always wanted to go scuba diving and he \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) so next summer.
5. As soon as it stops raining, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*).
6. My plane \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/take*) off until tomorrow because of the awful weather conditions.
7. I wonder how many more snowstorms we \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) this winter.
8. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*probably/go*) to Athens next summer.
9. Although there's a cold wind blowing, it may be that the rain \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/come*) until the morning.
10. Tomorrow the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) much cooler.
11. Honey, the travel agent says the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) chilly.
12. This time next week, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) warm weather and tropical seas.
13. When we come out of the restaurant, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/rain*) for sure.
14. If it is not raining, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*lie*) on the beach at this time tomorrow.
15. Right now it is winter. I'm tired of cold weather, but spring \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) soon.
16. I think it \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) this afternoon.
17. Just three days later, the sun \_\_\_\_\_ (*shine*) and the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) pleasant.
18. As soon as the rain



stops, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) to the drugstore to get some pills. **19.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) misty soon. **20.** When I wake up tomorrow morning, maybe it \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*). **21.** This time next January I \_\_\_\_\_ (*lie*) on the beach in Florida. **22.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) home when it begins to rain. **23.** In July I \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) snow for the first time in my life. **24.** Look at those dark clouds. When the class is over, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*probably/rain*). **25.** You'd better come in. It \_\_\_\_\_ (*pour*) in a minute! **26.** When spring comes this year, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to a park every day to enjoy good weather. **27.** Lightning usually means there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a storm. **28.** I hope the weather \_\_\_\_\_ (*clear up*) before the wedding. **29.** Daisy \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) really upset if we cancel the trip because of the weather. **30.** It looks like a shower, so we \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/wait*) for it to stop. **31.** Don't go out without your coat. It's raining hard. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) wet to the bones. **32.** Let's hope the snow \_\_\_\_\_ (*melt*) by tomorrow. The snowdrifts are a meter deep. **33.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*check*) the weather forecast before we plan a picnic? **34.** I'm sorry, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/carry*) your umbrella for you.

**30**

**Complete the text using the correct form of the verbs in brackets. More than one answer may be possible.**

One of the problems with summers in England is that you're never certain if it **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) the next day or not, so you can never make any plans. That's why we decided to go to a place where we are sure that it **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) hot. We **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*) to India next month. Our plane **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) at 10 a.m. The flight **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) nine hours so we **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) at approximately 2 o'clock in the morning. This is the coolest time to arrive as the temperature **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) around 30° Centigrade. We **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) in a five-star hotel with air conditioning as it can reach 50°C during the day. I **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*lie*) on the beach all day and I **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/think*) of rainy England!

**31**

**Complete the questions by writing an appropriate question tag.**



**1.** She's gone out in the pouring rain, \_\_\_\_\_? **2.** There are going to be strong winds tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_? **3.** That was a flash of lightning, \_\_\_\_\_? **4.** They did say on the forecast that the heatwave was on the way, \_\_\_\_\_? **5.** They're spending their holiday in Egypt, \_\_\_\_\_? **6.** That's a storm coming towards us, \_\_\_\_\_? **7.** Let's look at the forecast and then decide, \_\_\_\_\_? **8.** He can't see us through the mist, \_\_\_\_\_? **9.** You've not gone out without an umbrella, \_\_\_\_\_? **10.** She said it was very cold, \_\_\_\_\_? **11.** It's not a very nice day, \_\_\_\_\_? **12.** You won't go out in the blizzard, \_\_\_\_\_? **13.** It has been snowing incredibly heavily, \_\_\_\_\_? **14.** Sally hates hot weather, \_\_\_\_\_? **15.** The hurricane is getting worse, \_\_\_\_\_? **16.** Let's go and sunbathe in the park, \_\_\_\_\_? **17.** It must

be 35 degrees today, \_\_\_\_\_? **18.** I have never seen such large snowflakes, \_\_\_\_\_? **19.** A sudden gust of wind slammed the front door shut, \_\_\_\_\_? **20.** We have been swimming for an hour, \_\_\_\_\_? **21.** Apart from a quick shower, the rest of the day was sunny and dry, \_\_\_\_\_? **22.** We looked up at the sky, \_\_\_\_\_? **23.** It won't rain tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_? **24.** The trees have been losing their leaves since Monday, \_\_\_\_\_? **25.** The temperature has dropped, \_\_\_\_\_? **26.** There's been a lot of unusual weather this year, \_\_\_\_\_? **27.** Nobody said we were going to have a storm, \_\_\_\_\_? **28.** They should put the weather on before the news, \_\_\_\_\_? **29.** You haven't heard what they're forecasting for tomorrow, \_\_\_\_\_? **30.** It looks like it's going to rain, \_\_\_\_\_?

32

**Translate into English. Pay attention to the rules concerning degrees of comparison of adjectives.**



**1.** Вітер сьогодні сильніший ніж в понеділок. **2.** Вчора було тепліше ніж позавчора. **3.** Сьогодні найспекотніший день у цьому місяці. **4.** Клімат в Індії вологіший ніж у Франції. **5.** В Україні холодніше весною ніж в Індії. **6.** Ранки взимку більш холодні ніж весною. **7.** Небо зараз ясніше ніж було вранці. **8.** Сонце найяскравіше літом. **9.** Небо більш хмарне тепер. **10.** Ця пора року найзадушливіша в Італії. **11.** Мороз цієї зими сильніший. **12.** Січень, як правило, найхолодніший місяць зими. **13.** Ця веселка найкраща. **14.** У понеділок ранок був більш туманный. **15.** Той вечір був самий вітряний. **16.** Сьогодні найвологіший день у цьому сезоні. **17.** Зараз більше хмар. **18.** Туман вчора був густіший, ніж сьогодні. **19.** Блискавка сьогодні яскравіша та потужніша. **20.** Стало прохолодніше. **21.** Дні влітку більш сонячні ніж взимку.

### ENGLISH LANGUAGE EXAM TOPICS

1. Seasons and weather.
2. My favourite season.
3. The worst season.
4. The weather I like and dislike.
5. The climate of Ukraine.
6. Weather forecast.
7. Weather and mood.
8. Weather wisdom.

# MODULE TWO: CITY AND TRANSPORT

## SECTION I: CITY AND COUNTRYSIDE

### GRAMMAR:

- Types of Comparisons
- The Passive Voice (Indefinite)
- The Present Perfect Tense vs The Past Simple Tense
- Tense Forms (Revision)

### Vocabulary

<b>Types of Settlement</b>	<b>Види Поселень</b>
rural / urban area	сільська / міська місцевість
a settlement	поселення (снт)
a hamlet	сільце
a village	село
a town / a city	маленьке / велике місто
a hometown / a native city	рідне місто
a metropolis / a capital	столиця
a conurbation	конурбація, велике місто з пригородами
an inhabitant / a resident	мешканець
a local	місцевий житель
a city dweller / an urbanite	міський житель
a villager	селянин
population	населення
<b>Geographical Position and Location</b>	<b>Географічне Положення та Розташування</b>
in the north / south / east / west of ...	на півночі / півдні / сході / заході від ...
on the coast	на узбережжі
on the island	на острові
by the sea	біля моря
on the river ( <i>name</i> )	на річці ( <i>назва</i> )
on / near lake ( <i>name</i> )	на озері / біля озера ( <i>назва</i> )
in a valley	в долині
on a plain	на рівнині
in the mountains	у горах
near a forest / a desert	біля лісу / пустелі
near the border	біля кордону
to be situated	бути розташованим

• <i>in the centre of ...</i>	• у центрі ...
• <i>right in the middle of everything</i>	• у самому центрі
• <i>due west of the centre</i>	• точно на захід від центру
• <i>in half an hour's drive / ~ walk from</i>	• у пів години їзди / ~ ходи від
• <i>within walking distance of ...</i>	• у межах ходи від ...
the place is	місце знаходиться
• <i>within easy reach of the downtown</i>	• поблизу центру міста
• <i>at a considerable distance from the city centre</i>	• на значній відстані від центру міста
• <i>on the outskirts / edge</i>	• на околиці
• <i>in the suburb</i>	• в передмісті
• <i>in a very remote part</i>	• в дуже віддаленій частині
• <i>just a stone's throw from the centre</i>	• рукою подати від центру
• <i>on a convenient traffic route</i>	• на зручному транспортному маршруті
<b>Places in a City and Facilities</b>	<b>Будівлі та Місця Спеціального Призначення у Місті</b>
an airport	аеропорт
amenities	1) принадності, краси (природи) 2) комфорт, комфортабельність
an amusement arcade	зал гральних автоматів
an amusement park	парк розваг
a bus station	автовокзал
a (pavement) café	кафе (при дорозі)
a car hire agency	прокат автомобілів
a car park	автостоянка, паркінг
a casino	казино
a castle	замок; палац
a cathedral	собор; кафедральний собор
a cemetery / a burial site / a graveyard	кладовище; цвинтар
a church / a chapel	церква / каплиця
a cinema / a movie theater	кінотеатр
a circus	цирк
a city centre / a town centre / a downtown	центр міста
a concert hall	концертна зала
a conservatoire / an academy of music	консерваторія
a convenience store / a corner shop	лавка, невелика крамничка
a dance hall / a disco	танцпол, дансинг / дискотека
a department store	універмаг
an embankment	набережна річки (кам'яна)

an embassy / a consulate	посольство / консульство
an exhibition	виставка; експонат(и)
facilities	зручності; засоби обслуговування; інфраструктура
a factory / a plant	фабрика, завод
a financial district	фінансовий центр
a fort / a fortress	форт / фортеця
a football pitch	футбольне поле
a gallery	галерея
• <i>an art ~</i>	• <i>галерея мистецтв</i>
a (youth) hostel	(молодіжна) турбаза або готель
a garden	сад
• <i>a botanic(al) ~</i>	• <i>ботанічний сад</i>
a hospital / a clinic	лікарня / клініка
a hotel	готель
a housing estate / a residential area	житловий масив / ~ район
an industrial estate / ~ area	промисловий масив / ~ район
a law court	суд
a library	бібліотека
a market	ринок
• <i>an antiques ~</i>	• <i>антикварний ~</i>
• <i>a farmers' ~</i>	• <i>фермерський ~</i>
• <i>a flea ~</i>	• <i>барахолка, "блошиний" ~</i>
• <i>a street ~</i>	• <i>вуличний ~</i>
• <i>a traditional ~</i>	• <i>традиційний ~</i>
a monastery / a nunnery	чоловічий / жіночий монастир
a monument (to)	пам'ятник
a mosque	мечеть
a museum	музей
a nightclub	нічний клуб; нічний ресторан
an office building	адміністративна будівля
an old city / an old quarter	стара частина міста
an opera house	оперний театр
a palace	палац
a promenade / an esplanade	місце для прогулянки, променад (набережна, проспект, бульвар)
a railway station	залізничний вокзал
a registry office	відділ запису актів громадянського стану (РАГС)
a restaurant	ресторан

a shopping centre / a shopping mall	торговий центр / торговельний пасаж
a skating rink	ковзанка
a skyscraper	хмарочос, висотний будинок
a sport center	спорт центр
a square	площа
• <i>the main ~ / central ~</i>	• <i>головна ~</i>
a stadium	стадіон
a supermarket	супермаркет
a swimming pool / a spa	басейн / спа-центр
a temple	храм
a tennis court	тенісний корт
a theatre	театр
Town / City Hall	мерія, муніципалітет
a zoo	зоопарк
<b>Sightseeing</b>	<b>Огляд Визначних Місць</b>
to admire	захоплюватися; милуватися
• <i>to look in admiration at ...</i>	• <i>дивитися із захопленням на ...</i>
to attract <i>one's</i> attention	привертати <i>чиюсь</i> увагу
to pay attention <b>to sth.</b>	звернути увагу на <i>щось</i>
to be famous <b>for sth.</b>	бути відомим <i>чимось</i>
to be founded	бути заснованим
to be built on the site of <i>sth.</i>	бути побудованим на місці <i>чогось</i>
to be named <b>after</b> ... / ~ <b>in memory of</b> ...	бути названим на честь ... / ~ в пам'ять ...
to be popular <b>with sb.</b>	користуватися популярністю <i>у когось</i>
to be well worth a visit / visiting	бути дійсно вартим того, щоб відвідати
to boast <b>of / about sth.</b>	вихвалитися <i>чимось</i>
to date <b>from</b> ...	вести відлік часу від (відноситися до певного часу, до певної епохи)
to develop	розвиватися, рости
to do the sights / to go sightseeing	оглядати визначні пам'ятки
to make an impression <b>on sb.</b>	справляти враження на <i>когось</i>
to make a tour of the city	об'їхати місто з метою огляду
<b>Natural Features of the Countryside</b>	<b>Риси Сільської Місцевості</b>
a bay / a harbor ( <i>natural</i> )	бухта, затока; гавань
a beach / seaside	пологий берег; узбережжя; пляж
• <i>sandy ~</i>	• <i>піщаний ~</i>
• <i>pebbly ~</i>	• <i>покритий галькою ~</i>



• <i>rocky</i> ~	• <i>кам'янистий</i> ~
a canal ( <i>manmade</i> ) / channel ( <i>natural</i> )	канал; канава, рів ( <i>штучний</i> ) / ~ ( <i>природний</i> )
a cape	мис
a cave	печера
a cliff	крутий обрив, урвище, круча
a coast / a coastline / a shore	узбережжя / берегова лінія / берег
a desert	пустеля; ненаселене, безлюдне місце
an estuary	гирло ( <i>ріки</i> )
a farm	ферма, господарство
a field	поле
a fountain	фонтан
a gulf	морська затока; бухта
a hill / a foothill / a slope	пагорб / передгір'я / схил
an inland	територія, віддалена від моря
an island	острів
a jungle	джунглі; густі зарості
a lagoon	лагуна, відстійний басейн чи ставок
a lake	озеро
a meadow	луг, лучка
a mountain	гора
• <i>a ~ range</i>	• <i>гірський хребет</i>
• <i>a ~ peak</i>	• <i>вершина гори</i>
• <i>a snow-capped ~</i>	• <i>покрита снігом гора</i>
a park	парк
a peninsula	півострів
a plain	рівнина
a pier	дамба, пірс; причал
a pond / a reservoir	ставок / водойма
a river	річка
• <i>a riverbank / a riverside</i>	• <i>берег ріки</i>
scenery / a landscape / a view	пейзаж / ландшафт / вид
a spring	джерело
a stream	струмок
a valley	( <i>гірська</i> ) долина
vegetation	рослинність
a waterfall	водоспад
a well	криниця; ключ
wildlife	жива природа, дика природа

a wood / woods / a forest	ліс; гай
a woodland	ліс; лісовий масив; лісиста місцевість

<b>Describing Places</b>	<b>Опис Місць</b>
agricultural / farming	сільськогосподарський
amazing / fantastic	приголомшливий
ancient	древній; стародавній
beautiful / captivating	красивий / захоплюючий
boring / dull	докучливий; нудний
breath-taking	захоплюючий, разючий, вражаючий
bustling	метушливий, галасливий
busy	напружений, інтенсивний
clean	чистий
colourful	барвистий, яскравий
commercial	торговельний
compact / small	компактний / маленький
congested / packed <b>with</b>	перенаселений; перевантажений; скупчений
cosmopolitan	багатонаціональний, сучасний
crowded	переповнений людьми
dangerous	небезпечний
deserted	безлюдний; спустошений
depressing	гнітючий; який навіює нудьгу, тугу
exciting	хвилюючий, захоплюючий, збуджуючий
exceptional	винятковий, незвичайний
famous / outstanding / well-known	знаменитий, прославлений, славний, відомий
fast-paced	стрімко рухливий
hectic	збуджений; неспокійний
historical	історичний; пов'язаний з історією
iconic	традиційний, канонічний
industrial	промисловий
infamous / notorious	який користується поганою славою; сумно відомий; горезвісний
interesting	цікавий, який викликає інтерес
isolated / cut off	ізолюваний / відділений, відірваний
lively	жвавий
magical	чарівний
magnificent	чудовий; пишний; величний
modern / contemporary / up-to-date	сучасний

noisy	шумний, гучний; галасливий
peaceful / quiet	мирний / тихий, спокійний
picturesque / scenic	мальовничий
polluted	забруднений; загазований
quaint	дивний, незвичайний, ексцентричний
remarkable	дивовижний, визначний
restored	відбудований, відновлений
run-down / shabby	розвалений / запущений, занедбаний
safe	безпечний
significant / important	значний / важливий
slow-paced	тихий, повільний
spacious	просторий
stressful	напружений; який спричиняє стрес
stunning	приголомшливий, вражаючий
terrific / dramatic	чудовий; хвилюючий, що потрясає
traditional	традиційний; заснований на звичаї
touristy	переповнений туристами ( <i>негатив.</i> )
ugly	потворний; огидний, бридкий
unique	єдиний у своєму роді, унікальний
unspoilt	незіпсований
wild	1) шалений; нестримний 2) необроблений, некультивований

1

Read the text about various types of settlement and translate it into Ukrainian.

### *Types of Settlements*

Based on the **density of population**, development, **amenities**, employment opportunities, education, etc. human settlements are divided into two categories, i.e., **urban** and **rural**.



A **rural area** is an area, which is not a town or a city. It is often a **farming** or an **agricultural** area. This area is sometimes called “**the country**” or “**countryside**”. People who live “in the country” often live in small **hamlets** or **villages**, but they might also live somewhere where there are no other houses nearby.

A **village** is a collection of small huts in the middle of a field on which the village farmers work. Some villages are big while others are comparatively smaller. They are generally **cut off from** the cities and have a different kind of life. The villagers live in the midst of **natural surroundings**, where there are **peaceful hills** and **mountains, fields** and **plains, meadows, valleys, rivers** and **streams**.

Many people who live in cities like to go to the country to relax. They go there for recreation, often on their holidays.



An **urban area** is a region where many people live and work close together. It includes the city itself, as well as the surrounding areas. “Urban areas” can refer to **towns, cities, and suburbs**. Urban areas are very developed, meaning there is a density of **human structures** such as **houses, plants, factories, commercial and office buildings, paved roads, sidewalks, bridges, and railways**. Most of the work available in urban areas is factory and office work. The inhabitants also need **schools, hospitals, shops**, so there are more jobs in order to provide these services.

A town is generally larger than a village, but smaller than a city. Some geographers define a town as having 2,500 to 20,000 residents. Towns usually have local self-government, and they may grow around specialized economic activities, for example, mining or railroading.

A city is basically a big town. The population is large in relation to the amount of land, so people often live in apartments or multi-family housing.

The vast majority of cities have a **central area** that is called a **city center** or **downtown**. This area contains buildings with special economic, political or religious importance and is often coincident with a **central business district**.

The **capital** or a large busy city which is a significant economic, political, and cultural center for a country or region is called a **metropolis**. It is an important **hub** for regional or international connections, commerce, and communications.

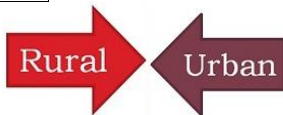
Suburbs are smaller urban areas that surround cities. They serve as the **residential area** for the city workers. The suburbs mostly contain single-family homes, stores, and services. Nowadays, many **city residents** move to suburbs, a situation known as **suburban migration**. Homes in suburbs are usually larger than homes in cities, and suburbs usually have more parks and open spaces. Residents may move here to escape the traffic, noise, or to enjoy a larger residence.

Throughout the world, the dominant pattern of migration within countries has been from rural to urban areas. This is partly because improved technology has decreased the **need for** agricultural workers and partly because cities offer greater economic opportunities. Most of the world’s people, however, still live in rural areas.

In 2010, it was announced that for the first time ever, over half of all people in the world were living in urban areas. Since 2010, the number of **city dwellers** has continued to **soar**. In fact, it is predicted that in 2050 over two-thirds of the **global population** (that is almost 7 out of every 10 people) will live in urban areas.

2

Transcribe the following words from the text from *ex.1*.



Rural, density, amenities, comparatively, meadows, nearby, regional, commercial, inhabitants, geographer, specialized, coincident, significant, metropolis, commerce, population, throughout, soar, opportunities, technology, decreased, agricultural, railroading, international.

3

Find the English equivalents in the text from *ex.1*.



бути відрізаним від міста, луг, рівнина, струмок, щільність населення, торгівля, тротуар, тихий, міська територія, комфортабельність/комунальні зручності, оточувати, шум, сільськогосподарський, хатинка, сільська територія, сільце, природне середовище, відновлення сил, поселення людей, прилегла територія, давати визначення, місцеве самоврядування, гірнича справа, центр міста, збігатися з, значний, важливий центр, містяни, замиська міграція, посередині, можливості працевлаштування, відкритий простір, уникати, оголошувати, зростати.

4

a) Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *passive* form.



1. The Tower of London \_\_\_\_\_ (*build*) by William the Conqueror. 2. His car \_\_\_\_\_ (*steal*) yesterday. 3. Historical places \_\_\_\_\_ (*always/pay*) attention to. 4. New schools \_\_\_\_\_ (*build*) in new residential areas. 5. The city \_\_\_\_\_ (*ruin*) during World War the Second. 6. A very interesting exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ (*hold*) in Pinchuk Art Gallery these weekends. 7. Lviv \_\_\_\_\_ (*found*) in 1256. 8. This nice restaurant \_\_\_\_\_ (*locate*) in a very remote part of the city. 9. Our car \_\_\_\_\_ (*service*) by the mechanic at the garage every month. 10. The stadium \_\_\_\_\_ (*completely/renovate*) before the championship in 2012. 11. The airport \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*) by the authorities when the weather conditions are very bad. 12. Flowers can't \_\_\_\_\_ (*pick*) at the botanical garden. 13. Lots of foreign guests \_\_\_\_\_ (*invite*) to the folk festival, which will take place in our city in August. 14. The road repairs \_\_\_\_\_ (*complete*) last week. 15. Tourists \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/ recommend*) to visit that part of the city. It's not safe to go there. 16. Taking pictures in this museum \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/allow*). 17. The local bank \_\_\_\_\_ (*rob*) this morning. 18. This bridge must \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*)! It's in terrible condition. 19. On the first day of our holiday, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) on a wonderful tour of the city by our guide. 20. A new monument \_\_\_\_\_ (*erect*) in this park next year.

**b) Put all types of questions to the following sentences.**

1. This building was designed by a Spanish architect last century. 2. The street lights on the motorway will be repaired by city workers during the day. 3. The domes of this cathedral can be seen from every part of the town. 4. The Tower of London is visited by thousands of tourists every day. 5. The riverside and the embankment must be cleaned from the litter.

**c) Translate the following sentences into English paying special attention to the use of the *passive*.**



1. Усі казино в нашому місті закрили ще декілька років тому. 2. Нова церква побудована на місці старої церкви, що була знесена в радянські часи. 3. Сподіваюсь, моє авто відремонтують завтра. 4. Вважають, що цю вулицю треба перейменувати. 5. Нова лікарня буде відкрита мером міста у п'ятницю. 6. Київ був заснований у V столітті. 7. Троє людей постраждали у вчорашній аварії на дорозі. 8. Муніципалітет буде перенесено до іншої будівлі. 9. Цією місцевістю захоплюються усі. 10. Музейні експонати не можна брати руками. 11. Передбачається, що новий парк розваг будуть відвідувати не тільки місцеві жителі, а й гості столиці. 12. Унікальні книжки були викрадені з цієї бібліотеки. 13. Те невеличке село повністю відрізано від міста. 14. Усі пляжі у тій місцевості поділяються на громадські та приватні. Там вже немає диких пляжів. 15. Цей район міста відомий своїм величезним ринком.

5

**Here are some places and ideas that we associate with the city and the countryside. Match the words and phrases with their definitions.**

- |                                   |                                                                                                           |
|-----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>Town or City Hall</i>       | a) a place where taxis queue for passengers                                                               |
| 2. <i>a job center</i>            | b) a planned area of housing, often with its own shops and other amenities                                |
| 3. <i>a neighbourhood</i>         | c) an organization, which gives free advice to ordinary people about legal, financial, and other problems |
| 4. <i>a dance hall</i>            | d) a street or part of a town where vehicles are not allowed                                              |
| 5. <i>a department store</i>      | e) buildings or services that are provided for a particular purpose                                       |
| 6. <i>a swimming pool / a spa</i> | f) certain parts of the city, which are poor and in a very bad condition                                  |
| 7. <i>a museum</i>                | g) a device which you have to put money into when you park in a parking space                             |
| 8. <i>a commuter</i>              | h) a place where people go to swim and relax                                                              |



- |                                             |                                                                                                        |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 9. <i>a housing estate</i>                  | i) a service station that sells gasoline for vehicles                                                  |
| 10. <i>a police station</i>                 | j) a place that gives medical, surgical, or psychiatric care and treatment for the sick or the injured |
| 11. <i>vandalism</i>                        | k) a place for burying the dead; a graveyard                                                           |
| 12. <i>an opera house</i>                   | l) too many people live in a small place                                                               |
| 13. <i>citizens' advice bureau</i>          | m) the air and the water are no longer as pure as they were                                            |
| 14. <i>a cemetery</i>                       | n) the streets are packed with traffic, the travel is slow or comes to a standstill                    |
| 15. <i>tourist information ("i")</i>        | o) it consists of a large city together with the smaller towns around it                               |
| 16. <i>a hospital / a clinic</i>            | p) a theatre that is specially designed for the performance of operas                                  |
| 17. <i>a traffic jam</i>                    | q) information about a place for the assistance of tourists                                            |
| 18. <i>a parking meter</i>                  | r) pointless destruction of other people's property                                                    |
| 19. <i>a pedestrian precinct</i>            | s) the local office of a police force in a particular area                                             |
| 20. <i>a petrol station / a gas station</i> | t) a place or building where objects of historical, artistic, or scientific interest are exhibited     |
| 21. <i>a taxi rank</i>                      | u) a person who travels some distance to work from suburb to the downtown on a regular basis           |
| 22. <i>facilities</i>                       | v) the administration building of a municipal government                                               |
| 23. <i>overcrowding</i>                     | w) a place where people who are looking for work can go to get advice on finding a job                 |
| 24. <i>a conurbation</i>                    | x) a district, esp. the one forming a community within a town or city                                  |
| 25. <i>slums</i>                            | y) a large public hall or building where people pay to enter and dance                                 |
| 26. <i>pollution</i>                        | z) a large shop which sells many different kinds of goods                                              |

**6** Fill in the articles where necessary.

**Remember:**

- ✓ the noun *town* takes no article when it is opposed to the noun *country* and when it means the business centre of any town;
- ✓ the noun *city* takes the definite article when it is opposed to the noun *country*;
- ✓ if the nouns *town / city* refer to a particular settlement, they take either the definite or the indefinite article;
- ✓ if the noun *country / countryside* is used as an antonym to *town*, it takes the definite article.



1. I'll drive you to \_\_\_\_\_ town this morning. 2. We decided to spend \_\_\_\_\_ summer in \_\_\_\_\_ seaside town. 3. It is pleasant to spend all summer in \_\_\_\_\_ country. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ town was not large enough for one to stay anonymous. 5. When will you drive back to \_\_\_\_\_ town? 6. He comes from \_\_\_\_\_ country so he can't get used to \_\_\_\_\_ noisy city. 7. I walked with him through \_\_\_\_\_ town. 8. I'm afraid you can't see Father today; he's out of \_\_\_\_\_ town. 9. My Aunt Milly was well-known all over \_\_\_\_\_ town. 10. Some people think that living in \_\_\_\_\_ country is very boring. 11. The market is an exciting and colourful part of \_\_\_\_\_ town, full of noise and bustle. 12. This is \_\_\_\_\_ small town where everybody knows everybody. 13. She went to \_\_\_\_\_ town where her aunt lived. 14. We went to \_\_\_\_\_ country for the weekend and we returned to \_\_\_\_\_ town on Sunday. 15. Blairhill was \_\_\_\_\_ ancient town with \_\_\_\_\_ winding alleys and \_\_\_\_\_ old marketplace. 16. Their friends lived in \_\_\_\_\_ same part of \_\_\_\_\_ town. 17. We live in \_\_\_\_\_ country just outside London. 18. Bruce was in \_\_\_\_\_ town with his wife to promote the film. 19. Living in \_\_\_\_\_ city can be very expensive.

**7** Complete the sentences. Use the words in the box below, singular or plural form.

advertisement    block of flats    bridge    car park    factory    motorway  
pavement    traffic lights    post box    railway    litter bin    street lamp



1. We left our car in the \_\_\_\_\_ and walked to the town centre. 2. Is there a \_\_\_\_\_ near here? I need to post this letter. 3. It's very dark in my street at night because there aren't any \_\_\_\_\_. 4. We live in a \_\_\_\_\_ on the tenth floor. 5. They have just built a new \_\_\_\_\_ between here and London, so it's quicker to go by car than by train.

We don't use \_\_\_\_\_ anymore. 6. There was a big \_\_\_\_\_ for Levi jeans on the side of the bus. 7. – "What do they make in that \_\_\_\_\_?" – "Computers". 8. The \_\_\_\_\_ were red, so the bus stopped. 9. I found £10 on the \_\_\_\_\_ outside the post office. 10. There are lots of \_\_\_\_\_ across the river Thames in London. 11. He threw his empty coca-can into the \_\_\_\_\_.

**8** a) Listen to the speaker telling about urban life and answer the questions.

1. What are urbanites like?
2. What do they enjoy and why?
3. What do they adore?
4. What can be fatal for them?

b) Decide why the following two sentences are not good summaries of the text you hear. Write a sentence that would be a good summary.

x 1. The speaker praises city lovers.

x 2. The speaker describes city lover's social life.

✓ 3. (your answer) \_\_\_\_\_

9

Complete the sentences using the adjectives in the box.

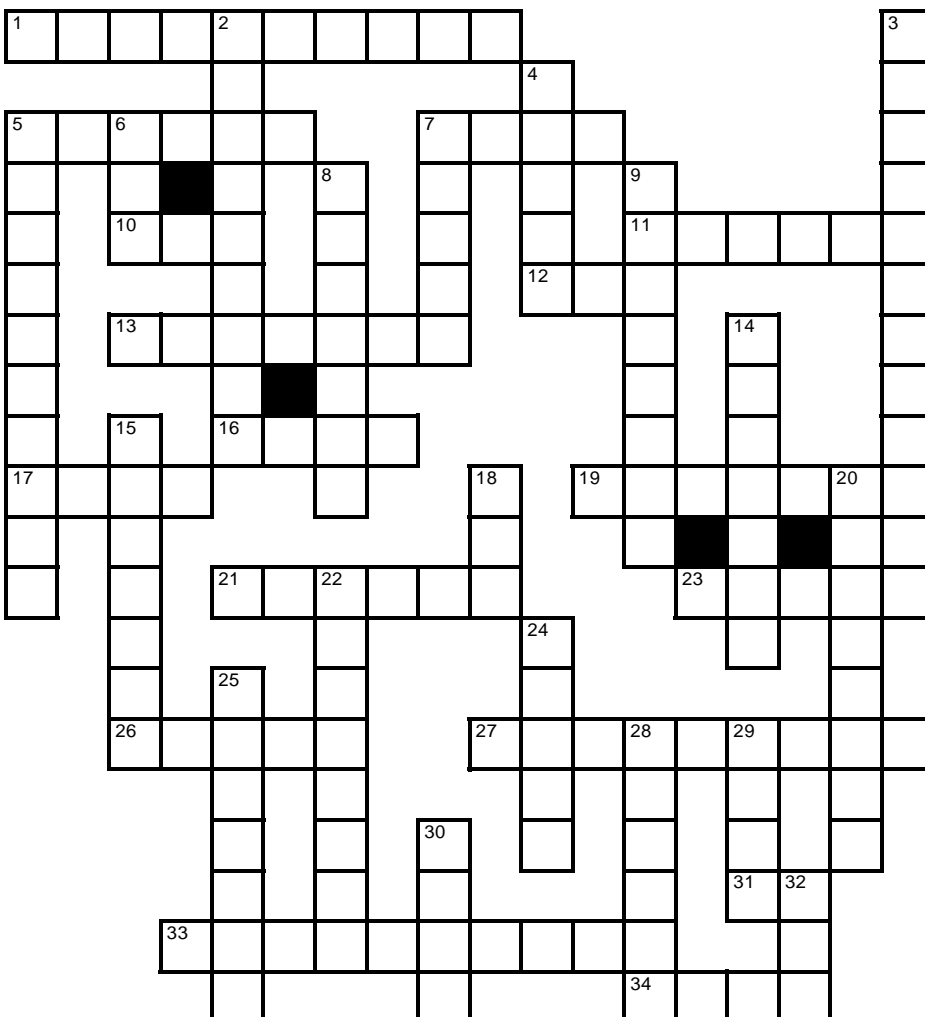
busy      cosmopolitan      crowded      historic      industrial  
 polluted      touristy      romantic      deserted



1. The shops in my city are always really \_\_\_\_\_ in the week before Christmas. 2. Manchester was a really \_\_\_\_\_ city in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. There were a lot of factories and mills. 3. Many of the world's rivers are now very \_\_\_\_\_. The fish have died and few plants can survive. 4. Florence is one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ cities. Thousands of couples go there for their honeymoons. 5. Art galleries can get a bit \_\_\_\_\_ at weekends – it's quieter if you go during the week. 6. My village can be a little \_\_\_\_\_ in the summer, because tourist groups often stop here for lunch after visiting Stonehenge. 7. New York is an extremely \_\_\_\_\_ city. It's very multi-cultural and there are lots of interesting activities to enjoy. 8. The streets in our neighbourhood get \_\_\_\_\_ at night. People prefer staying at home. 9. Oxford is a very \_\_\_\_\_ city. Many of university colleges were built in the 16<sup>th</sup> century.

10

Do this crossword.



**DOWN**

- 2. A home in the city.
- 3. A place to study after high school.
- 4. A narrow street behind a building.
- 5. A very tall building.
- 6. What some people take to work.
- 7. Government official in charge of a city.
- 8. A place where people make things.
- 9. A place to go when you are sick.

14. A place on the sidewalk where you can put your mail. 15. \_\_\_\_\_ lights that tell cars when to go or stop. 18. A traffic \_\_\_\_\_. A time when traffic almost stops because there are too many cars on the road. 20. A time when many people are driving on the road to get to work. 22. A place where people walk next to the road. 24. Many people gathered together. 25. A road where people drive fast. 28. Cities have lots of these bright things at night. 29. Many people take this to work instead of their own car. 30. A place where people save their money. 32. A short sleep.

**ACROSS**

1. A place to get something to eat. 5. An underground form of transportation. 7. A place with many shops in one building. 10. What you do on a bench. 11. A place where many business people work. 12. The opposite of no. 13. A place to see a show. 16. Go left or right. 17. A place to go for a walk. 19. A place to view art. 21. A place to learn history. 23. Many sounds. 26. Stealing or robbing. 27. Dirty air or dirty water. 31. Go \_\_\_\_\_. Enter. 33. A place where people park their cars. 34. What you do at a department store.

**11** Complete the following chart. All of the words must begin with the letter of the alphabet given. Some letters may have many different answers, while others may not have an answer.

*Places around Town*

A <u>rt gallery</u>	J _____	S _____
B _____	K _____	T _____
C _____	L _____	U _____
D _____	M _____	V _____
E _____	N _____	W _____
F _____	O _____	X _____
G _____	P _____	Y _____
H _____	Q _____	Z _____
I _____	R _____	



**12** With your partner answer and discuss the following questions. Make a report in front of the class.



- 1. Did you grow up in the city (town) or in the country?
- 2. What is your favorite city? Why?
- 3. What size of city is best to live in? Why?
- 4. What are the names of two big cities in Europe?
- 5. What are the names of two towns in Europe?
- 6. Can you name two cities in twenty different countries around the world?
- 7. What cities would you like to visit in Ukraine?

- 8. What cities would you like to visit around the world?
- 9. Do you think some cities are becoming too large? Why?
- 10. Would you prefer to live in a really old historical city, or a really new modern city? Why?
- 11. What is the most important part of a city? What part do you live in?
- 12. What cities or towns are not to your liking? Why?
- 13. How many parts does your city (town) consist of?

**13** a) 🎧 Listen to Joel and Andy comparing city and country life. Do you agree? Fill in the chart below and comment on it.

	city life	country life
pluses +		
minuses -		

b) 🎧 Listen to Joel and Andy's conversation. Who moved to the village of Appleton? Who stayed in London?

**14** Fill in the sentences with the adjectives, which have a similar meaning to the words and phrases in brackets. Some letters are given.



1. York is a historic British town, which is very **p** \_\_\_\_\_ with tourists. (*liked by a lot of people*)
2. This place is so **b** \_\_\_\_\_ there's never anything happening. (*not interesting or exciting*)
3. Rome is an **a** \_\_\_\_\_ city. (*very old*)
4. Porto is a **l** \_\_\_\_\_ city with lots of things to see. (*with a lot of things happening*)
5. This used to be a **b** \_\_\_\_\_ town in the 19<sup>th</sup> century. (*crowded and very busy*)
6. This is a pretty **c** \_\_\_\_\_ town. You just need a bike to get around. (*small*)
7. Milan gets really **c** \_\_\_\_\_ in August. (*with lots of people*)
8. This part of the city is especially **p** \_\_\_\_\_ . (*charming and attractive in a unique way*)
9. There are a lot of **ch** \_\_\_\_\_ places around here. (*very attractive and pleasant*)
10. New York is a city with a **c** \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere. (*modern, up-to-date, multinational*)
11. Paris is one of the world's most **w** \_\_\_\_\_ - **k** \_\_\_\_\_ romantic and exciting destinations. (*famous*)
12. His house was in a \_\_\_\_\_ **n-d** \_\_\_\_\_ inner-city area. (*in a very bad condition*)
13. This local hotel is set in **p** \_\_\_\_\_ surroundings. (*quiet and calm*)
14. It used to be a quiet village, but now it has become very **t** \_\_\_\_\_ . (*full of tourists*)
15. This place has a **m** \_\_\_\_\_ **t** view. (*very beautiful*)
16. Istanbul is a very **h** \_\_\_\_\_ city, with over thirteen million inhabitants. (*very big*)
17. Barcelona is a **f** \_\_\_\_\_ **c** city! It's a must to visit if you go to northern Spain. (*wonderful*)
18. Tunis is a **f** \_\_\_\_\_ **c** \_\_\_\_\_ place to visit, with a wonderfully rich culture and history. (*very interesting*)
19. Tokyo is a very **e** \_\_\_\_\_ place to live. (*costing a lot of money*)
20. Disneyland offers **e** \_\_\_\_\_ activities for kids. (*funny and thrilling*)

15

Decide which answer a, b, c or d best fits each space.

### *New York City*

New York City has **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ into the second largest city in North America. It has long been a major business and shopping center, **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ millions of visitors each year. Most tourists stay in the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the city, Manhattan, where you can see the sights on foot or take a tour bus. In **4.** \_\_\_\_\_, the main residential areas are on the **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the city where, as in all large cities, some districts are quite in **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ of repair.

During your visit you may want to take a boat trip to Ellis Island, where you can stop for a **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ to read about the history of immigration. Many tourists also visit Queens, which has some interesting art galleries, and Brooklyn for cafés, shops and **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ nightlife. Finally, you will certainly want to visit Central Park, a huge open **9.** \_\_\_\_\_, which is ideal for relaxing on a hot summer day.



- |                        |                        |                     |                       |
|------------------------|------------------------|---------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. a) <i>become</i>    | b) <i>grown</i>        | c) <i>increased</i> | d) <i>extended</i>    |
| 2. a) <i>appealing</i> | b) <i>advancing</i>    | c) <i>arriving</i>  | d) <i>attracting</i>  |
| 3. a) <i>heart</i>     | b) <i>interior</i>     | c) <i>focus</i>     | d) <i>root</i>        |
| 4. a) <i>response</i>  | b) <i>practice</i>     | c) <i>contrast</i>  | d) <i>reality</i>     |
| 5. a) <i>suburbs</i>   | b) <i>surroundings</i> | c) <i>borders</i>   | d) <i>outskirts</i>   |
| 6. a) <i>demand</i>    | b) <i>wish</i>         | c) <i>need</i>      | d) <i>requirement</i> |
| 7. a) <i>period</i>    | b) <i>while</i>        | c) <i>duration</i>  | d) <i>piece</i>       |
| 8. a) <i>vivid</i>     | b) <i>cheerful</i>     | c) <i>bright</i>    | d) <i>lively</i>      |
| 9. a) <i>extension</i> | b) <i>region</i>       | c) <i>space</i>     | d) <i>estate</i>      |

16

☛ With your partner answer and discuss the following questions. Then report his / her answers.



- 1. What city do you live in?
- 2. Is your city very cosmopolitan?
- 3. What part of your city do you like best / least? Why?
- 4. Where is the trendiest area in your city? Do you enjoy going there? Why?
- 5. What monuments of your city do you consider the most impressive? Why?
- 6. Can you suggest any good tourist sites to visit in your city?
- 7. Who are some famous personalities from your city?
- 8. What educational, cultural and sports facilities does your city have?
- 9. What transport is available in your city?
- 10. Are there any catering and night-life facilities? Are they good?
- 11. What other facilities are worth mentioning?



- 12. What aspects of life in your city would you complain about?
- 13. Do you walk alone at night in your home city? Why or why not?
- 14. What are the major problems in your city? What is the worst thing about living in cities?
- 15. What can be done to reduce the amount of pollution in your city? What can you offer to other city dwellers on this issue?
- 16. Do you want to be the mayor of your city? What would you do? How would you change things?
- 17. Do you want to be a member of the city council of your city? Do you think you could make big changes in your city?
- 18. Are cities good places for children? Why or why not?

**17 Put each of the following words or phrases in the passage.**

*City Life*

- |                |             |                  |                     |
|----------------|-------------|------------------|---------------------|
| ✓ cosmopolitan | ✓ pollution | ✓ congestion     | ✓ to breed crime    |
| ✓ metropolis   | ✓ urban     | ✓ cost of living | ✓ anonymity         |
| ✓ stimulation  | ✓ commuter  | ✓ city-dwellers  | ✓ irresistible lure |



Most people in developed countries are **1.** \_\_\_\_\_, many drawn by the **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_. The attractions of the city are many: the **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere (foreign restaurants, different languages, international companies), the **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ of cultural events or the simple hope of finding work. All too many find, however, that the glamorous façade is false. One can be very lonely in the city and the **6.** \_\_\_\_\_, which at first seems to give freedom and protection later leaves just loneliness. There is a lot to do but everything is expensive. The **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ is high. There is **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ not only of the physical but also of the moral environment and the various pressures of **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ life cause cities to **10.** \_\_\_\_\_. Above all, perhaps, it is the daily stresses and strains of the city, which make life there a matter of survival rather than of enjoyment. Many a **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ struggling to work through the rush-hour **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ asks, 'Is it worth it?'

**18 a) Listen to a woman talking about living in a city and mark the statements (1-6) True (T) or False (F).**

1. She lives on the edge of the city.
2. The part of the city where she lives is very crowded.
3. She lives within cycling distance of the shopping mall.
4. She takes the bus to the centre because it's hard to park there.
5. She moved because she wanted to live somewhere more peaceful.
6. The area where she used to live was well looked after.

b) Complete the sentences with words you here in the recording.

1. A \_\_\_\_\_ estate is a large group of houses or flats and an \_\_\_\_\_ estate is where people work, often in a \_\_\_\_\_ district. 2. A \_\_\_\_\_ area is part of a city or town where people live. People often live on the edge of a city, which is sometimes called the \_\_\_\_\_ or \_\_\_\_\_. 3. An office \_\_\_\_\_ is another name for a building with many offices. 4. Bicycles and busses are often separated from other traffic in a bus/cycle \_\_\_\_\_. 5. A car park on several levels is called a \_\_\_\_\_-\_\_\_\_\_ car park. 6. Buildings or areas that are in bad condition are often \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Modern cities usually have a shopping \_\_\_\_\_ with a wide range of stores.



19

a) Listen to Michael and Irina. Mark the things in the box they mention, / for Irina and M for Michael.

- |                                                      |                                              |                                       |
|------------------------------------------------------|----------------------------------------------|---------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> how clean/dirty the city is | <input type="checkbox"/> language(s) spoken  | <input type="checkbox"/> tourists     |
| <input type="checkbox"/> new shops and buildings     | <input type="checkbox"/> traffic and driving | <input type="checkbox"/> street names |
| <input type="checkbox"/> standard of living, prices, | <input type="checkbox"/> economic problems   | <input type="checkbox"/> pace of life |
- etc.

b) Which changes do both Michael and Irina mention? Do they feel generally happy or unhappy about these changes?

c) Choose the correct alternative. Then listen again and check.



1. Daily life in Hong Kong feels very *different* / *more or less the same* as how it was before.

2. Michael thinks Hong Kong seems *more* / *less* Chinese now.

3. Irina thinks Moscow feels *more* / *less* Russian.

4. The streets in Hong Kong look *slightly* / *completely* different from before.

5. The streets of Moscow look *slightly* / *completely* different from the old days.

6. The standard of living in Hong Kong is *very similar* / *very different*.

7. The traffic in Moscow is *much worse than* / *more or less the same as* before.

8. Prices in Moscow are *very similar to* / *very different from* before.

20

Translate into English.



1. Сільський краєвид зазвичай включає поля, долини, ліси, сади, луки, річки й озера. А в місті тебе оточують лише великі мости, висотні будівлі та широкі асфальтовані дороги – так звані “кам’яні джунгли”.

2. Мешканці міста люблять вихвалитися історичними пам’ятками, музеями, театрами, кінотеатрами і галереями. А на мене незабутнє враження справив оперний театр у центрі Києва. Я ще ніколи в житті не бачила такої величної споруди.

3. На сільських вулицях рідко побачиш автомобіль. А в місті дороги переповнені транспортом, часто бувають затори, особливо в годину пік. Транспорт рухається дуже повільно або і взагалі стоїть.

4. Вулиці міста зазвичай людні та шумні вдень, але вночі вони майже зовсім спустошені. Тим не менш, вулиці завжди освітлені і цілодобово працюють світлофори.

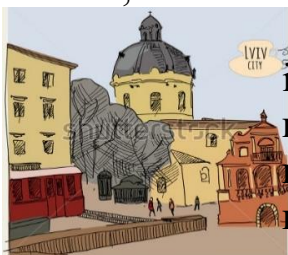
5. Щодо моєї мами, вона не могла не милуватися дивовижним собором. Це наймовірно чудова будівля 17 століття у стилі французької готики.



6. Київ – це місто мальовничих пагорбів та історичних місць. Тут є багато пам'яток відомим людям та меморіалів, що увіковічують різноманітні історичні події. Більше того, багато вулиць названі на честь відомих письменників, поетів та музикантів.

7. Транспортна інфраструктура у великих містах зазвичай добре розвинена: є залізниця, автобуси, тролейбуси, трамваї, маршрутки, таксі, а у мегаполісах навіть метро.

8. Мої батьки переїхали із сільської місцевості в місто три роки тому. Тато шукав кращу роботу, а мені з сестрою треба було йти до школи. У нашому селі не було ані дитсадка, ані школи. Це було нелегке рішення – покинути рідне село, де ми виростили. Там завжди тихо і спокійно, вулиці просторі та зелені, майже безлюдні.



9. Львів – одне з найбільш дивовижних і цікавих історичних міст у нашій країні. Він дійсно вартий того, щоб його відвідати. Тут є чудові пейзажі з мальовничими панорамами, гарні затишні парки і різноманітні визначні пам'ятки культури й релігії, що викликають захоплення і справляють на туристів незабутнє враження.

21

You see this notice on an international travel website. Write your article (140-190 words).

### ARTICLES WANTED

### My Local Town or City

We are looking for articles about the town or city where you live.

Write us an article including the following information:



- **Location**
- **Physical characteristics, atmosphere**
- **Special attractions**
- **The culture and people in the place**
- **Historical details**

Say whether you think it is a good place to live, and explain why / why not.

The best articles will be posted on the website next month.

## Types of Comparisons

1	<i>as ... (positive degree)... as</i>	I will try to get there <b>as fast as</b> I can.
2	<i>not as / so ... (positive degree)... as</i>	The town center wasn't <b>as/so</b> crowded <b>as</b> usual.
3	<i>twice / three times / half as ... (positive degree)... as</i>	This road is <b>twice as long as</b> that one. Petrol was <b>half as expensive as</b> it is now.
4	<i>the same as</i>	His car is <b>the same as</b> mine.
5	<i>less / more ... (positive degree)... than</i>	The town center is <b>less crowded than</b> usual.
6	<i>the least / most ... (positive degree) ... of / in</i>	This area is <b>the least</b> crowded <b>in</b> the city. This area is <b>the least</b> crowded <b>of</b> all.
7	<i>the (comparative)... the (comparative)</i>	<b>The more expensive</b> the hotel is, <b>the better</b> the service is.
8	<i>comparative + and + comparative</i>	Cities are getting <b>bigger and bigger</b> .
9	<i>much, a lot, still, far, a bit, a little, slightly + comparative</i>	Let's go by car. It's <b>much cheaper</b> .
10	<i>superlative + possible, available, imaginable; by far + superlative</i>	This is <b>the most difficult</b> task <b>possible</b> . This is <b>by far the most difficult</b> task.

22

Complete the sentences using *the (comparative)... the (comparative)* or *comparative + and + comparative*. Translate them into Ukrainian.



1. It's getting \_\_\_\_\_ (*difficult*) to live in the country now.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*long*) he had to wait for the bus, \_\_\_\_\_ (*impatient*) he became.
3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*much*) electricity you use, \_\_\_\_\_ (*high*) your bill will be.
4. The noise got \_\_\_\_\_ (*loud*) until I couldn't bear it any longer.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*many*) people are opening their own business.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*young*) you are, \_\_\_\_\_ (*boring*) you find it to live in the country.
7. Cars are getting \_\_\_\_\_ (*cheap*) as the years go by.
8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*new*) a car is, \_\_\_\_\_ (*valuable*) it is.
9. Over the years, the trees grew \_\_\_\_\_ (*tall*).
10. Since Ann went to Canada, her English has got \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*).
11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hard*) he works, \_\_\_\_\_ (*successful*) he becomes.
12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*dark*) it grew, \_\_\_\_\_ (*scared*) I became.
13. As the conversation went on, Peter became \_\_\_\_\_ (*talkative*).
14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*cold*) the weather is, \_\_\_\_\_ (*bad*) I feel.
15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*busy*) the roads are, \_\_\_\_\_ (*long*) it will take to get home.

23

Cross out the unnecessary words.

1. The more you study, the better than your results will be.
2. This task is the less difficult than the others.
3. He drives the far fastest of all.
4. It was by far the most more interesting tour.
5. My street still looks as the same as it did ten years ago.





6. My house is the most oldest in the neighbourhood. 7. This village is by far quieter than the one we live in. 8. This route is four times as more thrilling as that one. 9. Playing golf isn't as more tiring as playing football. 10. As time went by, it got darker and the darker. 11. Going on holiday abroad is very more exciting than staying at home. 12. Taking a taxi in rush hour isn't as much quick as taking a metro. 13. Your handbag is the same colour as to mine. 14. This flat is so bigger than the one we saw yesterday. 15. This is the most funniest book I've ever read. 16. This house is the less expensive than the others. 17. Paul is as much old as Ann. 18. It is the more best meal I've had in a long time. 19. Mark's voice is very much louder than Alan's. 20. This ticket is twice as more expensive as that one.

24

You are going to listen to two friends talking about Budapest.

a) Before you listen, look at sentences 1-6 and, in pairs, try to guess whether they are *True* or *False*.

- |                                             | <i>True</i>              | <i>False</i>             |
|---------------------------------------------|--------------------------|--------------------------|
| 1. The best way to travel around is by car. | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 2. Traffic can be very heavy.               | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 3. You can buy lovely gifts.                | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 4. Eating out doesn't cost much.            | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 5. Public transport is not expensive.       | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |
| 6. Summers are cool.                        | <input type="checkbox"/> | <input type="checkbox"/> |



b) Listen and tick (✓) the sentences as *True* or *False*. Did you guess correctly?

c) Listen again and make notes about Budapest under the headings below. Make similar notes about the place you live in. Compare the two cities.

	Budapest	My city
• traffic		
• shopping		
• restaurants		
• public transport		
• weather		

*Model: Traffic in Budapest is as heavy as in my city.*

25

Put the adjectives in brackets into the correct form.



Kinsale may be one of 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*small*) towns in southern Ireland but it's also one of 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*famous*). It is well known for its 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*wonderful*) fish restaurants. Some of 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*) known chefs in the world have practiced in the restaurants there. The town itself is one of 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*picturesque*) in southern

Ireland. It is situated by the sea, which ensures that it is **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*cool*) in the summer than other inland towns. A **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*huge*) cathedral overlooks the town and it is one of **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*brehtaking*) in the whole area. To the north of the town lies one of **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*high*) mountain ranges in the country. The town is very **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*beautiful*), with its many craft shops and narrow cobbled streets. Most tourists visit Kinsale for its fish restaurants, which are family owned. This means that the service there is **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*) than in other restaurants. The staff are **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*welcoming*) there than anywhere else. The food may be **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*expensive*) but you will have one of **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*pleasurable*) evenings of your life there. So, go ahead and visit Kinsale.

26

### Translate into English.



**1.** Раджу вам піти цією дорогою. Вона коротша за ту. І взагалі, я вважаю, що це найкоротший шлях до залізничної станції. **2.** Ця проблема не така серйозна, як вам здається. Вона набагато простіша. **3.** Ваш брат дуже талановитий дизайнер. Він, мабуть, найталановитіший у нашому місті.

**4.** Чим чистіше повітря у місцевості, тим більше людей бажає придбати житло там. Таким чином, деякі райони стають все більш привабливими. **5.** Галерея мистецтв у нашому місті не менш цікава ніж у столиці. Вона дійсно варта того, щоб її відвідати. **6.** Будинки на околиці міста не такі дорогі як у центрі, проте й інфраструктура не така ж сама. **7.** Життя у селі не таке як у місті. Воно в декілька разів дешевше. Можна навіть сказати, що життя в селі найдешевше. **8.** Реферат має бути якомога коротшим та містити лише найважливішу інформацію. **9.** Для вашої маленької кімнати потрібно купити світліші шпалери, тоді вона не виглядатиме такою похмурою як зараз. **10.** Це найцікавіший маршрут, який тільки можна було б уявити. Ми дуже задоволені. Чим більше ми оглядаємо ваше місто, тим красивішим воно нам здається. **11.** Цей район, поки що, найсучасніший у нашому місті. Чим довше я живу в ньому, тим більше я закохуюсь у нього. Він набагато зручніший, ніж моє попереднє місце проживання. **12.** Наше озеро чистіше ніж річка за містом. Мусимо визнати, ця річка найбрудніша в області.

27

### Fill in the correct *present* or *future* forms.



Dear Emma,

I **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ to tell you about the exciting plans I have for when you **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ me in New York City! As soon as I **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ you up from the airport, I'll take you to my flat. **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ you settle in, we are going to dinner at the famous



Rainbow Room in Rockefeller Center. It has a great view of the city. The next day we 5. \_\_\_\_\_ famous sites all day like the Empire State Building and the Statue of Liberty. There 6. \_\_\_\_\_ plenty of time to take a walk through Central Park and visit Times Square as well. In the evening we 7. \_\_\_\_\_ *Mamma Mia* at the Broadway Theatre. Don't worry, 8. \_\_\_\_\_ you leave, you will have the chance to go shopping on Fifth Avenue at some of the best shops in the world. I promise you, by the time you leave, you 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the best of New York. Let me know if you 10. \_\_\_\_\_ anything. I can't wait to see you!

Love,  
Monica

- |     |                      |                    |               |                      |
|-----|----------------------|--------------------|---------------|----------------------|
| 1.  | a) write             | b) am writing      | c) will write | d) will be writing   |
| 2.  | a) will have visited | b) are visiting    | c) visit      | d) will be visiting  |
| 3.  | a) will pick         | b) pick            | c) am picking | d) will be picking   |
| 4.  | a) Until             | b) After           | c) While      | d) By the time       |
| 5.  | a) will be visiting  | b) are visiting    | c) visit      | d) will have visited |
| 6.  | a) have been         | b) is              | c) will be    | d) is going to be    |
| 7.  | a) see               | b) will have seen  | c) will see   | d) are going to see  |
| 8.  | a) after             | b) as soon as      | c) before     | d) while             |
| 9.  | a) will have seen    | b) will see        | c) see        | d) will be seeing    |
| 10. | a) will need         | b) will be needing | c) need       | d) will have needed  |

28

a) Which of the ideas below do you associate with the city and which with the countryside?

### CITY LIFE



- fresh air
- more job opportunities
- easy access to culture (museums, exhibitions...)
- more open spaces
- helpful neighbours
- plenty of entertainment (Cinema, parks, concerts...)
- lower cost of living
- more housing options
- modern public transport
- fabulous landscapes
- attractive, exciting lifestyle
- relaxed and healthy lifestyle
- good health care (hospitals)
- close contact with nature
- lots of conveniences (shops, restaurants...)

### COUNTRY LIFE



b) Which of the adjectives below do you associate with the city and which with the countryside?

- safe
- polluted
- peaceful
- crowded
- big
- stressful
- quiet
- helpful
- relaxing
- busy
- healthy
- noisy
- fast
- expensive
- lonely
- clean
- dangerous
- boring
- exciting

c) Use the adjectives in (b) and complete the sentences using the comparative of superiority.

1. The air in the country is \_\_\_\_\_, but in the city, it is \_\_\_\_\_. 2. City life is \_\_\_\_\_ because there are plenty of things you can do. This is why living in the country can be \_\_\_\_\_. 3. Cities are \_\_\_\_\_ than villages and \_\_\_\_\_ because more people live there. 4. People in the city may feel \_\_\_\_\_ because they don't have time for each other. 5. In the country there is less crime, so people feel \_\_\_\_\_. In the city life is \_\_\_\_\_. 6. The cost of living is \_\_\_\_\_ in the city. 7. There is a strong sense of community in the country and neighbours are usually \_\_\_\_\_. 8. There is less pollution in the country and so people have a \_\_\_\_\_ life. 9. It's quieter and \_\_\_\_\_ in the country. It is \_\_\_\_\_ in the city because of the traffic. 10. In the city there is more confusion and so living there can be \_\_\_\_\_. Life in the country is much \_\_\_\_\_ than in the city. 11. People seem to be \_\_\_\_\_ in the city because they are always working and running around. 12. Life in the city is \_\_\_\_\_ and in the country, life moves a bit slower.



**29** Complete the gaps with the words provided in the boxes.

fun • job • tiring • boring • drive • difficult • crowded • lonely  
dangerous • stressed • pollution • secure

Living in the countryside may be more relaxing, but it can get 1. \_\_\_\_\_ as life is slower. There is less to do to have 2. \_\_\_\_\_, like going to the cinema or shopping centre. It is also more 3. \_\_\_\_\_ to get to places because very often there are no good public transport systems. Getting a 4. \_\_\_\_\_ in the country may also be harder. Most jobs are in the city so people have to 5. \_\_\_\_\_ there every day and this can be 6. \_\_\_\_\_.

Living in the city may be exciting but it is also 7. \_\_\_\_\_. The crime rate is higher and people may feel less 8. \_\_\_\_\_ than in the countryside. Moreover, there is more 9. \_\_\_\_\_ because of cars. So, there are more traffic jams. Cities are bigger and so they are more 10. \_\_\_\_\_. City life is faster and people are often so busy and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ that they don't have time to pay much attention to their neighbours. Some people may also feel 12. \_\_\_\_\_.

**30** a) A *sleepy village* surrounded by woods and rivers might suit some people, but others prefer the *bright lights* and *fast pace* of the big city. Read the stories of Stephen and Marianna to understand their lifestyles and preferences.



My name is Stephen and I live in a tiny flat in Brixton, south-west London. I chose to live here because there is never a **dull** moment in a city like London. I'm an art student and the **hustle** and **bustle** of so many people in one area is the inspiration for a lot of my painting. Another huge advantage of city life is

having everything you need so **close at hand**. Living beside the Tube station means I don't need a car to get around, which saves me money. Also, there are shopping centres, art galleries and museums everywhere.

Of course, London, like any large city, has its problems, too. Londoners don't chat on the Tube or the bus and there is much less **community spirit** than in the country, where my parents live.

In fact, they don't understand how I can **put up with** the constant noise and pollution, and **traffic congestion**. However, I see that as a small price to pay. I'm **in my element** here in the heart of this fine city. As a famous poet once said, 'He who is tired of London is tired of life.'



My name is Marianna and I live in New South Wales, Australia, on a **huge ranch** called *The Rain River Land*. It's a beautiful area with fantastic scenery. I live here with my husband Joe and our two children, Patrick, 11, and Abby, 8.

We have lived on this ranch for several years and love our **healthy lifestyle**. We have 70,000 hectares of land, so the children have lots of space to run around and enjoy the **peace and quiet**. The air is clean and fresh and we produce a lot of our own food so we are sure that what we eat is fresh. There's lots of hard work to do running a ranch, but we don't mind.

Of course, there are some negative aspects of life out here, as we say **down under**. There are often droughts in Australia, and sometimes we can't grow any crops for months. We feel isolated sometimes, too, especially since the nearest neighbours are almost 100 km away. Another problem is that many things are not as easily available as in the city. There are no **local facilities** such as schools, supermarkets and shops, and if we are ill, we have to call the flying doctor.

Although life here can be difficult, we wouldn't change it for the world.

**b) Mark the statements (1-10) True (T) or False (F). Then, explain the words and phrases in bold.**

- 1. Stephen is a professional painter.
- 2. Stephen thinks using public transport is cheaper than travelling by car.
- 3. Stephen's parents don't like the noise of London.
- 4. Stephen is tired of living in London.
- 5. Stephen wants to move to the country.
- 6. Marianna and her family have lived on the ranch for most of their lives.
- 7. Life on a ranch has some disadvantages.
- 8. Marianna doesn't have any neighbours close by.
- 9. Marianna has lots of facilities close at hand.
- 10. Marianna wishes her life were different.

**31** 🎧 Listen and say where each person lives. What reasons do they give for liking where they live? Do you agree with their opinions?

	<i>The place</i>	<i>Reasons</i>
<i>Bill</i>		
<i>Anne</i>		
<i>John and Mary</i>		

**32** 🗳️ Where would you like to live for the rest of your life? Why?

- in a spacious and luxurious house in a quiet village in the middle of nowhere
- in a very small but modern, well-furnished flat in a noisy city center
- in a cold or hot climate
- in Ukraine or abroad

**33** a) Read the text about the advantages and disadvantages of living in a city. There are three paragraphs. What is the purpose of each one?

b) Replace the words underlined with one of the following.

- |                                   |                                |
|-----------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| ✓ <i>in spite of</i>              | ✓ <i>pros and cons</i>         |
| ✓ <i>another point is that</i>    | ✓ <i>one advantage is that</i> |
| ✓ <i>all things considered</i>    | ✓ <i>for instance</i>          |
| ✓ <i>to sum up</i>                | ✓ <i>in my opinion</i>         |
| ✓ <i>one disadvantage is that</i> | ✓ <i>especially</i>            |
| ✓ <i>moreover</i>                 | ✓ <i>finally</i>               |

### ***Living in the City***

Living in a city has both advantages and disadvantages. On the plus side, it is often easier to find work, and there is usually a choice of public transport, so you don't need to own a car. Also, there are a lot of interesting things to do and places to see. For example, you can eat in good restaurants, visit museums, and go to the theatre and to concerts. What is more, when you want to relax, you can usually find a park where you can feed the ducks or just sit on a park bench and read a book. All in all, city life is full of bustle and variety and you will never feel bored.

However, for every plus there is a minus. For one thing, you might have a job, but unless it is very well-paid, you will not be able to afford many of the things that there are to do, because living in a city is often very expensive. It is particularly difficult to find good, cheap accommodation. What is more, public transport is sometimes crowded and dirty, particularly in the rush hour, and even the parks can become very crowded, especially on Sundays, when it seems that every city-dweller is looking for some open space and green grass. Last of all, despite all the crowds, it is still possible to feel very lonely in a city.

In conclusion, I think that city life can be particularly appealing to young people, who like the excitement of the city and don't mind the noise and pollution. However, many people, when they get older, and particularly when they have young children, often prefer the peace and fresh air of the countryside.

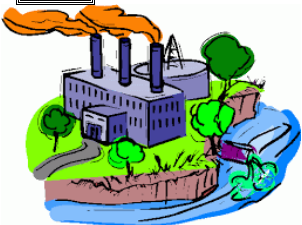
34

Fill in *used to*, *be used to*, *would* or *was going to*. Sometimes you have to use a negative form.

Although my friend Tom has lived in the city for three years, he still 1. \_\_\_\_\_ it. He 2. \_\_\_\_\_ live in the country so he 3. \_\_\_\_\_ living in a more peaceful environment. His first few days in the city were so unpleasant that he 4. \_\_\_\_\_ move straight back home, but he found a job and decided to stay. That's when I met him. He 5. \_\_\_\_\_ come into the office with his coffee every morning and he 6. \_\_\_\_\_ often stop and talk for a while about what his life 7. \_\_\_\_\_ be like in the country. His family 8. \_\_\_\_\_ have their own nice vegetable garden and his mother 9. \_\_\_\_\_ prepare wonderful meals. In autumn, they 10. \_\_\_\_\_ go for long walks and they 11. \_\_\_\_\_ collect wild mushrooms. Tom made it sound so wonderful that, at one point last year, I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ quit my job and leave the city forever. But I didn't. I 13. \_\_\_\_\_ the noise and excitement of the city and I know I wouldn't feel at home in the country.

35

Translate the following sentences into English.



1. Основні проблеми у місті – це перенаселення, бідність, злочинність і забруднення води та повітря. 2. Сьогодні люди переїзять з сільської місцевості до міської. Вони переїзять з маленьких хуторів та сіл до великих гамірних міст. 3. Люди їдуть від мирних пагорбів та гір, рівнин та полів, річок і струмків до міст з постійно переповненими вулицями. 4. Будь-яке велике місто відоме своїми хмарочосами, інтенсивним рухом транспорту і транспортними пробками, забрудненим повітрям. 5. Будинки у сільській місцевості дешевші, а в місті навіть маленька квартира коштує досить багато, щоб найняти. 6. Основна причина, чому люди їдуть до міста – це робота. 7. Поряд з промисловим районом, як правило, є житловий район, де можуть жити робітники заводів. 8. Люди кожного дня їдуть до місця роботи, що знаходиться далеко. Багато хто з них живуть у передмісті далеко від промислового району та центру міста. 9. Життя у великому місті дуже дороге, ось чому необхідно мати добре оплачувану роботу. 10. За містом можна піти на прогулянку до лісу, щоб збирати гарні квіти, смачні гриби та ягоди. 11. Життя у великому місті подобається молодим людям, тому що воно сповнене суєти й дуже різноманітне. 12. Не



дивлячись на величезні натовпи людей, у місті все ж можна почуватися дуже самотнім. **13.** Якщо хочете гарно відпочити, ви можете знайти парк, де можна посидіти на лавці і годувати качок та голубів. **14.** Коли люди старішають, вони надають перевагу тиші та свіжому повітрю сільської місцевості. **15.** Люди їдуть за місто, щоб відпочити від шуму та суєти галасливого міста. **16.** У селі ти можеш дихати свіжим, чистим повітрям, засмагати на сонечку, купатися у річці чи озері, лежати на траві, насолоджуватися чудовим краєвидом.



36

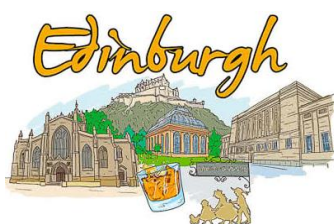
✎ Write an essay “*The Pros and Cons of Living in the Country*” according to the plan below. Be ready to present it in the class.

**Plan**

1. The pluses of living in the country. The best places in the country.
2. The minuses of living in the country.
3. Your personal attitude to living in the country.

37

Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous, the Past Simple* tense. Mind the word order in the interrogative sentences.



1. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in London with his family and then \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) to Edinburgh to study. 2. – That is their house over there. – How long they \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) here? – They \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) there since 2005. 3. – So, this is the city \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) born in. – How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) here? – We \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) here until I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to school. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) out in 2003. 4. – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*) over Loch Ness last week. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) the Loch Ness monster? 5. – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/see*) John for three years. I wonder where he is. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/hear*)? He \_\_\_\_\_ (*sell*) his flat in the city center, \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a cottage in the countryside and \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) there more than three years ago. He is OK and \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) his life since that time. 6. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) your hair long when you were at school? – Yes, my mother \_\_\_\_\_ (*insist*) on it. However, when I \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) school, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*cut*) my hair and \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) it short ever since. 7. Shakespeare \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) a lot of plays. 8. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) several plays. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/finish*) his second tragedy. 9. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/smoke*) for two weeks. He is trying to give it up. 10. Chopin \_\_\_\_\_ (*compose*) some of his music in Majorca. 11. – When he \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*)? – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) at 2:00 p.m. 12. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) his books when I was at school. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) them very much. 13. I can't go out because I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/finish*) my work. 14. – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/drive*) a car. – Well, you may try now. 15. – This street clock is slow. – It isn't slow, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*). 16. The excursion



\_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) at 2:30 and \_\_\_\_\_ (*last*) for two hours. Everyone \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) it very much. **17.** We \_\_\_\_\_ (*miss*) the bus. Now we'll have to walk. **18.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very cold this year. I wonder when it is going to get warmer. **19.** Mr Pound is a bank manager. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here for five years. **20.** Mr Donald \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) as a tour guide. Then he \_\_\_\_\_ (*retire*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to live in the country.

**38**

**Fill in the gaps with *gone to, been to* or *been in*.**



**1.** We haven't \_\_\_\_\_ Milan for very long, so we don't know it very well. And we still haven't \_\_\_\_\_ many museums. **2.** The Miltons have \_\_\_\_\_ Kenya twice. **3.** My brother has \_\_\_\_\_ Leeds for three months now. **4.** – Do you know where Mum is? – Yes, she's \_\_\_\_\_ the Robinsons' with Dad. **5.** Carol's sister has \_\_\_\_\_ hospital since Tuesday. **6.** I have \_\_\_\_\_ New York several times, but I haven't \_\_\_\_\_ Atlanta. **7.** My boss has \_\_\_\_\_ Lisbon for a week, so I'm doing some of his work for him. **8.** I have \_\_\_\_\_ that art gallery twice but I haven't seen the painting you mentioned. **9.** Martin isn't here. He has \_\_\_\_\_ the library to get some new books. **10.** Ann has \_\_\_\_\_ the school to pick up the kids. She should be back by 4 p.m. **11.** Sue has \_\_\_\_\_ the bank to pay some bills. She'll be back in an hour. **12.** She has \_\_\_\_\_ Paris once.

**39**

**Read the text below and fill in the blanks with the word, which best fits each gap.**

***Bin It! Do NOT Drop It!***



It is common knowledge amongst British taxpayers that keeping Britain's streets free of litter requires a **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ of money. Every year, a staggering 660 million pounds **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ spent on clearing litter from the streets – all this **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ the fact that dropping litter is against the law in the UK.

Nowadays, you can be fined up **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ £1,000 for littering. Not **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ is litter ugly, but it can be dangerous **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ well. Litter attracts rats and this in turn **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ cause water contamination and widespread sickness. We all have to **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ responsible for maintaining high standards of cleanliness on our streets before **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ is too late. If you see rubbish in the street, pick it up and take it to a rubbish bin **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ order to set a good example.

**40**

**Put the verbs in brackets into *the Present Perfect, the Present Perfect Continuous* or *the Past Simple* tense. Mind the word order in the interrogative sentences.**

**1.** – How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) out of work? – I'm not out of work now. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/start*) a new job. – How you \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) the job? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*answer*) an

advertisement in the paper. **2.** – The plumber \_\_\_\_\_ (*yet/be*) here? – Yes, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) for only an hour. – What he \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) that time? – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) off the water and \_\_\_\_\_ (*empty*) the tank. **3.** – Hannibal \_\_\_\_\_ (*bring*) elephants across the Alps. – Why he \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) that? – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to use them in



battles. **4.** Quick! We need to call an ambulance. There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) an accident. **5.** The bus drivers \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) on strike last week. There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) no buses. **6.** Mr Lee \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) in a bank 15 years ago. Then he \_\_\_\_\_ (*give*) it up. Now he works as a travel agent. **7.** – Where do you live? – In Boston. – How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*)

there? – Five years. – Where you \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) before that? – In Chicago. – And why you \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) Chicago? – Because of my new job. **8.** – Where is Tom? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/see*) him today, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) Maria that he'd be in for dinner. **9.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) this in Bond Street. – How much you \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) for it? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) £100. **10.** – Where you \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) this knife? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) it in the street. – Why you \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/leave*) it there? **11.** – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) my black gloves. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) them anywhere? – No, I'm afraid, I \_\_\_\_\_.

When you last \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) them? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) them at the theatre last night. – Perhaps you \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) them at the theatre. **12.** – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the house at 8:00 a.m. – Where he \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*)? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/see*) where he \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*). **13.** – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*serve*) in the First World War. – When that war \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*)? – It \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) in 1914 and \_\_\_\_\_ (*last*) for four years. **14.** – Who you \_\_\_\_\_ (*vote*) for at the last election to the Town Hall? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*vote*) for Mr Smith. – He \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) elected, \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) he? – No, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) his deposit. **15.** – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) your last job? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) it at first but then I \_\_\_\_\_ (*quarrel*) with my employer and he \_\_\_\_\_ (*fire*) me. – How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here for two weeks. **16.** – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) Mrs Jones. How long you \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) her? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) her for ten years. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the same gym. **17.** That is Mr Rochester, who teaches me how to drive a bus, but he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/have*) much time to teach me. I only \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in his group for a week. **18.** – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) that you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here. You \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here long? – Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here for two months. **19.** – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) to the Cathedral? – Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) there last Sunday. **20.** – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) today's paper? – No, I \_\_\_\_\_.

Anything interesting \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*)? – Yes, two convicted murderers \_\_\_\_\_ (*escape*) from the prison down the road. **21.** – What are all those people looking at? – There \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) an accident. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) what \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*)? – Yes, a motor cycle \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) into a lorry. **22.** – Where you \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*)? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) out in a yacht. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*enjoy*) it? – Yes, very much. We \_\_\_\_\_



(*take*) part in a race. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*)? – No, we \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) last. **23.** – How long that horrible monument \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there? – It \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there for six months. Lots of people \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) to the Town Council asking them to take it away but so far nothing \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) done. **24.** – How you \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) that scar? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) it in a car accident a year ago. **25.** Benjamin is having a driving lesson. It's the first time he \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) a car. **26.** You \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) here before? – Yes, I \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) my holidays here last year. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a good time? – Not really, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/stop*) raining. **26.** Tony has oil on his hands. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*) his car.

41

**Complete the letter with the appropriate *present* tense form.**

Dear Sal,

You'll never guess where I **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*write*) from. I **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) in the garden of a hotel overlooking Lake Windermere. It is so good to get away. We **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) here for nearly a week now. Every morning I **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get up*) at 7 o'clock and I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) for a swim in the lake before breakfast. Since we arrived, we **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) a lot of sightseeing but we **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/visit*) the castle yet. We **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) the boats coming and going all morning and the owner of the hotel **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/suggest*) that we take a boat trip this afternoon. There is a boat that **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) at 2 o'clock that we can take to cross the lake to Wray Castle – it sounds like fun.

We **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) to Scotland this weekend to visit relatives and then we **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*return*) to London next week. What **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*you/do*) in Devon since you got there? Email me soon and tell me your news.

Yours,  
Mary

42

**Fill in the gaps with the correct verb. Use the correct form of *the Past Simple* or *the Present Perfect*. Use each verb once. Retell the dialogue.**

*arrive go have hear do read tell invite come  
explain buy visit take look at*

***Interview with Katerina Denuovo, a Film Star***

**Interviewer:** You've never been to our country before, right? What are your first impressions?

**Katerina:** I **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ many interesting things about your country in magazines and newspapers; before I **2.** \_\_\_\_\_, people **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ me you were all very friendly, and when I **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ at the airport everyone brought me flowers. And it's true, your shops are wonderful! I **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (already) some shopping – I **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ a colourful scarf and some hand-painted china.

*Interviewer:* 7. \_\_\_\_\_ you \_\_\_\_\_ time to do any sightseeing yet?

*Katerina:* Yes, I 8. \_\_\_\_\_ a stroll round the Old Town. At one restaurant the owner 9. \_\_\_\_\_ me to try some of your specialties; he 10. \_\_\_\_\_ to me some of the secrets of your cuisine – the way you prepare mushrooms is excellent.

*Interviewer:* What about the future? 11. \_\_\_\_\_ you (ever) \_\_\_\_\_ to see a fortune-teller, and do you read your horoscope?

*Katerina:* I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (never) my horoscope. All I know is I'm a Scorpio!

*Interviewer:* Will you come here again?

*Katerina:* As soon as I can. I 13. \_\_\_\_\_ Krakow yet which I 14. \_\_\_\_\_ so much about.

43

Fill in the verbs in the correct *present* or *future* tense.



If you really 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*like*) watersports, you 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*love*) Aquaworld. As soon as you 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) at this unique theme park, visitor hosts 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*greet*) you and 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*show*) you to a beautiful luxury chalet. Once you 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in our swimsuit, you 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be able*) to enjoy a wide variety of watersports, from swimming to water-skiing. You 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*find*) plenty to do and you 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the chance to try many exciting activities. Aquaworld 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*open*) at 9 a.m. every day and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*) at 8 p.m. There 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) special facilities for little children and lifeguards 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*supervise*) all activities. Visit Aquaworld for an experience you 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*never/forget*) in your life!

## SECTION II: PUBLIC TRANSPORTATION

### GRAMMAR:

- **The Past Perfect Tense and The Past Perfect Continuous Tense**
- **Prepositions of Place and Movement (Revision)**
- **Tense Forms (Revision)**
- **Articles (Revision)**

### Vocabulary

<b>Kinds of Vehicles</b>	<b>Види Автотранспорту</b>
an ambulance	автомобіль швидкої допомоги
a car	легковий автомобіль
• <i>a convertible ~ / a cabriolet</i>	• <i>кабриолет</i>
• <i>a police ~</i>	• <i>полицейський ~</i>
• <i>a racing ~</i>	• <i>гоночний ~</i>
• <i>a saloon ~</i>	• <i>~ для 4-7 пасажирів</i>
• <i>a sports ~</i>	• <i>спортивний ~</i>
a caravan	фургон; будиночок-автопричіп
a container	контейнер
a fire engine / a fire truck	пожежна машина
a lorry / a truck	вантажівка
a taxi / a cab	таксі
a tractor	трактор
a van	фургон
a hatchback	хечбек
a sedan	седан
a jeep	джип
four wheel drive = all-wheel drive	повний привід
a cabin	кабіна
an engine	двигун
a wheel	колесо
• <i>a steering wheel</i>	• <i>кермо</i>
a windscreen	вітрове скло, лобове скло
a tyre	шина

<b>City Transport</b>	<b>Міський Транспорт</b>
public transport	громадський транспорт
• <i>overground ~ / underground ~</i>	• <i>наземний ~ / підземний ~</i>
• <i>convenient ~</i>	• <i>зручний ~</i>
• <i>efficient ~</i>	• <i>дієвий, ефективний ~</i>

• <i>fast / quick</i> ~	• <i>швидкий</i> ~
• <i>frequent</i> ~	• <i>частий</i> ~
• <i>free</i> ~	• <i>безкоштовний</i> ~
• <i>regular</i> ~	• <i>регулярний</i> ~
• <i>reliable</i> ~	• <i>надійний</i> ~
• <i>slow</i> ~	• <i>повільний</i> ~
a mode / a means of transport(ation)	вид транспорту
a bus	автобус
• <i>a river bus</i>	• <i>річковий автобус</i>
• <i>an around-downtown bus</i>	• <i>автобус з кільцевим маршрутом</i>
• <i>a direct bus</i>	• <i>прямий автобус</i>
a single / double decker	одноповерховий / двоповерховий автобус
a bus station	автовокзал
a tram	трамвай
a trolleybus	тролейбус
a bus / a tram / a trolleybus stop	зупинка автобуса, трамваю, троллейбуса
• <i>a designated stop</i>	• <i>зазначена (спеціально відведена) зупинка</i>
• <i>a stop on request</i>	• <i>зупинка за вимогою</i>
a terminus	кінцева зупинка трамваю, автобуса; вокзал
a terminal	кінцевий пункт призначення, вокзал
metro / the underground / subway / the tube	метро
a metro station	станція метро
a taxi / a cab	таксі
• <i>a taxi rank</i>	• <i>стоянка таксі</i>
• <i>a fixed-route taxi</i>	• <i>маршрутка</i>
a car park / a parking lot (place, spot)	стоянка автотранспорту
• <i>a parking ticket</i>	• <i>штрафний талон за порушення правил стоянки</i>
a cable car / a funicular	канатна дорога, фунікулер
a suburban train	приміський потяг
an electric train / a way train / a commuter train	електричка
a train station / a railway ~	залізничний вокзал
a bicycle	велосипед
a cycle hire station	пункт прокату велосипедів



a motorbike	моторолер, мопед
a motorcycle	мотоцикл

<b>Using City Transport</b>	<b>Користування Транспортном Міста</b>
automatic gates / a turnstile / a ticket barrier	турнікет
• <i>to pass / to go through the automatic gates</i>	• <i>проходити через турнікет (у метро)</i>
a bus driver	водій автобуса
a change	пересадка (на транспорті)
a commuter	людина, яка їздить кожного дня з передмістя на роботу
a conductor	кондуктор
a destination	місце призначення
distance	відстань
an escalator	ескалатор
• <i>to go up / down on the escalator</i>	• <i>підніматися / спускатися на ескалаторі</i>
an entrance	вхід
an exit	вихід
a fare	плата за проїзд; вартість проїзду
• <i>a flat fare</i>	• <i>фіксована плата за проїзд</i>
• <i>a penalty fare / a fine</i>	• <i>штраф</i>
• <i>a full fare</i>	• <i>повна вартість проїзду</i>
• <i>a reduced fare</i>	• <i>знижена вартість проїзду</i>
• <i>a discount / a concession</i>	• <i>пільга на проїзд</i>
a fare dodger / a fraudster / a bilker	“заєць” (користується громадським транспортом і не платить за нього)
• <i>to pay a fine</i>	• <i>сплачувати штраф</i>
• <i>to be fined</i>	• <i>бути оштрафованим</i>
an interchange	станція пересадки на іншу лінію
a jerk	різкий поштовх, ривок
a journey / a trip	поїздка; подорож; рейс
a handrail	поручень
• <i>to hold the handrail</i>	• <i>триматися за поручень</i>
a meter	лічильник
a passenger	пасажир
a platform	платформа
• <i>to take sb. down to the platform</i>	• <i>довозити когось вниз на платформу</i>
a queue / to queue	черга / стояти в черзі

a route	маршрут
a rush hour	година пік
a stop / a station	зупинка / станція
• <i>the last but one ~</i>	• <i>передостання зупинка / станція</i>
• <i>the next but one ~</i>	• <i>зупинка / станція через одну</i>
a slot	щілина, отвір для опускання жетону або монети
a ticket / a pass	квиток
• <i>a single ticket / a one-way ~</i>	• <i>квиток в один кінець</i>
• <i>a two-way ticket</i>	• <i>квиток в обидва кінці</i>
• <i>a return ticket</i>	• <i>зворотній квиток</i>
• <i>to punch a ticket</i>	• <i>пробивати компостером, компостувати квиток</i>
• <i>to buy tickets beforehand / ~ in advance</i>	• <i>купувати квитки заздалегідь, наперед</i>
• <i>a valid ticket / an invalid ~</i>	• <i>дійсний квиток / недійсний ~</i>
a ticket inspector	контролер
a ticket office / a ticket booth	білетна каса, кіоск
a travel card / pass	проїзний квиток
• <i>a monthly pass / ~ saver</i>	• <i>проїзний квиток на місяць</i>
• <i>an expired pass</i>	• <i>недійсний (через закінчення терміну дії) проїзний квиток</i>
• <i>to expire</i>	• <i>кінчатися, минати (про термін)</i>
a token	жетон
• <i>to put a ~ into the slot</i>	• <i>вкинути жетон в автомат</i>
• <i>to obtain a ~ from the automatic machine</i>	• <i>придбати жетон в автоматі</i>
to arrive	прибувати, приїжджати
to alight / to exit (the train, bus)	сходити, виходити з (потягу, автобуса)
to board (the bus, train, tram)	заходити в (автобус, потяг, трамвай)
to carry passengers	перевозити пасажирів
to catch a bus	сісти на автобус, зупинити ~
to change routes	міняти маршрут
to change buses / to change for another bus/ to transfer	пересідати на інший автобус
to commute	їздити кожного дня з передмістя на роботу
to connect	з'єднувати, зв'язувати; сполучати
to depart	відправлятися (про транспорт); їхати, від'їжджати

to get <b>on</b> (the bus, train, tram)	заходити в (автобус, потяг, трамвай)
to get <b>off</b> (the bus, train, tram)	виходити з (автобусу, потягу, трамваю)
to get <b>into</b> (the car, taxi)	сісти в (автомобіль, таксі)
to get <b>out of</b> (the car, taxi)	вийти з (автомобіля, таксі)
to go <b>by</b> (bus, metro, train, tram)	їздити (автобусом, метро, потягом, трамваєм)
to operate	діяти, працювати
to ride (a/the bicycle, motorcycle)	їхати на (велосипеді, мотоциклі)
to ride (a/the bus, train)	їхати (автобусом, потягом)
to run (regularly)	їздити, курсувати (регулярно)
to serve	обслуговувати
to take a bus	сісти на автобус (скористатися ~)
to hail a taxi	зупинити, впіймати таксі
to hire	брати напрокат
to park	ставити на стоянку
to elbow	штовхати ліктем
to elbow <i>one's</i> way	проштовхувати ліктями <i>собі</i> дорогу
to push / to hustle / to jostle	штовхатися
to push forward	штовхатися, проштовхуватися вперед
to rush / to hurry	квапитися, спішити
to squeeze ( <b>in</b> )	здавлювати, притискати
to tread on <i>one's</i> foot	наступати на <i>чиюсь</i> ногу
to travel to <i>one's</i> heart content	подорожувати скільки душа забажає

1

Read the text and translate it into Ukrainian.

### *Means of Road Transport*



There exist various **means of road transport**. **Buses, trams, trolleybuses** are considered means of public transportation, while **cars, vans, lorries, bicycles, motorcycles** and **motorbikes** are private **vehicles**. There are also **ambulances, police cars** and **fire engines**. They help people in different dangerous situations.

Vehicles usually have **wheels, tyres, cabins, engines**, etc. For example, a bus has an engine, a **saloon** or a **compartment for passengers**, a **rubber connection** and four or eight wheels with tyres. They go along the road being quite **fast** if there are no traffic jams. Buses **carry passengers** to their **destinations**. In many cities, buses are either yellow or green, which makes them visible among other means.

Trolleybuses and trams are **electric means of transport**, so they are **ecologically clean**. Therefore, they can go only where there are **electric wires**

above. They get electricity from the wires with **current collectors**. A trolley bus has wheels and tyres, so it goes **along the road**. A tram goes **along the rails**, as it doesn't have tyres. Both a tram and a trolleybus are quite **slow** and **noisy**.

Cars and taxis are used for private purposes. They are fast and comfortable, but most of them are not ecologically clean as they **run on petrol or gas** and produce **exhaust fumes**, which **pollute the air**.

Lorries are bigger than cars and can carry heavy things in the **loading platform**. They have wheels with tyres and go along the road. Vans are covered lorries. They both have a driver's cabins and are quite slow. Caravans, houses on wheels, are also slow, but you can live in them when you travel.



Bicycles, motorbikes and motorcycles are mostly for one person. They are slow and usually have two wheels with tyres. Motorbikes and motorcycles are not ecologically clean as they have engines, but bicycles have no engines and do not pollute the atmosphere.

An ambulance is a hospital car to carry people to hospital. It is white with a **red cross** on its side. A fire engine is red and has a **ladder** and **hoses** to pump the water to **extinguish fires**. A police car is either white or black. It **patrols streets** on a regular basis. These vehicles are fast and have a **blue light on top** to signal other cars in cases of **emergency**.



2

**Describe the vehicles given below according to the plan.**

- a car
- a tram
- a fire engine
- a motorcycle
- a bus

### Plan

- 1. engine, wheels, tyres, where it goes
- 2. ecology matters (wires, current collector)
- 3. cabin, saloon, loading platform, for passengers or loads
- 4. color, special signs (blue light, crosses, stripes), equipment
- 5. speed and noise/sound



3

**Read and translate the text about different modes of transport in London.**

### *Public Transport in London*

London is one of the biggest cities in Europe, and it has one of the world's largest public transport systems. Today's public transport in London includes **the Underground** (also called **the Tube**), **buses**, **suburban trains**, **the DLR** or Docklands Light Railway, some modern **trams**, black **taxi cabs**, **cycle hire** on street corners, **river buses** and a **cable car** system.



**TRANSPORT  
FOR LONDON**  
EVERY JOURNEY MATTERS

The buses, Underground, DLR and London suburban trains are managed by a central government body called **Transport For London (TfL)** chaired by the Mayor of London.

London's public transport system provides transport for people living and working in the city, who use **travel passes** and **cards**. It is not **user-friendly** for people who want to buy one ticket at a time, for each journey. So even if you are a tourist in London, it is best to buy one of the different passes or cards which are available.

There are four main options to choose from and they all save you money compared to paying the **full fare**.

✓ **Oyster cards** and **Visitor Oyster cards** are electronic smartcards that are used **to pay for** public transport in London. They are prepaid travel passes and you have to buy them in advance. Journeys are charged one by one, at a discounted price compared to the **single ticket** price. To use an Oyster card, **touch** the card **on the yellow reader** at the gates as you start and end your journey. *You don't need to touch out at the end of your journey on buses and trams.*



✓ **Contactless debit or credit card**

Instead of an Oyster card, you can use a contactless debit or credit card. Fares are the same as the pay as you go Oyster.

✓ **One-day bus and tram pass**

With this pass you have unlimited travel for the whole of London for £5 on buses and trams only. You can travel for a single day, until 04:29 a.m. the following day.

✓ **One-day, weekly or monthly Travelcards**

This is the easiest, and in many cases the cheapest solution for tourists. These are travel passes for unlimited travel within certain zones. You can buy them on the day at the London area station where you first start your journey.

Travel ticket prices vary depending on the transport service you use, the zone(s) you travel in, the day you travel and the time you travel. It is more expensive to travel during **rush hours** than during **off-peak** travel times. Peak travel is between 6:30 a.m. to 9:30 a.m. and 4:30 p.m. to 7 p.m., Monday to Friday. What is more, try not to come to London by car, if you can avoid it. To travel into London from outside the city, **take the train** or a bus service! Traffic is difficult everywhere in the British capital, and the streets of central London have **paid access**. **Parking** is also expensive.

**Underground – “The Tube”**



The London Underground, or **“Tube”** as it is called, is the oldest underground metro network in the world, with parts operating since 1863. Today, the London Underground **carries** over a billion

passengers a year, across 270 stations and 250 miles of track. In the majority of London, you will usually find that there is an underground station **within easy walking distance**, and a train arrives within 5-7 minutes. The Underground is one of the most **efficient** ways to get around because you do not have to worry about traffic and streets.

Tube services usually run from 5 a.m. until midnight, with Night Tube services on some lines on Friday and Saturday evenings.

The underground is divided into nine **travel zones**. Zone 1 is in Central London and zones 6 to 9 are on the outskirts of the city. There are 11 Tube lines.

On arrival at any London Tube station, you can pick up a free London Underground Map. It is very useful, as it clearly indicates the general directions of the trains and shows all **interchanges**.



The **Tube fare** depends on how far you travel, the zone(s) you travel in, the day and the time you travel, and how you pay. Buy a Visitor Oyster card,

Oyster card, Travelcard or use a contactless payment card to get the best value as cash is the most expensive way to pay. An adult cash fare on the London metro for a single journey in zone 1 is £4.90. The same Tube fare with one of the cards is £2.40.

## London Buses



London's iconic **double-decker** buses are a quick, convenient and cheap way to travel around the city, with plenty of sightseeing opportunities along the way. London's bus **route** network covers all the city with a 24-hour service. Bus stops are easily **identifiable** and outline the buses that stop there, as well as the routes they take and their frequency (typically every 5-10 minutes).

Buses only stop at **designated bus stops**. They do not **stop on request** between bus stops. To ask the driver to **let you off** at the next bus stop, press one of the red buttons that you can find on the upright metal posts throughout the bus. You will probably hear a bell and see a "bus stopping" light appear at the front of the bus.

London's buses run throughout the night. Night bus services cover the period between the close of the **Tube** and the start of daytime bus services. In addition, many London bus routes run for 24 hours. The services are less frequent during the night. Night buses stop on request only: so you'll need to indicate your stop clearly to the driver when boarding or **alighting**.

You cannot pay your London bus fare with cash. A single bus fare costs £1.50. You can pay this fare by using a Visitor Oyster card, an Oyster card, a Travelcard or with a contactless payment card. To pay the bus fare simply touch your card on the yellow card reader as you board the bus, or show the driver



your paper Travelcard ticket. If you don't have a valid ticket or you don't **touch on**, you may be charged a **penalty fare**.

Children under the age of 11 **travel free** on buses and trams. There are also some other child and student **discounts** and **concessions**. Freedom Passes provide free travel for wheelchair users, as well as for older and disabled persons.

## London Trams



London's tram network, **Tramlink**, was introduced to South London in 2000. The London tram network **runs from** Wimbledon through Croydon to Beckenham, where it is a popular **mode of transport**. Tramlink trams run every 7-10 minutes in the daytime on Mondays to Saturdays.

When it comes to tickets, trams are a part of the **bus** network. There is a **flat fare** throughout the bus and tram network, £1.50 with pre-pay Oyster card or £2.60 if you pay with a paper ticket. Travelcards **are valid** on trams.

## Docklands Light Railway (DLR)



The Docklands Light Railway (DLR) is an innovative, **driverless** line that serves parts of East and South East London. The DLR connects to the London Tube network, to the Emirates Air Line cable car and London City Airport.

This overground rail system runs from 5:30 a.m. – 12:30 a.m., Monday-Saturday, and from 7:00 a.m. – 11:30 p.m. on Sunday. The DLR also operates on Oyster and the fares are the same as the Tube.

## Suburban Trains

With a number of end-of-line train **terminals** across London, travelling by London's rail system is convenient for slightly longer journeys from central London towards the suburbs and beyond. Central London train stations also have connections onto the Tube.

## London River Bus Services on the Thames

Travelling by river is a great way to get around London. You can see London's famous **landmarks** from the water. You will **beat the traffic** and enjoy fantastic views of London along the way.

River buses serve five different routes with destinations between Putney and Royal Woolwich Arsenal.



Fares vary according to river zones and discounts; prices start from free for children under five, up to £17.35 for an adult. You can buy a ticket from **a ticket office** seller or **machine** on the pier before boarding the boat. You can also pay for your journey with cards. Simply **tap your card** on the yellow disc on the pier before you board and again when you get off.

Unlike river tours, river buses do not offer **a commentary**, but you can download the visitor application into your smartphone free. This service, along with the fast and efficient links to major London locations along the Thames, makes river buses very **popular** both **with** commuters and visitors.

## Taxis



London is also **famous for** its black cabs and you can **spot** them everywhere. You can **hail** them in the street. If the yellow **TAXI sign is on**, the cab is available for **hire**. Hail one by waving your arm or **queue at a taxi rank**. Traffic in London can be heavy, and even though London **cabbies** know all the back routes, travelling by taxi can be slower and much more expensive (approximately £10 for a 15-minute journey) than travelling by public transport. Black cabs **are metered** and there is a **minimum charge** of £2.60. **Minicabs** can be cheaper but it is better to ask prices beforehand, as they are not on a meter.

## Emirates Air Line Cable Car

Glide above the Thames in the Emirates Air Line cable car and enjoy great views of London. Using the cable car is an easy way **to get from** the Greenwich Peninsula **to** the Royal Docks.

The cable car trip takes approximately 10 minutes. However, during peak times (7 a.m. to 9 a.m. Monday to Friday) the journey takes roughly five minutes. The cars, which **accommodate** 10 people, arrive every 30 seconds. You can use your Oyster and Visitor Oyster card or a contactless payment card to pay for the trip.



After 7 p.m., enjoy extended Night Flights (12 to 13 minutes each way) with music and video in cabins **to enhance** your in-flight experience as you watch the city come alive after dark.

## London Cycle Hire Scheme

London's public bike sharing scheme, Santander Cycles, is available 24/7, 365 days a year. There are more than 750 **docking stations** and 11,000 bikes in circulation across London to help you **get around** quickly and easily. The bikes



**are available** to hire at the docking station terminal with a bank card – just touch the screen and follow the instructions to begin. Getting started is easy – simply **hire** a bike, **ride** it where you like, then **return** it to any of the hundreds of docking stations across the city. It costs £2 to access the bikes for 24-hour bike access, and the first 30 minutes of each journey is free. Longer journeys cost £2 for each extra 30 minutes. Remember, if you aren't using a bike, **dock** it. You can hire a bike as many times as you like within the bike access period you have purchased.

4

**Find the English equivalents in the text from ex. 3.**



система громадського транспорту, на розі вулиць, приміські потяги, забезпечувати / надавати транспортні послуги людям, проїзний квиток, сплачувати за проїзд, купувати заздалегідь, користуватися популярністю серед людей, економити гроші, знаходитися у межах ходи, уникати години пік, прибути у місто, прибути на станцію, сісти в автобус, вийти з автобусу, поділитися на зони, найзручніший засіб пересуватися містом, платний в'їзд до міста, чітко позначати основні напрямки, можливість оглядати визначні місця, подорожувати на метро безкоштовно, фіксована плата за проїзд у міському транспорті, година пік, недійсний квиток, насолоджуватися фантастичними краєвидами, стоянка таксі, пункт прокату велосипедів, дістатися до місця призначення, білетна каса, стояти в черзі на зупинці, мінімальна такса, зупиняти таксі на вулиці, купити квиток в автоматі, зупинятися за потребою, мер, повна плата за проїзд, знижена вартість, безконтактна картка, проїзний на тиждень, по прибуттю, зупинка у спеціально відведеному місці, платити готівкою, знижки.

5

**Answer the questions using your topical vocabulary and the information from ex. 3.**

- 1. Which modes of transport does the public transport system in London include?
- 2. What is the name of the company that manages transport in London?
- 3. What is an Oyster card? How is it used?



- 4. How do people travel with a one-day bus pass?
- 5. What is a travelcard? Where can you buy it?
- 6. What do travel ticket prices depend on?
- 7. What is the rush hour? When does it occur?
- 8. Why is it better not to come to London by car?

- 9. What is the London underground called? When did it start operating?
- 10. How is the London underground organized? When do its services work?
- 11. What does the tube fare depend on?
- 12. Is it easy to use the metro in London? Why?
- 13. How much is the fare on the London metro?
- 14. What buses run around London? What advantages do they have?
- 15. How do you pay the bus fare? What discounts are available?
- 16. What is a penalty fare?
- 17. How do you ask the driver to stop the bus?
- 18. What can you tell about London trams?
- 19. What is DLR?
- 20. When do people use London's rail system?
- 21. What can you tell about London River Bus Service?
- 22. How do people travel by taxi in London?
- 23. What can you tell about cable cars in London? What are their advantages?
- 24. How do people get around London by bikes?

**6** a) You are going to hear recorded information about the Oyster card, a type of travel card used in London. Are the statements true (T), false (F) or is there no information (NI)?

- 1. The normal fare for a single journey on the Underground is £1.60.
- 2. It is more convenient to use an Oyster card than a one-day bus pass.
- 3. It is illegal to let another person use your Oyster card.
- 4. A visitor's Oyster card is more expensive to use than an ordinary one.
- 5. You don't lose money on unused credit when you leave London.

b) Listen again and speak about advantages and disadvantages of using an Oyster card.

**7** a) Fill in the blanks with *the Past Perfect* or *the Past Perfect Continuous* form of the verbs in brackets. Comment on the use of these tenses. Put questions to the underlined words and phrases.



1. The mechanic \_\_\_\_\_ (*repair*) my car by four o'clock.
2. The policeman asked if there \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) any witnesses of the accident.
3. By the time we got to the metro station, it \_\_\_\_\_ (*close*).
4. Mike phoned Rosie, but she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/return*) home from her long trip yet.
5. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*discuss*) the itinerary and were now thinking about it.
6. Everybody was already at the bus station, but the guide \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/come*) yet.
7. In the morning all the passengers felt good after the night they \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) in the comfortable sleeper.
8. After the train \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*), we crossed the railway.
9. He found the city even more beautiful than he \_\_\_\_\_ (*expect*) it to be.
10. We



had to stay at the station for the night because we \_\_\_\_\_ (*miss*) the last train. **11.** Andrew, who is English, \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in New York for seven years when we met. **12.** She \_\_\_\_\_ (*cycle*) on her bicycle for many hours before she came to the crossroads. **13.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*cycle*) two kilometres before he realized he had a puncture. **14.** Ann failed her driving test although she \_\_\_\_\_ (*practice*) for the last two weeks. **15.** We were exhausted because we \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) the city since early morning. **16.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) for less than an hour when he ran out of petrol. **17.** It \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) all night so the road was covered in water. **18.** The musician \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in this town for ten years when he became director of the opera house. **19.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) in the wrong direction for an hour before I noticed my mistake. **20.** I only \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) there for a few minutes when she arrived. **21.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*read*) and \_\_\_\_\_ (*dream*) about Spain for so long that I was simply crazy to see it. **22.** I was sad when I sold my car as I \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) it for a very long time. **23.** Mary adored visiting new places and meeting new people, so by the age of 25 she \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) to 40 countries. **24.** The Smiths were extremely tired at the end of the journey because they \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) for more than 24 hours. **25.** He \_\_\_\_\_ (*consult*) his watch nervously several times before he saw her at the end of the platform.



8

**Translate the following sentences into English.**



**1.** Вчора моя подруга Марія повідомила мені, що почала відвідувати курси водіїв. Я знала, що останніх три роки вона мріяла навчитися водити автомобіль. **2.** Вона почувала себе дуже втомленою, тому що занадто багато ходила по місту в той день. **3.** Я здогадався, що він катався на велосипеді увесь день. **4.** Трейсі не змогла заплатити за проїзд, оскільки залишила свій гаманець на роботі. **5.** Ми чекали на зупинці 40 хвилин, коли нарешті маршрутка приїхала. **6.** Після того, як замовили квитки, ми почали збирати валізи. **7.** Вона була вже в метро, коли пригадала, що забула вимкнути телевізор. **8.** Пітер спізнився на автобус, бо не чув будильника. **9.** Він із гордістю показав мені авто, яке купив кілька днів тому. **10.** Дитина заснула миттєво, тому що цілий день вона пробігала на подвір'ї. **11.** Його оштрафували, оскільки він не закомпостував квитка. **12.** Мій чоловік не зміг підвезти мене до автовокзалу, тому що випив пару пляшок пива. **13.** Коли ми вийшли на вулицю, таксі чекало на нас вже декілька хвилин. **14.** Ми запізнилися на літак, оскільки по дорозі до аеропорту простояли в пробці майже годину. **15.** Ти не дістався до потрібного тобі місця призначення, бо сів не на той тролейбус. **16.** Джон побачив штрафний талон на лобовому склі свого джипа. Він зрозумів, що припаркував авто в неналежному місці. **17.** Трамвай поїхав у депо після

того, як на кінцевій зупинці всі пасажери вийшли з нього. **18.** Ми просиділи в пробці двадцять хвилин, коли нарешті вирішили вийти з таксі та піти пішки. **19.** Мені не потрібно було стояти в черзі за жетоном, оскільки я придбала його заздалегідь. **20.** Він не зміг пройти через турнікет в метро. Термін дії його проїзного квитка закінчився напередодні.



**9** a) Listen to four descriptions of journeys. What means of transport is each person describing?

1. \_\_\_\_\_ 2. \_\_\_\_\_ 3. \_\_\_\_\_ 4. \_\_\_\_\_

b) Listen again and tick (✓) the words below as you hear them. Then look at the words you didn't hear. What means of transport are they associated with?

- |                                     |                                  |                                         |                                |
|-------------------------------------|----------------------------------|-----------------------------------------|--------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Carriages  | <input type="checkbox"/> landing | <input type="checkbox"/> runway         | <input type="checkbox"/> seats |
| <input type="checkbox"/> commute    | <input type="checkbox"/> meter   | <input type="checkbox"/> season ticket  | <input type="checkbox"/> stop  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> escalators | <input type="checkbox"/> pass    | <input type="checkbox"/> single-deckers | <input type="checkbox"/> tip   |
| <input type="checkbox"/> platform   | <input type="checkbox"/> rank    | <input type="checkbox"/> sliding doors  | <input type="checkbox"/> wing  |
| <input type="checkbox"/> rush hour  | <input type="checkbox"/> fares   | <input type="checkbox"/> double-deckers |                                |

**10** Transcribe the words and phrases 1-17. Match them with their definitions.

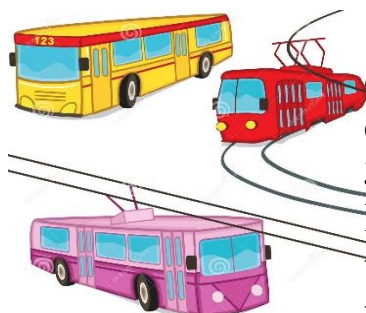
- |                            |                                                                                                                                          |
|----------------------------|------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>user-friendly</i>    | a) travelling when the demand is lower                                                                                                   |
| 2. <i>off-peak travel</i>  | b) a station where passengers may change from one railway line, bus service, etc. to another                                             |
| 3. <i>a route</i>          | c) a period at the beginning and end of the working day when large numbers of people are travelling to or from work                      |
| 4. <i>a fine</i>           | d) the money paid for a journey on public transport                                                                                      |
| 5. <i>a coach</i>          | e) easy to use or understand                                                                                                             |
| 6. <i>a conductor</i>      | f) a train or other means of public transport operating at high speed making few intermediate stops and reaching its destination quickly |
| 7. <i>an interchange</i>   | g) a reduction in the price of something for a certain category of people                                                                |
| 8. <i>a passenger</i>      | h) the way from a starting point to a destination                                                                                        |
| 9. <i>an escalator</i>     | i) a sum of money exacted as a penalty by a court of law or other authority                                                              |
| 10. <i>a commuter</i>      | j) an office or kiosk where tickets and tokens are sold                                                                                  |
| 11. <i>a fare</i>          | k) where the bus stops for people to get on or get off                                                                                   |
| 12. <i>express</i>         | l) a complex system of railways, roads, or other routes                                                                                  |
| 13. <i>a ticket office</i> | m) a person who travels by public transport                                                                                              |
| 14. <i>a concession</i>    | n) a moving staircase on which people can go from one level of a building or construction to another                                     |



15. *a bus stop*      o) a person who collects fares and sells tickets on a bus  
 16. *a network*      p) a comfortably equipped single-decker bus used for longer journeys  
 17. *a rush hour*    q) a person who travels some distance to work usually from the suburbs on a regular basis

**11** Put each of the following words in its correct place in the passage below. Sometimes you have to change the form.

traffic	fast	transport	convenient	town
direct	change	rush hour	distance	travel
light	fare	overcrowded	underground	foot



People use various means of **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ to get from one place to another. When getting about a **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ one can go by bus, trolley-bus or by the underground. The **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ in every city is very popular with its citizens. It's the **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ and most **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ way of going about a town. If you have to **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ a short **7.** \_\_\_\_\_, you may take a bus, a tram, a trolley-bus or go on **8.** \_\_\_\_\_.

If there is no **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ bus to your destination, you'll have to **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ on to another bus (trolley-bus, tram). When we travel on buses (trams, etc.), we have to pay a **11.** \_\_\_\_\_. It's not too much and it doesn't depend on the distance you go. If there are many cars, buses and trolley-buses in the town, we say that the **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ is heavy. If there are few vehicles, we say that the traffic is **13.** \_\_\_\_\_. The traffic is especially heavy in the **14.** \_\_\_\_\_, that is in the morning when people are hurrying to work and in the evening when people are coming back home. At this time public transport is **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (packed to the full).

**12** Put each of the following words in the correct space in the passage below.

fare, sliding doors, platform, conductor, crew, cab, bus stop, driver, rush hour, double-decker, tube, destination, inspector, subway, lift, hail, single-decker, taxi rank, metro, coach, meter, escalator, conductress, check, tip, rack

A taxi, sometimes called a **1.** \_\_\_\_\_, is the most comfortable way to travel. You simply **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi in the street or go to a **3.** \_\_\_\_\_, where there are several taxis waiting, for example, at a station. At the end of the journey, you can see how much the **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ is by looking at the **5.** \_\_\_\_\_. You add a **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ to this, and that's it. Very simple. But expensive!



What about taking a bus? If it has two floors, it's called a 7. \_\_\_\_ and you can get a good view from the top. If it has only one floor, it's called a 8. \_\_\_\_\_. Most buses have a two-person 9. \_\_\_\_: a 10. \_\_\_\_\_, who drives, of course, and a 11. \_\_\_\_\_, (or a 12. \_\_\_\_\_ if it's a woman) who takes your money.

Keep your ticket because an 13. \_\_\_\_\_ may want to 14. \_\_\_\_\_ it. You catch a bus by waiting at a 15. \_\_\_\_\_. You can see where a bus is going to because the 16. \_\_\_\_\_ is written on the front. But try to avoid the 17. \_\_\_\_\_.

Quicker than the bus is the underground (called the 18. \_\_\_\_\_ in London, the 19. \_\_\_\_\_ in New York and the 20. \_\_\_\_\_ in Paris and many other cities). You can buy your ticket at the ticket office. Go down to the 21. \_\_\_\_\_ on the 22. \_\_\_\_\_ or in the 23. \_\_\_\_\_. The train comes. The 24. \_\_\_\_\_ open. You get on. You look at the map of the underground system. Very simple.

For longer distances, take a train or a long-distance bus, usually called a 25. \_\_\_\_\_, which is slower but cheaper. The train is very fast. Put your luggage on the 26. \_\_\_\_\_ and sit and wait till you arrive.

**13 Match a word in A with a word in B to make a new noun and fill in the gaps with the correct compound noun. Make changes if necessary.**

**A**

- rush
- town
- railway
- traffic
- book
- bus
- air
- motor
- department
- car
- travel
- ticket

**B**

- park*
- way*
- agent's*
- centre*
- office*
- station*
- port*
- stop*
- store*
- shop*
- lights*
- hour*



1. Stop the car! The \_\_\_\_\_ are red. 2. Heathrow is one of the biggest \_\_\_\_\_ in the world. 3. Harrods is the best \_\_\_\_\_ in London, but it's very expensive to go shopping there. 4. We had been waiting in the rain at the \_\_\_\_\_ for one hour before the bus came. 5. All big towns have a \_\_\_\_\_ every morning when people go to work, and again in the evening when they go home. 6. *Sun & Sea* is the best \_\_\_\_\_ in the town. They have good cheap holidays. 7. I hate driving on the M25. It goes around London and it's one of the busiest \_\_\_\_\_ in the country. 8. The \_\_\_\_\_ was very big and I couldn't find the \_\_\_\_\_. A man told me that it was near Platform 1. 9. No, I didn't borrow this book from the library. I bought it at a \_\_\_\_\_. 10. I can't find the place for parking. Where is the \_\_\_\_\_? 11. The best hotel is across the main square in the \_\_\_\_\_.

14

Use the word in capitals at the end of each line to form a word that fits in the space in the same line.

### The Tube

Londoners 1. \_\_\_\_\_ complain about the public transport in their city. They say it is not very 2. \_\_\_\_\_, but in fact, London has one of the best public transport systems in the world. The London Underground, also known as 'the Tube', is 3. \_\_\_\_\_ the fastest way to get around London. There are twelve lines, each bearing a 4. \_\_\_\_\_ name and a unique colour. The Tube carries more than three million 5. \_\_\_\_\_ each day, and runs from 5:30 am to 1:00 a.m.

FREQUENT

RELY

NORMAL

HISTORY

TRAVEL

It is 6. \_\_\_\_\_ easy to get around London using the Tube. Stations are clearly signposted and maps are 7. \_\_\_\_\_ available at ticket windows. A 8. \_\_\_\_\_ word of advice though; it is best to avoid the rush hour, 9. \_\_\_\_\_ in the middle of summer. There is no air conditioning on the Tube, so travel during peak hours can get very crowded and 10. \_\_\_\_\_.

INCREDIBLE


FREE

USE

PARTICULAR

COMFORTABLE

15

a)  Listen to a recording about safety on the London Underground. In the statements (1-4) underline the bit of information, which is likely to be different in the recording. Listen to check.

1. There are 7 000 officers in the London Underground.
2. When you see unattended luggage, you should press the red button.
3. If you want to find out how to get somewhere, you should press the blue button.
4. The train will stop immediately when you press the passenger alarm.

b) Listen again and make up a list of rules for passengers describing how to use the London Underground safely.

16

Explain the difference between the following words.

1. a fare and a fine
2. a booking office and a box office
3. a single ticket and a return ticket
4. a bus and a coach
5. a designated stop and a request stop
6. a route and a destination
7. a station and a stop
8. a boat and a river bus
9. a car and a taxi
10. a wheel and a steering wheel
11. a suburban train and a commuter train



17

a) Compare the public transport in London and Kyiv according to the following points. Fill in the chart.

	London	Kyiv
1. Means of transport		
2. Fares		
3. Fines		
4. Where to buy a ticket		
5. System of travel cards		
6. Connection of several means		

b) Make a project about London transport according to the points given above. Prepare a presentation with minimum 10 slides to visualize the topic.

18

Read the text and put the words from the box into the gaps.

ticket      catch      constructed      length      trip      to climb  
 enjoy      fun      commercial      connects      rail      route

### *The Kyiv Funicular*



The Kyiv funicular railway was designed 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the steep Dnipro hills on the right bank. It 2. \_\_\_\_\_ the historic upper part of the city to the lower 3. \_\_\_\_\_ neighbourhood of Podil. The Funicular uses the two 4. \_\_\_\_\_ and passing-loop system. It was 5. \_\_\_\_\_ during 1902–1905, and was first opened to the public on 7<sup>th</sup> May in 1905. It is a relaxing, full of 6. \_\_\_\_\_ short journey, the total track 7. \_\_\_\_\_ is 238 metres and each 8. \_\_\_\_\_ lasts about 3 minutes.

The 9. \_\_\_\_\_ is from *Mykhailivska Square* in the upper city to *Poshtova Square* in the lower Podil area. A good way to 10. \_\_\_\_\_ this area is to walk down *Andrew's Descent* (*Andriyivskyy Uzviz*), enjoy all the sights and then 11. \_\_\_\_\_ the Funicular back up the steep hill. On exiting, you will be next to *St. Michael's Golden Domed Cathedral*. The 12. \_\_\_\_\_ costs 8 UAH, the same price as in the metro.

19

Read the text about the Kyiv Metro and answer the questions below.

### *How to Travel by the Kyiv Metro*



The Kyiv Metro is the most popular mode of transportation in the Ukrainian capital. It is cheap and relatively faster than the overground transport. Its main advantage is that you can predict your arrival time, which is close to impossible if you take a taxi or a bus due to Kyiv's busy traffic.

There are three lines in the Kyiv Metro. They meet in the centre and have particular colours on the map: red, blue and green. The fourth line is currently under the construction in order to provide fast connection with some remote but highly populated districts, such as Troyeshchyna, for example.

If you want to travel by metro, **look out for** a metro station first. They are easy to recognize because of the large letter *M*. It is located either on the roofs of the separate buildings that bear the station's name, or on the posts above **the underground walkway**. All **entrances** to the metro are the same: several glass doors in a row, which you have to either **pull** or **push** (they move in both directions).

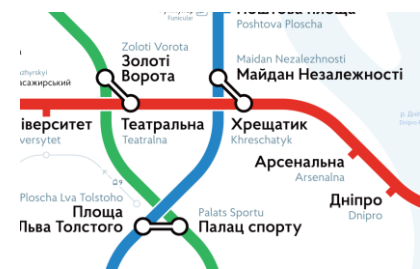
When you are in the station lobby, go to the ticket office to buy a token, which is used instead of tickets and costs 8 UAH. If you don't want to queue, you can obtain a token from an automatic machine at some of the stations. It is also possible to purchase a monthly saver or a contactless card, which you can refill with money.

To enter the metro, you have **to pass through** the **turnstile (ticket barrier)**. Drop the token into the **slot** where the green dot lights. If paying by contactless card, wave your card over the reader and the display will show how many journeys remain on the card. Then turn the stile in front of you, **pass by** and **head to** the **escalators**, which will take you down to the platform.

When you are on your platform, you will see a **digital clock** that shows the time that has passed since the previous train departed. As soon as the train arrives, **get on** the train and have a nice journey! In most of the trains, there are screens that display the name of the station the train approaches. You will also hear the name of each approaching station announced over the loudspeaker system.

There are only three **connecting points** between the lines in the Kyiv Metro. If you need to change lines, just follow the directions and you will get to the right platform with no trouble at all.

In the Kyiv Metro, you do not feel as if you are underground. This is due to the unique architecture and the artistic design of the stations, which are all unlike. For example, *Zoloti Vorota* station is included into the top 20 list of the world's most beautiful metro stations. Its design includes elements of the ancient *Kyivan Rus* architecture and very beautiful mosaics. *Arsenalna* station is 105.5 meters deep, and it is one of the deepest in the world. Surprisingly enough the next after *Arsenalna* is *Dnipro* station and it's situated on the surface of the Dnipro River bank.



- 1. How often do you use the metro? Why do people use the underground?
- 2. Is there a metro system in other cities of Ukraine?



- 3. What are the advantages and disadvantages in using the Kyiv Metro?
- 4. How many lines are there in the Kyiv Metro? Is it difficult to use them?
- 5. What is the fare in the Kyiv Metro? Is there a system of travel cards?
- 6. Do you know any interesting facts about the Kyiv Metro? What are they?
- 7. What stations are to your liking? What stations are the least convenient? Why?

20

Fill in the *prepositions* where it is necessary.



1. If you want to travel \_\_\_\_\_ metro, look \_\_\_\_\_ a metro station. 2. A token will take you \_\_\_\_\_ any station you like. 3. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the automatic gates to the escalators and down \_\_\_\_\_ the platform below, get \_\_\_\_\_ the right train and – have a nice journey! 4. The stations are quite easy to recognize because \_\_\_\_\_ the large letter M. 5. The lines intersect \_\_\_\_\_ *Khreshchatyk* station. 6. There are a few lines \_\_\_\_\_ the Kyiv Metro. 7. Some stations are \_\_\_\_\_ construction. 8. Each line has a particular colour \_\_\_\_\_ the map. 9. There are no tickets \_\_\_\_\_ the metro. 10. *Dnipro* station is situated \_\_\_\_\_ the surface of the Dnipro River bank. 11. If you follow the directions, you will get \_\_\_\_\_ the right platform \_\_\_\_\_ no trouble at all. 12. You can also hear the name of each approaching station announced \_\_\_\_\_ the loudspeaker system. 13. You can obtain a token \_\_\_\_\_ an automatic machine \_\_\_\_\_ some of the stations. 14. You can refill a contactless card \_\_\_\_\_ money. 15. We haven't got any line running non-stop \_\_\_\_\_ their two ends. 16. There are only three connecting points \_\_\_\_\_ the lines in the Kyiv Metro. 17. The fare \_\_\_\_\_ public transport is flat.

21

Translate into English.



1. Найшвидшим і найзручнішим транспортним засобом, звичайно ж, є метро.
2. Якщо хочете подорожувати метро, шукайте станцію метро. Як правило, вона знаходиться у підземному переході або в окремій будівлі та позначена зеленою літерою “М”.
3. Система Київського метро досить проста, лише три лінії. Якщо потрібно зробити пересадку на іншу лінію, у вас не буде жодної проблеми.
4. У метро немає квитків. Замість них необхідно придбати жетон, який коштує 8 гривень. Ви можете придбати його у білетній касі, а якщо не бажаєте стояти у черзі, то можете отримати його в автоматі. За один жетон ви можете дістатися до будь-якої станції, що вам потрібна. Але найкраще придбати місячний проїзний квиток заздалегідь – це значно зекономить час, який ви витратите на поїздку.



5. Тримайте малолітніх дітей за руку або на руках і слідкуйте за тим, щоб вони не притулялись до нерухомих частин ескалатора.

6. У київському метро не відчувається, що ви під землею. Це завдяки унікальному архітектурному і художньому дизайну станцій, які схожі на палаци. У правобережній частині Києва всі станції знаходяться під землею, а от на лівому березі Дніпра є лінія, де метро це наземний вид транспорту. 7. Заздалегідь підіймайте багаж та поли довгого одягу перед виходом з ескалатора та перед входом на нього.



8. Ескалатор – це рухомі сходи, що доставляють пасажирів зі станції вниз на платформу. Їх швидкість становить приблизно 2-3 км/год. Коли ви на ескалаторі, стійте праворуч, обличчям у напрямку руху та тримайтеся за перила. Якщо ви бажаєте йти сходами, необхідно проходити з лівого боку, тримаючись за поручень. Не біжіть вниз по ескалатору. Також не можна сідати на сходи ескалатору та ставити речі на перила.

22

🔊 Listen to the speaker telling about taxis and cars. Fill in the gaps with the information you hear. Answer the questions below.

### *Taxis*

I wonder what 1. \_\_\_\_\_ without taxis. No one 2. \_\_\_\_\_ to think how important taxis are. They are everywhere. Just think how convenient they are. All you do is 3. \_\_\_\_\_ street, raise your hand, and a cab stops. It then takes you anywhere 4. \_\_\_\_\_. Hailing a cab in large cities is as easy as anything. I think everyone has a favourite taxi story. My best experience was with a Cairo taxi driver. I was 5. \_\_\_\_\_. I told him I'd pay double if he could get me to the station in fifteen minutes. It was like a Formula One race. We 6. \_\_\_\_\_ and I gave him a big tip. I'm always amazed by London taxi drivers. They are called cabbies and 7. \_\_\_\_\_ in London and the quickest 8. \_\_\_\_\_.

### *Cars*

Are you into cars? My brother is. 1. \_\_\_\_\_. He buys car magazines, watches car programmes on TV and 2. \_\_\_\_\_ looking at car websites. He knows the name, maker, engine size and 3. \_\_\_\_\_ every car on the planet. Every time we go out, he 4. \_\_\_\_\_ about the cars he sees. I like cars. They are interesting. 5. \_\_\_\_\_ lot of money, I'd like to buy a sports car. I'm saving up for a small car 6. \_\_\_\_\_. I'll probably buy 7. \_\_\_\_\_ that is good for the environment. My brother thinks these are boring. He says 8. \_\_\_\_\_ be powerful and fast. I don't agree. I think cars should get 9. \_\_\_\_\_ and be big enough for me and my friends. I also prefer smaller cars because they are 10. \_\_\_\_\_.

- 1. Do you often take a taxi? Why? Why not?
- 2. Are you crazy about cars? Why? Why not?

**23****🔊 You will hear a bus driver talking about her job.****a) For questions 1-5, complete the sentences.**

1. Liz says that unfortunately some of the \_\_\_\_\_ can be rude.
2. There was one woman who had so much shopping that she couldn't \_\_\_\_\_ the bus.
3. A bus driver isn't allowed to \_\_\_\_\_ unless they're at a bus stop.
4. Liz wants to be able to give \_\_\_\_\_ to her passengers.
5. She thinks the government should make the buses \_\_\_\_\_.

**b) Listen to Liz once again and answer the questions.**

- 1. How long has she been driving a bus?
- 2. How many funny accidents did she tell about?
- 3. What happened to a young boy?
- 4. What is not funny about her job? What problems did she mention?
- 5. Did she suggest any solutions to the problems?

**24****Translate into English.**

1. Якщо ви хочете подорожувати автобусом, знайдіть автобусний маршрут, що проходить поблизу місця вашого призначення. Якщо туди немає прямого автобуса, ви можете їхати спочатку одним автобусом, а потім пересісти на інший.

2. На автобусній зупинці сідайте на автобус і знайдіть зручне місце для сидіння або стояння. Якщо ви не знаєте дороги, запитайте кондуктора або водія.

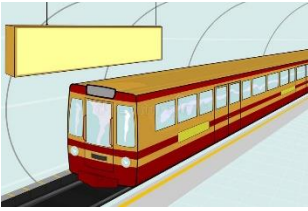


3. У години пік, коли рух транспорту у місті дуже інтенсивний, дуже важко сісти на автобус, тому що вони ходять нечасто і переповнені. Вам дуже поталанило, якщо ви не потрапили до транспортної пробки, вам не відтоптали ноги і вас не штовхають.

4. Якщо в вас немає місячного проїзного квитка на всі види транспорту, не забудьте купити квиток у квитковому кіоску заздалегідь. Якщо в автобусі є кондуктор, ви можете заплатити кондукторові. Я ніколи не їжджу не заплативши за свій проїзд. В автобусі я завжди показую свій квиток контролеру.

5. Я завжди компостую квиток й ніколи не викидаю його до кінця подорожі, інакше мене можуть прийняти за “зайця” і оштрафувати. Це дуже соромно бути покараним перед пасажирами і заплатити штраф.

6. Коли автобус переповнений, вам потрібно потурбуватися про те, щоб не пропустити зупинку і пройти до дверей автобуса заздалегідь.



7. Моя тітка їздить у міському транспорті, стверджуючи, що поїздка автомобілем займає надто багато часу, “застрягнувши” в транспортній “пробці”. Вона користується автобусом, тролейбусом і трамваем, але зазвичай віддає перевагу метро.

8. Автобусом дуже важко подорожувати в наш час. По-перше, автобуси ходять нечасто, по-друге, вони дуже переповнені. Тітка радить купувати білети завчасно та вчасно їх компостувати, щоб вас не обізвали “зайцями” і не покарали. Та надійніше придбати проїзний квиток і подорожувати аж скільки душа забажає.

25

🗣️ **Speak about public transport in Kyiv according to the plan below.**

**Plan**

1. Means of public transport in Kyiv. Fares
2. How often you travel by public transport
3. Public transport that you prefer and reasons for it
4. Reasons you may hate traveling by public transport

26

**Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *past tense*.**



1. Tony \_\_\_\_\_ (*admit*) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*hit*) the other car, but \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) that he \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/damage*) it.
2. Mary \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/wear*) her glasses at that time, so she \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/notice*) what kind of car the man \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*).
3. Nick \_\_\_\_\_ (*lie*) down on the grass for a while, next to some tourists who \_\_\_\_\_ (*feed*) the ducks.
4. While I \_\_\_\_\_ (*try*) to get my car started, a passing car \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) and the driver \_\_\_\_\_ (*offer*) to help me.
5. The police \_\_\_\_\_ (*pay*) no attention to Clare’s complaint because she \_\_\_\_\_ (*phone*) them so many times before.
6. James \_\_\_\_\_ (*refuse*) to say who \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) the car at the time of the accident.
7. I suddenly \_\_\_\_\_ (*remember*) that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the keys to my car at home.
8. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*), he \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) at the same hotel where we first \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*). He \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) me he \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) for me for some time already.
9. John \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/leave*) for work until he \_\_\_\_\_ (*shovel*) the snow from the drive.
10. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) for six hours before they \_\_\_\_\_ (*reach*) their destination.
11. My brother \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to a book exhibition yesterday and \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) an interesting book on antiques.
12. They \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) they \_\_\_\_\_ (*lose*) their way and \_\_\_\_\_ (*start*) to panic.
13. I \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) my train \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) at 11:33, and \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) very disappointed when I \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) at 11:30 and \_\_\_\_\_ (*learn*) that it just \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*). I \_\_\_\_\_ (*find out*) later that I \_\_\_\_\_ (*use*) an out-of-date timetable.
14. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*park*) his car under a *No Parking* sign and \_\_\_\_\_ (*rush*) into the shop. When he \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) out of the shop ten minutes later,

the car \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) no longer there. He \_\_\_\_\_ (*wonder*) if someone \_\_\_\_\_ (*steal*) it or if the police \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) it away. **15.** I \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) out of the window before I \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to bed and \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) a man who \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) on the opposite pavement and \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) the house. When I \_\_\_\_\_ (*get up*) the following morning, he \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) still there, and I \_\_\_\_\_ (*wonder*) whether he \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) there all night or if he \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) away and \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) back. **16.** Last Monday we \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) to France.

27

Complete the sentences with appropriate *propositions* where necessary.



**1.** The easiest way to get around London is \_\_\_\_\_ underground. **2.** I decided not to go \_\_\_\_\_ car. I went \_\_\_\_\_ my bike instead. **3.** Queue \_\_\_\_\_ a bus stop. Do not try to push in front \_\_\_\_\_ everyone else, get \_\_\_\_\_ the bus through the entrance door. **4.** Quick! Get \_\_\_\_\_ the train. It's ready to leave. **5.** Sorry, I'm late. I missed the bus, so I had to go \_\_\_\_\_ foot.

**6.** He got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and drove off. **7.** I was travelling \_\_\_\_\_ train \_\_\_\_\_ Bristol. When the train arrived \_\_\_\_\_ Bristol, I got \_\_\_\_\_ the train. **8.** She was standing \_\_\_\_\_ the queue \_\_\_\_\_ the bus stop, with her back \_\_\_\_\_ me. **9.** I saw Jake this morning. He was \_\_\_\_\_ a bus that passed me. **10.** My mother usually goes \_\_\_\_\_ work \_\_\_\_\_ her car. **11.** There was a terrible accident \_\_\_\_\_ the crossroads. Ten people were taken \_\_\_\_\_ hospital. **12.** We got stuck \_\_\_\_\_ a traffic jam \_\_\_\_\_ our way \_\_\_\_\_ the airport. **13.** Shall we take a taxi \_\_\_\_\_ the station or go \_\_\_\_\_ foot? **14.** We travelled \_\_\_\_\_ the 6:45 train. **15.** Did you come \_\_\_\_\_ the United states \_\_\_\_\_ air or \_\_\_\_\_ sea? **16.** They didn't come \_\_\_\_\_ their car. They came \_\_\_\_\_ a taxi. **17.** I arrived \_\_\_\_\_ home feeling very tired. **18.** What time do you usually arrive \_\_\_\_\_ work in the morning and get \_\_\_\_\_ home in the evening? **19.** When I was going \_\_\_\_\_ foot \_\_\_\_\_ the street, a friend of mine passed me \_\_\_\_\_ her car. She stopped and offered me a lift \_\_\_\_\_ home. **20.** Mary got \_\_\_\_\_ the car and went \_\_\_\_\_ a shop. **21.** He usually gets \_\_\_\_\_ work \_\_\_\_\_ bus.

28

Provide equivalents or definitions to the following notions.

- |                       |                       |                   |
|-----------------------|-----------------------|-------------------|
| 1. metro              | 6. traffic lights     | 11. an ambulance  |
| 2. means of transport | 7. a ticket booth     | 12. a crossroad   |
| 3. a token            | 8. a ticket inspector | 13. a taxi-rank   |
| 4. a fraudster        | 9. a driver           | 14. a fare        |
| 5. a bus station      | 10. a rush hour       | 15. a traffic jam |



29

a) Put the *adjectives* in their *comparative* and *superlative* forms.



If you want to own 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fast*), 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*powerful*) car on the road, you can't go wrong with a Tornado. You will not only have 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*comfortable*) ride you've ever experienced, you will also be 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*safe*) than in any other car on the market. No other manufacturer is 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*careful*) than we are to ensure that its safety features are of 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*high*) possible standard. So if you want to be 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*proud*) car owner in your neighbourhood, come and test-drive the Tornado today!

b) Fill in the relevant *adverbs* made from the *adjectives* in the brackets in their *comparative* and *superlative* forms.



Bicycles look set to become 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*common*) used mode of transport in Britain. Bicycles are not only better for the environment than cars, but they also allow you to travel 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*convenient*). You can get from point A to point B 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*quick*) than by car and you can find somewhere to leave your bike much 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*easy*). Many younger people now ride a bike to work because they find that it suits their lifestyles 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*good*) and enables them to get around 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*practical*). In addition, they often arrive 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*early*) than their colleagues who drive to work and who have to wait 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*long*) in traffic jams than they do.

30

Fill in with the correct *present* or *future* forms.

### *How to Fix a Puncture on a Bike*

Every cyclist 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) a flat tyre once in a while. Do you know how to fix one? Read our handy step-by-step guide.

✓ As soon as you 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*notice*) you have a puncture, fix it at once or you 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*damage*) the tyre.



✓ Turn your bicycle upside down and remove the tyre. When the tyre 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) off, pump up the inner tube.

✓ Next, put the tube in some water and turn it until you 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) bubbles. This is where the hole is.

✓ Before you 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*apply*) a patch, clean and dry the area around the hole. After this you 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*put*) glue around the hole and wait until it 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*dry*) a little.

✓ Stick a patch over the hole and don't forget to put some chalk over it. Unless you 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) this, the inner tube 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stick*) to the inside of the tyre!

✓ Replace the tube, pump up the tyre and you're all set!

31

**Read and role-play what two people are saying about how they travel in a large city. Before it, study the table and predict what they will say. As you read, complete the table with the information from the conversation. Then discuss the questions after the conversation.**

	Public Transport	Car
Cost		
Problems		
Convenience		

**Lynn:** Well, I reckon it's a bit silly to have a car, if you live in the middle of London like I do. Personally, I go everywhere by public transport, buses, tubes, and I don't have any complaints – well, not too many.

*Interviewer. It's quite expensive nowadays, isn't it?*

**Lynn:** Like everything else, I'm afraid. I would say it will cost me about 15 or 16 pounds a week. I have a travelcard, which I can use on the tube or on the buses, and I sometimes take a bus. It depends on how organized I am that week. It's very easy to use public transport, it's much cheaper than a car, and you can get anywhere quickly, especially on the underground, while in a car you get stuck in a traffic jam.

*Interviewer. So, you wouldn't consider running even a small car?*

**Lynn:** It doesn't make any sense for me. The big problem is parking, there's simply nowhere to put it if you drive into the centre, unless you feel like playing a fortune in a car park. And even then, you sometimes just can't find a space. And the other big problem is crime – if you leave your car in the street, chances are that either the car, or parts of it will be missing when you come back ...

*Interviewer. Peter, you run a car, don't you? Is it really worth it?*

**Peter:** Well I must admit, I've often asked myself that question, especially when I'm stuck in the middle of a traffic jam. I suppose that the main reason I still do is that I can't stand waiting for buses and trains – I just get in the car, and off I go. It's easier to plan your journey. And you can go any time – most public transport is fairly awful after say 12:30 at night, so if you like going out late, you know, there's a problem. And the buses are so crowded all the time, and the tubes, so you end up feeling like a sardine in a tin ...

*Interviewer. Isn't it a bit expensive though?*

**Peter:** Yes, it is. I've worked out that it costs me between 40 and 50 pounds a week, so I suppose I could save a lot of money if I went by bus. It's just that I can't stand all that waiting, pushing and shoving, you know? Anyway, I enjoy driving ...





- 1. Do you agree with what they say?
- 2. Why do some people prefer public transport to private cars and vice versa?
- 3. “Excessive use of private cars is considered to be the main reason for the traffic jam in many cities and that’s why the use of public transportation is encouraged”. In your opinion what are the pros and cons of using public transport?
- 4. Is the system of public transport convenient in your city?
- 5. As for you, what do you prefer: public transport or cars? Why?

**32** 🗣️ Describe a trip that you took by public transport.  
**You should:**

- say when and where you went
- say what mode or modes of transport you used
- explain why you chose to use public transport
- say how your trip was



**33** Walking or cycling to work instead of driving a car can improve people’s feelings of health and happiness. That’s what a study at the University of East Anglia in the UK suggests.

a) 🗣️ Listen to the report and fill in the blank spaces.

For many people 1. \_\_\_\_\_ is a **necessary evil**. Most see 2. \_\_\_\_\_ or van as the “least worst” option. This study by the researchers at the University of East Anglia challenges that **assumption**.

It suggests 3. \_\_\_\_\_, 4. \_\_\_\_\_ or 5. \_\_\_\_\_ can **lift the mood**. Crucially, it suggests those who switch from the car to an 6. \_\_\_\_\_ feel better across a range of psychological measures, including 7. \_\_\_\_\_, decision making and the 8. \_\_\_\_\_ **to face up to** problems.

The researchers say policies encouraging people 9. \_\_\_\_\_ at home could have a **dramatic 10. \_\_\_\_\_ public well-being**.

b) Match the words and phrases in bold to their definitions.

1. sudden and easy to notice
2. something you don’t like or enjoy but have to accept
3. to accept or deal with
4. the state of feeling healthy, happy and having enough money
5. something considered to be true, though there is no proof
6. make happier



c) 🗣️ With your partner discuss the following questions:



- 1. Some people think that using bicycles is a solution to the problem of city transport. What do you think?
- 2. What other advantages and disadvantages of bicycles and bikes over cars and public transport can you state?
- 3. Which way of getting to work is better and more appropriate for you?

34

🗣️ **Speak about different ways of getting around the city.**

**You should:**

1. mention travelling by public transport, cars, bicycles and on foot
2. state the advantages and disadvantages of every way considering:
  - *cost*
  - *time or duration of a trip*
  - *convenience*
  - *problems*



35

**Complete the sentences with *in, at or on* and the appropriate word or phrase from the list below.**

sea	hospital	a taxi	the station	the cinema
prison	school	the plane	the airport	the sport centre

1. My train arrives at 12:30. Can you meet me \_\_\_\_\_? 2. We walked to the restaurant, but we went home \_\_\_\_\_. 3. I'd like to see a film. What's on \_\_\_\_\_ this week? 4. Some people are \_\_\_\_\_ for crimes that they didn't commit. 5. I play basketball \_\_\_\_\_ on Friday evenings. 6. My brother was injured in an accident last week. He's still \_\_\_\_\_. 7. Our flight was delayed. We had to wait \_\_\_\_\_ for three hours. 8. I enjoyed the flight, but the food \_\_\_\_\_ wasn't very nice. 9. Bill works on ships. He is \_\_\_\_\_ most of the time. 10. My sister doesn't work, she is still \_\_\_\_\_.

36

**Complete the sentences with *in, at or on*.**



1. When in Britain, we drive \_\_\_\_\_ the left. 2. Write your name \_\_\_\_\_ the top of the page. 3. I don't recognize my home town \_\_\_\_\_ this picture. 4. What is the tallest building \_\_\_\_\_ the world? 5. We went to the theatre last night. We had seats \_\_\_\_\_ the front row. 6. There were too many people \_\_\_\_\_ the queue in front of the cinema. 7. Have you ever worked \_\_\_\_\_ a farm? 8. My office is \_\_\_\_\_ the top floor. It's \_\_\_\_\_ the left as you come out of the lift. 9. I don't like cities. I'd much prefer to live \_\_\_\_\_ the country. 10. It's a very small village. You probably won't find it \_\_\_\_\_ your map. 11. When I'm a passenger \_\_\_\_\_ a car, I prefer to sit \_\_\_\_\_ the front. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ the end of the street, there is a path

leading to the river. **13.** There was a list of streets, but my street wasn't \_\_\_\_\_ the list. **14.** I don't have your address. Could you write it \_\_\_\_\_ the back of this card? **15.** The Louvre is a famous art museum \_\_\_\_\_ Paris. **16.** Does this train stop \_\_\_\_\_ Nottingham? **17.** All the rooms \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel have air conditioning. **18.** Don't meet me \_\_\_\_\_ the station. I can get a taxi. **19.** His voyage was pretty long. He spent two months \_\_\_\_\_ the sea. **20.** We had dinner \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. **21.** San Francisco is \_\_\_\_\_ the west coast of the United States. **22.** I usually buy a newspaper \_\_\_\_\_ the way to work in the morning. **23.** My uncle owns a shop \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of High street and Redland Road. **24.** She has just moved from her flat \_\_\_\_\_ 12 Green Street. **25.** We have booked two seats \_\_\_\_\_ flight 604.

37

a) Complete the text with an appropriate *past* form.

In 1894 a steamship **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*sail*) across the Atlantic Ocean from England to America. The sun **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*shine*) and a gentle breeze **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*). The ship **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*sail*) for three weeks and was halfway to its destination – New York. The passengers **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*relax*) on deck when suddenly they **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) a loud bang. They all **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*jump*) up, **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) to the edge of the boat and **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) over the side. To their horror they **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) that they **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hit*) some hard object, which **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*tear*) a hole in the side of the ship. Water **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*pour*) into the steamship at an alarming speed. Fortunately another ship **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) half an hour later and **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*save*) everyone on board.

b) Which of the past forms in the text above are used to express:

1. past duration continuing up to a specific past time 4
2. background description to events or longer actions in the story
3. shorter actions which interrupt longer actions
4. longer actions which are interrupted by shorter actions
5. past action which occurred before another past action
6. past actions which happened one immediately after the other



38

Fill in *the* articles where necessary.



**1.** It only took us \_\_\_\_\_ week to drive to \_\_\_\_\_ capital of our country. **2.** I've always wanted to own \_\_\_\_\_ silver-coloured car. **3.** Before you go on \_\_\_\_\_ long journey in your car, make sure \_\_\_\_\_ tyres have enough \_\_\_\_\_ air in them. **4.** Because of \_\_\_\_\_ automobile, man has extended his horizons, but he has poisoned \_\_\_\_\_ atmosphere. **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ automobile is a necessity today. **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ mountain is bigger and higher than \_\_\_\_\_ hill. **7.** Dan

was playing outside in \_\_\_\_\_ street when he saw \_\_\_\_\_ red car go past. \_\_\_\_\_ car was driven by \_\_\_\_\_ teacher from his school. **8.** – You know, \_\_\_\_\_ car was stolen from outside \_\_\_\_\_ house yesterday! – Oh, no. I left my wallet and \_\_\_\_\_ camera in it. **9.** Now, when I start pushing \_\_\_\_\_ car, take your foot off \_\_\_\_\_ clutch. If it doesn't start then, I'll have to phone \_\_\_\_\_ garage. **10.** Yesterday night I saw \_\_\_\_\_ man running down the street. **11.** I'd like to buy \_\_\_\_\_ car that has an air bag. **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ town where I grew up is now a big city. **13.** I'm so absent-minded! I've just locked \_\_\_\_\_ keys to my car inside \_\_\_\_\_ car. **14.** There's \_\_\_\_\_ law against drinking and driving. **15.** He never told anyone about \_\_\_\_\_ loneliness he had experienced in the big city. **16.** In the big city, he experienced \_\_\_\_\_ loneliness, which he had never known before. **17.** I saw \_\_\_\_\_ accident this morning. \_\_\_\_\_ car crashed into \_\_\_\_\_ tree. \_\_\_\_\_ driver of \_\_\_\_\_ car wasn't injured, but \_\_\_\_\_ car was badly damaged. **18.** There are two cars parked outside: \_\_\_\_\_ blue one and \_\_\_\_\_ grey one. \_\_\_\_\_ blue one belongs to my neighbours and I don't know who \_\_\_\_\_ owner of \_\_\_\_\_ grey one is. **19.** My friends live in \_\_\_\_\_ old house in \_\_\_\_\_ small village. There is \_\_\_\_\_ beautiful garden behind \_\_\_\_\_ house. I would like to have \_\_\_\_\_ garden like that. **20.** – There isn't \_\_\_\_\_ airport near where I live. \_\_\_\_\_ nearest airport is 70 miles away. – Can you tell me how to get to \_\_\_\_\_ airport?



**21.** I'm just going to \_\_\_\_\_ post office. I won't be long. **22.** Do you have \_\_\_\_\_ radio in the car? **23.** I live in \_\_\_\_\_ small flat in \_\_\_\_\_ city centre. There's \_\_\_\_\_ shop at \_\_\_\_\_ end of \_\_\_\_\_ street I live in. **24.** Our train leaves from \_\_\_\_\_ Platform 3. **25.** \_\_\_\_\_ bicycle is \_\_\_\_\_ means of transport. **26.** There's \_\_\_\_\_ room for 5 people in my car. **27.** \_\_\_\_\_ ambulances arrived at \_\_\_\_\_ scene of \_\_\_\_\_ accident and took \_\_\_\_\_ injured to hospital.

**39** Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *past* tense. Mind the word order in interrogative sentences.

A.

– Where you **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) your car? – Well, as you know, I **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) for a car for two months. Then, one day, as I **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) to my cousin, he **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*mention*) that one of his friends **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to sell his car because he **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) the money. He **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) the car for three years and it **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) in excellent condition. The best thing about it was that it only **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*cost*) me £2000.

B.



Last weekend, Cathy **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hire*) a car and **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) to the seaside. When she **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*), the wind **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*) and the sky **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) cloudy. She **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get out*) of the car and **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) a walk along the seafront. Then she **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to go for fish and chips at a nearby restaurant that

she 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) earlier and liked the look of. By the time she 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) the restaurant, it 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*already/grow*) dark. As she 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) to her car, it 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to rain. However, Cathy 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/mind*) because she 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a wonderful day.

C.



When Simon 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*) at the cinema, dozens of people 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*queue*) outside. They 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) to see the same film as Simon. Simon, however, 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) a ticket in advance, so he 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) straight to the front of the queue and 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*enter*) the cinema. He 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) relieved that he didn't have to queue. He 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*reach*) his seat just as the lights 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go down*) for the start of the film.

D.

– How long you 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in Sydney before you 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*move*) back to London? – We 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*live*) in Sydney for ten years when the company that Richard 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*work*) for 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*offer*) him a position at the London office. – You 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*want*) to come back to London? – Yes. We 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) both excited about coming home so Richard 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*accept*) the job immediately.

E.

I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) tired when I 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) the train to work yesterday because Sarah and I 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) to a party the evening before. We 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/go*) to bed until 2 a.m. I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) on the train long when I 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*have*) a terrible shock. I suddenly 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) that I 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) my wallet at home. Then I 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) to wonder. I 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) it in the office the day before? I couldn't remember. I 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*feel*) awful.

40

Fill in the correct verb forms.

I love travelling in the country, but I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/like*) losing my way. I 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) on a trip the other day, but my trip took me longer than I 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*expect*). “I'm going to Woodford Green”, I 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) to the conductor as I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) on the bus, “but I 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) where it is.” – “I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*tell*) you where to get off,” 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*answer*) the conductor. I 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*sit*) in front of the bus to get a good view of the countryside. After some time, the bus 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*). I 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) with a shock that I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) the only passenger left on the bus. “You must 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) off here”, the conductor said, “This is as far as we go.” We 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) back now,” 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*say*) the conductor.



## SECTION III: TRAFFIC RULES

### GRAMMAR:

- Modal Verbs (Revision)
- Tense Forms (Revision)

### Vocabulary

Streets and Roads	Вулиці та Дороги
an alley	алея, вузький провулок / проїзд
• <i>a blind alley</i>	• <i>тупик, глухий кут</i>
an avenue	проспект, широка вулиця
a block	квартал
a bypass	обхідний шлях, роз'їзд
a bystreet	провулок
a carriageway / a traffic way	проїзна частина (дороги)
a crossing / a crosswalk	1) перехрестя; перехід (через вулицю) 2) регульований перехід
• <i>a zebra crossing</i>	• <i>нерегульований наземний перехід типу "зебра"</i>
(a) crossroad(s)	перехрестя; роздоріжжя
an embankment	набережна (ріки)
a hard shoulder	узбіччя
hatchings	подвійна безперервна смуга, що розділяє рух в протилежних напрямках
a highway / a motorway	шосе, автомагістраль, автострада
a lane	1) провулок, вузька дорога; 2) дорога з одностороннім рухом; 3) польова або сільська дорога; 4) ряд / смуга (руху транспорту).
• <i>a left-hand / right-hand lane</i>	• <i>ліва / права смуга руху транспорту</i>
• <i>a lane line</i>	• <i>розділова лінія (дороги); дорога з одностороннім рухом</i>
a road	дорога, шлях
• <i>a ring road / a roundabout</i>	• <i>кільцева дорога</i>
• <i>a side road</i>	• <i>узбіччя, обочина</i>
• <i>a one-way road</i>	• <i>дорога з одностороннім рухом</i>
• <i>a two-way road</i>	• <i>дорога з двостороннім рухом</i>
• <i>the main road</i>	• <i>головна дорога</i>
a side	1) бік, сторона; 2) схил
• <i>side by side</i>	• <i>поруч</i>



a side-track	запасна колія
a square	площа, майдан
a street	вулиця
a thoroughfare	головна артерія (міста), поживлена вулиця
a way	дорога, шлях
• <i>on the way to ...</i>	• <i>по дорозі до ...</i>
• <i>on the way back</i>	• <i>на зворотному шляху</i>
a kerb / a grass verge	обочина (тротуару)
a path / a walk	стежка
a pavement / a sidewalk	тротуар
a cycling lane / a bike route	велосипедна доріжка
a pothole / a dent	вибоїна на дорозі
asphalted	асфальтований
cobbled	брукований, мощений
crooked	кривий, викривлений
overcrowded	переповнений людьми
<b>Traffic Rules</b>	<b>Правила Дорожнього Руху</b>
traffic regulations / rules / code	правила дорожнього руху
• <i>to follow / obey / observe traffic rules</i>	• <i>слідувати правилам руху</i>
• <i>to adhere to traffic rules</i>	• <i>дотримуватися правил руху</i>
• <i>to break / violate traffic rules</i>	• <i>порушувати правила руху</i>
• <i>a traffic rules offence</i>	• <i>порушення правил руху</i>
an accident	нещасний випадок; аварія
a breathalyzer	прилад для вимірювання вмісту алкоголю у крові водія
brakes	гальма
car maintenance / vehicle ~	технічне обслуговування автомобілів
a collision	аварія, зіткнення
• <i>a head-on collision</i>	• <i>лобове зіткнення</i>
a driver's license / a driving ~	посвідчення водія
DUI (Driving Under Influence)	керування автотранспортом у нетверезому стані
a horn	клаксон (автомобіля)
a lay-by ( <i>pl. lay-bys</i> )	1) придорожня зупинка (для тривалої стоянки автотранспорту); 2) місце нетривалої стоянки автомобілів на узбіччі дороги
a manoeuvre	маневр

a pedestrian	пішохід
petrol / gas	бензин
• <i>a petrol (gas) filling station, a filling station</i>	• бензоколонка; заправна станція
a queue	хвіст; низка машин
a regulation baton / a traffic baton	жезл, кийок (поліцейського)
the right of way	право проїзду першим
a road rage	агресія на дорозі
a road sign	дорожній знак
a service station	станція обслуговування (автомобілів)
speed	швидкість
• <i>a speed limit</i>	• обмеження швидкості
steering	управління кермом
a subway / a pedestrian underpass / an underground passage	підземний перехід
a tank	бак (для пального)
• <i>to fill up the tank</i>	• наповнювати бак
traffic	рух; транспорт
• <i>heavy ~ / busy ~</i>	• інтенсивний рух
• <i>light ~</i>	• неінтенсивний рух
• <i>smooth ~</i>	• гладкий, рівний рух, спокійний
• <i>restricted ~</i>	• обмежений рух
• <i>to block the ~</i>	• затримувати рух транспорту
a traffic inspection officer	автоінспектор
a traffic jam	пробка, затримка вуличного руху
• <i>to get stuck in a traffic jam / to be caught into a traffic jam</i>	• застрягати, зав'язнути у пробці
traffic lights	світлофор
• <i>to cross the street at traffic lights</i>	• переходити вулицю по світлофору
to accelerate / to speed up	збільшувати швидкість; прискорюватися; розганятися
to be alert	бути пильним, обережним
to be at the wheel	бути за кермом, вести автомобіль
• <i>to get behind the wheel</i>	• сісти за кермо
to be forbidden	бути забороненим, заборонятися
to be <b>on</b> (red / green light)	горіти (червоне / зелене світло)
to be regulated by	регулюватися
to bump sb. 's bumper	вдарити, вдавнити чийсь бампер
to carpool	підвозити (і тому мати право їхати в третій смузі)

to comply with the order	виконувати наказ
to drink drive	кермувати авто в нетверезому стані
to drive / to conduct a car	вести авто, кермувати
to fasten seat belts	пристебнути паски безпеки
to jump / to go through / to shoot a red light	проїхати / проскочити на червоне світло
to keep to the right / left	триматися правого / лівого боку
to keep to the route	слідувати за маршрутом
to look to the right / left	подивитися вправо / вліво
to make a right / left turn	повернути вправо / вліво
to obstruct	створювати перешкоди, перешкоджати
to overtake	обганяти
to pull out	від'їжджати
to run <i>sb.</i> down	задавити <i>когось</i> машиною
to signal	сигналізувати
to slow down / to lower speed	знижувати швидкість
to top up the battery	зарядити акумулятор
to travel	подорожувати, їздити
•to travel round the town	•їздити по місту
to turn off	звертати на інший шлях
oncoming	той, який наближається; зустрічний

**1** Read the text about traffic regulations in Ukraine and then briefly retell the text.

### *Traffic Rules in Ukraine*

**Traffic regulations** are international nowadays, but we should also take into consideration some special regulations valid in one country only.



✓ Traffic in Ukraine is on the **right-hand side** of streets and roads with the **traffic way** wide enough for several cars moving abreast in one direction. It is forbidden to drive in the left-hand lane if the right-hand lane is free.

✓ The driver should be responsible for the condition of his car, and in particular the reliability of his **brakes**, the **steering**, the **tyres** and the **lights** and **indicators** on his car.

✓ The driver must **conduct the car** he is driving in such a manner as not to cause a danger to or **obstruct** the movements of other vehicles. He should be **alert** and **keep to the route** he is driving on.

✓ While driving in traffic, the driver must **observe** and strictly **adhere to** road signs, signals and **traffic lights**, and also **comply with** the orders of **traffic inspection officer** (either in uniform or with an arm-band on his left arm and a **regulation baton** in his hand).

✓ Before making a left or right turn, a complete turn, **accelerating**, stopping, or making any other manoeuvres, which may alter his position in the lane, the driver must **give warning** by signaling not less than five seconds before he starts the particular manoeuvre.

✓ Drivers may use **horn signaling** only outside city limits. Only in case of emergency or in a thick fog, there may be an exception to this rule.

✓ Drivers must pay careful attention to warning signals of special service cars (**fire engines, ambulances**, etc.), which have **the right of way**.

✓ The **speed** is regulated by the driver according to the condition of the road on which he is driving, visibility and also the intensity of traffic and the number of **pedestrians**. Upon the slightest warning of danger, he must lower his speed or stop the car. The speed limit in cities, towns and villages is 50 km an hour. On some roads, the speed limit is increased up to 80 km as shown by the corresponding sign.



✓ It is forbidden to pass the car in front by driving in the lanes of the **oncoming traffic**, at road or street crossings and pedestrian crossings, on bridges and also before warning signs.

✓ It is forbidden to stop on the left-hand side of the street or road, except in narrow streets where vehicular traffic from both directions passes along a single lane.

There are some other traffic regulations and rules, but if you observe them carefully, you are safe on the road.

## 2 Give Ukrainian equivalents to the word-combinations below. Transcribe them.



Left-hand side, traffic way, left-hand lane, road signs, traffic lights, regulation baton, left (right) turn, city limits, to obstruct the movement, special service cars, fire engine, speed limit, road (street) crossing, right-hand side, pedestrian crossing, horn signaling, to move abreast, to adhere to road signs, to have the right of way.

## 3 Answer and discuss the following questions.

- 1. Are traffic regulations international nowadays? Why?
- 2. Is traffic in Ukraine on the left-hand side? What countries are different on this issue?
- 3. Should the drivers be responsible for the condition of their cars?
- 4. How should the drivers conduct the car?
- 5. When must the driver give warning by signaling?
- 6. What must the drivers observe while driving in traffic?



- 7. Where may horn signaling be used?
- 8. What is the speed limit in cities?
- 9. When is it forbidden to pass the car?
- 10. Must the driver observe the traffic regulations carefully?
- 11. Why are traffic rules necessary?

**4** Roads are dangerous places for people on foot. Read the text to find out how to stay safe when crossing roads in the UK.

a) Before you read, match the words and phrases to their definitions.

- |                          |                                                          |
|--------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>pedestrians</i>    | a) shining brightly and suddenly                         |
| 2. <i>motorways</i>      | b) wide roads for fast-moving long-distant traffic       |
| 3. <i>crossings</i>      | c) painted symbols                                       |
| 4. <i>flashing</i>       | d) places where traffic must stop to let people walk     |
| 5. <i>markings</i>       | e) ordering                                              |
| 6. <i>beacons</i>        | f) people who walk, especially where vehicles usually go |
| 7. <i>to give way to</i> | g) coming near                                           |
| 8. <i>to cross</i>       | h) stop to allow something/someone else to pass          |
| 9. <i>approaching</i>    | i) posts with a flashing light on top                    |
| 10. <i>instructing</i>   | j) go from one side to the other                         |

### *Pedestrian Safety*



In any country, the roads can be **dangerous** for **pedestrians**. Even for those not driving it is important to be aware that traffic may be approaching from **unexpected directions**.

Although, apart from motorways, it's not illegal to cross the road at any point. It is advisable to use crossings, which are mostly controlled by **traffic lights**, whenever you can. You may cross the road when the green man is showing but, if the light is **flashing**, don't start **to cross**.

There are crossing points known as zebra crossings, which have black and white road markings, and orange **flashing beacons** at each side of the road. Drivers should **give way to** pedestrians on the crossing, but you should be careful, as there are no red traffic lights instructing drivers to stop.

There are traffic lights at each crossroad. The traffic lights may have three colours: red, yellow and green. There are traffic lights for the transport and for pedestrians. The latter have two colours: red and green. When you come up to the crossroad and there is a red light on, don't cross the road – stop and wait. Some traffic lights show words, too. When the red light is on, you can also see the word “wait” or “stop” or “don't walk”. But when the green light is on, you can see the word “cross” or “go” or “walk”. So now you can cross the street.

Don't forget that pedestrians are not allowed to walk along or cross any motorway at any time. If you walk, walk along **sidewalks**.

**b) Enumerate the order the following topics are mentioned in the text.**

- a. The significance of flashing lights
- b. Where pedestrians are never allowed to walk
- c. A special type of crossing
- d. Where traffic is coming from
- e. The best places to cross a road

**c) Spot the spelling mistakes in these sentences.**

1. In an unfamiliar country, you should pay attention to the direction of trafic.
2. Use a pedestrian crossin wherever you can.
3. Zebra crossings have black an white lines on the road.
4. Drivers have to stop if there is someone using the crossing.
5. Pedestrians are never aloud to walk on motorways.

**d) Answer the questions.**

- 1. Are there any laws about crossing the road in your country?
- 2. Do you think pedestrians are poorly treated compared to drivers?

5

**Give the English equivalents to the following phrases.**



почуватися у безпеці на дорозі, небезпечний для пішоходів, пропускати пішоходів на переході, переходити дорогу на зелене світло, не перебігати дорогу на блимаюче жовте або червоне світло, створювати небезпеку на дорозі, сідати за кермо, бути відповідальним за технічний стан автомобіля, не створювати перешкоди для інших транспортних засобів, бути пильним на дорозі, бути керованим світлофором, нерегульований світлофор, ходити по тротуару, не вибігати на проїзну частину, зустрічний рух транспорту, автострада з інтенсивним рухом, обмеження швидкості, вулиця зі спокійним потоком машин.

6

**Listen to the speaker telling about driving and road rage. Fill in the gaps. Answer the questions below.**

### *Driving*

Driving is 1. \_\_\_\_\_ greatest pleasures. There's nothing better than getting behind the wheel 2. \_\_\_\_\_ drive. I live in the countryside, so it's easy 3. \_\_\_\_\_ onto an open road. I open the windows and turn the music up 4. \_\_\_\_\_ drive and drive. I like driving to new areas and finding new roads. I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ relaxing and great fun. I like the speed and the freedom. I even like driving in towns and cities, 6. \_\_\_\_\_ traffic is really heavy. It's not much fun being 7. \_\_\_\_\_ traffic jam half the day. Driving in different countries is great fun too. I'm a little 8. \_\_\_\_\_, but I soon 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the roads. People have different ways of driving in different countries. I don't like countries that have 10. \_\_\_\_\_.





## Road Rage

I don't understand road rage. It is a problem that is **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ the world. People are turning into monsters when **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ wheel of a car. They think the **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ them. They think they don't have to follow speed **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ other drivers. I wonder why this is. What is it about cars and driving that turns normal **5.** \_\_\_\_\_? Some people simply hoot and **6.** \_\_\_\_\_. The funny thing is that they also do the same things to make **7.** \_\_\_\_\_. Serious road rage happens when someone **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ car and gets angry. They can punch the other driver and sometimes even kill them. Why would **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ someone because they overtook you? Crazy.



- **1.** Do you drive a car? If you do, do you enjoy it? Why?
- **2.** If you still don't drive, would you like to learn? Why or why not?
- **3.** How often do you get angry with pedestrians or other drivers when you drive? When does it happen? How do you cope with it?

7

Complete the sentences with *must / mustn't* or *should / shouldn't*.

### Traffic Rules are "MUST"



- 1.** Traffic rules are for our own safety. Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ obey them.
- 2.** Parents \_\_\_\_\_ teach their children how to cross the street.
- 3.** You \_\_\_\_\_ pass when the light is green. If you are not sure that there is enough time to get all the way across the road, you \_\_\_\_\_ wait for the next walk signal.
- 4.** You \_\_\_\_\_ wait when the traffic light is yellow.
- 5.** You \_\_\_\_\_ pass when the traffic light is red.
- 6.** Pedestrians \_\_\_\_\_ use zebra crossings if they want to cross the street.
- 7.** Pedestrians \_\_\_\_\_ check the left side when they cross the street.
- 8.** Bikers \_\_\_\_\_ ride their bikes in bike routes.
- 9.** You \_\_\_\_\_ ride your bike without a helmet.
- 10.** Children \_\_\_\_\_ play football in the streets. They \_\_\_\_\_ go to the sportsground or football pitch.
- 11.** Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ exceed the speed limit.
- 12.** Everybody \_\_\_\_\_ fasten seatbelts. So you \_\_\_\_\_ always ask passengers in your car to wear their seatbelts.
- 13.** Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ park on crossings and they \_\_\_\_\_ give way to pedestrians.
- 14.** We \_\_\_\_\_ be polite in traffic.
- 15.** You \_\_\_\_\_ drive after drinking alcohol, as penalties can be serious. Most people will advise you \_\_\_\_\_ drink alcohol at all before driving.
- 16.** If your car breaks down, you \_\_\_\_\_ stay in the hard shoulder and wait for assistance.
- 17.** Drivers \_\_\_\_\_ talk on the phone in the traffic.



8

Fill in the blanks below with the given words.

passenger road rage seatbelt carpool lanes  
 speed limit residential fine parking lot traffic jam  
 pedestrian intersection crosswalk "drink drive"



1. Slow down! The \_\_\_\_\_ on this road is only 40 miles per hour! 2. Pedestrians should always use the \_\_\_\_\_ when crossing the street. 3. I had to park on the street because the restaurant's \_\_\_\_\_ was full. 4. As there are often children playing in \_\_\_\_\_ areas, the speed limit is usually very slow. 5. Every morning there is a \_\_\_\_\_ on the way to work, so I often have to wait in my car for a long time, and sometimes I'm even late for work. 6. I don't want you to ride in my car because the seatbelt on the \_\_\_\_\_ side is broken. 7. If you ride in my car, we can take the \_\_\_\_\_ lane, and then we won't get stuck in a traffic jam. 8. I saw a terrible accident last night. A car hit a \_\_\_\_\_ at a crosswalk. 9. A police officer pulled me over for driving over the speed limit. I have to pay a \_\_\_\_\_ of \$50. 10. There are no traffic lights at this \_\_\_\_\_, so there are often many accidents here. 11. This highway has four \_\_\_\_\_ on each side because many people use it to go to work. 12. I always wear my \_\_\_\_\_ when I drive, because it can save my life if I get into an accident. 13. I never \_\_\_\_\_, because I know it's prohibited. 14. Last month he was dismissed from a truck driver's job for \_\_\_\_\_.

9

Translate into English.

1. Усі пішоходи повинні дотримуватись правил дорожнього руху. Вони не повинні ходити по проїзній частині, а по тротуару, тримаючись лише правого боку, щоб не заважати зустрічним пішоходам та бути якомога далі від дороги.
2. На кожному перехресті є світлофор. Перехрестя це місце, де дві дороги перетинаються. Підійшовши до перехрестя, подивіться на світлофор. Якщо горить червоне світло, зупиніться і чекайте. Коли горить зелене, можете переходити дорогу.
3. Водій транспортного засобу, що наближається до нерегульованого пішохідного переходу, на якому перебувають пішоходи, повинен зменшити швидкість, а в разі потреби зупинитися, щоб дати дорогу пішоходам.
4. Пішоходам не дозволяється переходити дорогу на червоне світло.
5. Нажаль, інколи пішоходи порушують правила. Вони переходять дорогу на червоне світло, не користуються переходами "зебра". У таких випадках вони ставлять під загрозу не тільки своє життя, а й життя інших людей.

6. Пітер уникнув лобового зіткнення, коли їхав по автомагістралі зі швидкістю 140 км за годину.
7. Водій має показати водійське посвідчення та інші необхідні документи на вимогу поліцейського.
8. Навіть діти знають, що перш ніж перейти дорогу, треба подивитися наліво, а потім посередині дороги направо. Ви повинні бути завжди обережними, коли переходите дорогу, щоб вас не збили машиною або не переїхали.
9. Підземні переходи дають можливість пішоходам уникати проїзної частини. Найкращий спосіб перейти проїзну частину у центрі міста – це підземним переходом або на зелене світло.
10. Батьки мають пояснювати своїм дітям, що не можна кататися на санчатах, лижах і ковзанах поблизу дороги. Їм також не можна грати в сніжки чи футбол на тротуарах і рухомій частині вулиці, оскільки навіть найдосвідченіший водій не в змозі одразу зупинити машину, особливо на слизькій дорозі.
11. Ніколи не перебігайте вулицю перед транспортом, що рухається. Автомобілі, автобуси, тролейбуси, які стоять, треба обходити ззаду, а трамваї – спереду.
12. За містом пішоходам треба ходити узбіччям назустріч автомобілям, що рухаються, з тим, щоб вчасно побачити їх і поступитись дорогою.
13. На щастя, у наших родичів є власний автомобіль, і вони по понеділках їдуть по двосторонньому шосе до міста. Оскільки мій дядько гарний водій, він добре знає дорожні знаки та не порушує правила дорожнього руху.
14. За кермом водій має бути обережним та уважним. Не дозволяється розмовляти по телефону чи переглядати відео; заборонено перевищувати швидкість, сідати за кермо в стані алкогольного сп'яніння чи під впливом снодійних пігулок.
15. Водій має користуватися ременем безпеки.



**10** a) Do you share the point of view that *traffic is a nightmare*? Listen to this short text, fill in the gaps and answer the questions below.

Someone 1. \_\_\_\_\_ about the traffic. It's terrible. It's getting worse every day. There are 2. \_\_\_\_\_ on the roads these days. It's a nightmare 3. \_\_\_\_\_.



Bumper to bumper even 4. \_\_\_\_\_. I don't know where all 5. \_\_\_\_\_. You turn on the radio and the traffic report is all about congestion here, snarl-ups and gridlocks there. The answer must be 6. \_\_\_\_\_. Let people take the train or bus. People need to 7. \_\_\_\_\_. The roads are 8. \_\_\_\_\_. And then there's

the pollution. It's 9. \_\_\_\_\_ sometimes. You feel like you're breathing pure fumes. We need to get rid of 10. \_\_\_\_\_ so we can move and breathe more easily.

**b) Match the words and phrases to their definitions. Make up your own sentences with these words.**

- |                        |                                                                                                                           |
|------------------------|---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>a nightmare</i>  | a) the place is extremely crowded and blocked with traffic or people.                                                     |
| 2. <i>a congestion</i> | b) a traffic jam                                                                                                          |
| 3. <i>a snarl-up</i>   | c) the situation that exists when all the roads in a particular place are so full of vehicles that none of them can move. |
| 4. <i>a gridlock</i>   | d) the presence in the environment of substances that have harmful or poisonous effects                                   |
| 5. <i>pollution</i>    | e) unpleasant and often unhealthy smoke and gases                                                                         |
| 6. <i>fume</i>         | f) a frightening and unpleasant dream experience                                                                          |

**c) 🎲 Answer and discuss the following questions with your partner.**

- 1. How can you characterize and describe traffic in Kyiv?
- 2. How do you find traffic in your area? Do you like it?
- 3. What solutions can you suggest in order to improve the situation with traffic in Kyiv and in your area?

11

🎲 Dice Game.

### Police Traffic Stop



**Find a partner and play together with one person speaking the lines in the white box and the other speaking the lines in the grey. Throw a dice before you start to determine which line number to say in each section. Once you have finished, swap roles and start again.**

A

1. Hello, Officer. Did I do anything wrong?
2. Good morning, Officer. What appears to be the problem?
3. Good morning, Officer. What can I do for you?
4. Hello, Officer. Is there a problem?
5. Hi! I haven't done anything wrong, have I, Officer?
6. Good morning. Is there something the matter, Officer?

**B**

- 1. Hi! Are you aware that you jumped a red light?**
- 2. Hello. Do you know that you shot a red light?**
- 3. Good morning. Did you know that you just went through a red light?**
- 4. Good morning. You didn't stop at that red light.**
- 5. Hello there. Could you tell me why you just went through a red light?**
- 6. Hello. Can you explain why you didn't stop at that red light back there?**

**C**

- 1. Oh no! Did I really?*
- 2. I jumped a red light! I didn't, did I?*
- 3. I'm so, so sorry! I didn't see it.*
- 4. There was a red light back there? I didn't see it.*
- 5. I'm so sorry. There are so many lights. I must have got confused.*
- 6. I shot a red light? I'm so sorry! I didn't see it!*

**D**

- 1. Could I see your driving license, please?**
- 2. Do you have your driving license on you?**
- 3. I'm afraid I'm going to need to see your license?**
- 4. May I see your driver's license?**
- 5. Can you give me your license, please?**
- 6. Well, you'll have to show me your license, I'm afraid.**

**E**

- 1. Sure. Let me see ... here it is.*
- 2. Of course. Here you are.*
- 3. Certainly. There you go.*
- 4. Absolutely. Here it is.*
- 5. Oh, all right. Here you are.*
- 6. That's OK. There you are.*

**F**

- 1. Thanks. Could you tell me why you have these 3 points deducted?**
- 2. Much obliged. Why did you have these 3 points taken away?**
- 3. Thank you. You have 3 points deducted, why is that?**
- 4. Cheers. How come you have 3 points taken away?**
- 5. Ta. What were those 3 points deducted for?**
- 6. Thanks. May I know why you lost 3 points?**



## G

1. *I'm afraid I was caught speeding.*
2. *Oh, I was speeding.*
3. *It's because I was going 80 in a 60mph zone.*
4. *They caught me going too fast.*
5. *I was clocked going too fast by radar.*
6. *Certainly. They got me for speeding, I'm afraid.*

## H

1. **I'm going to have to give you a ticket, I'm afraid.**
2. **Well, I'm issuing with a ticket this time.**
3. **OK, now you have a ticket, as well.**
4. **All right. I'm giving you a ticket for jumping that light.**
5. **I'm afraid you are going to receive a ticket for this.**
6. **I have no option but to give you a ticket, I'm sorry to say.**

## I

1. *That's OK. It's my fault for being so careless.*
2. *Well, it serves me right, I suppose.*
3. *All right. That sounds fair enough to me.*
4. *Oh no. Not another ticket! Oh well.*
5. *Oh dear! I asked for it I suppose.*
6. *Of course. I should be more careful next time.*

## J

1. **Here is your ticket. Be more careful in future. Off you go!**
2. **OK. This is your ticket. You are free to go.**
3. **Right, here is the ticket. Have a nice day.**
4. **OK then. Take this ticket and don't do it again. Bye.**
5. **This ticket is for you. Behave yourself in future. Goodbye.**
6. **Have this ticket and have a nice day. Take care!**

## K

1. *Sorry Officer. Goodbye.*
2. *OK. Thank you, Officer.*
3. *Sorry about that, Officer. Goodbye.*
4. *Thank you. Goodbye, Officer.*
5. *All right, Officer. It won't happen again. Bye-bye!*
6. *Ta. I'll be more careful next time. Cheerio!*



12

🔊 “A Ten-day Chinese Traffic Jam”

a) Before listening to the story, read the headlines and guess if 1-8 below are true (T) or false (F).

- |                                                                        |       |
|------------------------------------------------------------------------|-------|
| 1. A traffic jam in China started ten days ago.                        | T / F |
| 2. The traffic jam won't last as long as three weeks.                  | T / F |
| 3. There are 400 police officers stuck in the gridlocked roads.        | T / F |
| 4. One of the reasons for the jam is richer people in China.           | T / F |
| 5. Chinese authorities have moved many mobile showers to those stuck.  | T / F |
| 6. People who live near the jam are making money from those stranded.  | T / F |
| 7. People are amusing themselves by playing cards and games.           | T / F |
| 8. A truck driver who was interviewed is transporting soup to Beijing. | T / F |

b) Match the following synonyms from the story.

- |                       |                             |
|-----------------------|-----------------------------|
| 1. <i>motorists</i>   | a. mayhem                   |
| 2. <i>gridlock</i>    | b. anger                    |
| 3. <i>chaos</i>       | c. richer                   |
| 4. <i>tensions</i>    | d. protests                 |
| 5. <i>wealthier</i>   | e. jam                      |
| 6. <i>patient</i>     | f. stroll                   |
| 7. <i>wander</i>      | g. nerves                   |
| 8. <i>complaints</i>  | h. drivers                  |
| 9. <i>frustration</i> | i. until the cows come home |
| 10. <i>forever</i>    | j. calm                     |

c) Listen to the story and put the words from the box into the gaps.

patrol	causing	lock	board
roadworks	hell	double	wander
dozens	explosion	trapped	frustration
stuck	chaos	turned	advantage

Motorists in China are experiencing a traffic jam from 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Thousands of drivers have been 2. \_\_\_\_\_ in their cars for ten days on the Beijing-Tibet Expressway just outside the Chinese capital. The gridlock started on August 14<sup>th</sup>, when 3. \_\_\_\_\_ began. The bad news is that the 4. \_\_\_\_\_ will continue for another month. The tailbacks stretch back for 100km. The situation has been made worse by 5. \_\_\_\_\_ of cars breaking down or overheating. Around 400 traffic police have been assigned to 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the jam to make sure tensions don't rise too far. The horrendous snarl-up is the result of the 7. \_\_\_\_\_ in the number of cars on Chinese roads. As China becomes wealthier, more people are buying cars, thus 8. \_\_\_\_\_ more traffic problems.

Drivers 9. \_\_\_\_\_ in the traffic jam know they have to be patient and sit for long hours in their cars. There are no showers for them to use and if they need to use a toilet, they have to 10. \_\_\_\_\_ their car and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ off to the nearest

café. There are many complaints of local people taking **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the stranded motorists by charging them more than **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ prices for drinks and snacks. People are keeping themselves busy by playing cards or **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ games. Some have reported feeling homesick. One truck driver Juang Shao expressed his **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ over the situation: “I’ve missed my daughter’s birthday and the food in my truck has probably **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ into soup,” he said. He said he was worried his truck could be stuck in the traffic forever.

**d) 🗨️ With your partner answer and discuss the following questions.**

- **1.** What did you think when you read the headline?
- **2.** What springs to mind when you hear the word ‘traffic jam’?
- **3.** What do you do when you’re stuck in traffic?
- **4.** Can you remember a traffic jam from hell?
- **5.** What traffic problems are there in your country?
- **6.** Describe your emotions when you are stuck in traffic.
- **7.** What will the roads be like 20 years from now?
- **8.** How do you pass the time in a car or on the train?
- **9.** Can any good things happen while you are caught in traffic?
- **10.** Should cars be designed to have more traffic jam entertainment features?
- **11.** How can you comment on the following: “*The driver is safer when the road is dry. The road is safer when the driver is dry*”?



**13** 🗨️ **Speak about the traffic rules in Ukraine according to the plan given below.**

**Plan**

1. The importance of traffic rules
2. Traffic rules for drivers
3. Traffic rules for pedestrians
4. How often you violate traffic rules and why
5. Reasons why people need to obey traffic rules



**14** **Complete the sentences with appropriate prepositions where necessary.**



1. He cycled \_\_\_\_\_ America from the Pacific to the Atlantic.
2. \_\_\_\_\_ the morning we went \_\_\_\_\_ the museum and then had lunch \_\_\_\_\_ the cafeteria.
3. Look! You have mud \_\_\_\_\_ your shoes. Wipe them \_\_\_\_\_ the mat before you come \_\_\_\_\_ the house.
4. \_\_\_\_\_ the other side of the river, \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge, there is the richest side of the town.
5. There was so much traffic, I was lucky to get \_\_\_\_\_ the road without a problem.
6. \_\_\_\_\_ Tuesday morning, I’m going \_\_\_\_\_ the town to put some money \_\_\_\_\_ my bank account.
7. I have to go

\_\_\_\_\_ town this morning but we can meet later \_\_\_\_\_ John's house. **8.** It says \_\_\_\_\_ the newspaper that they're getting married \_\_\_\_\_ the spring \_\_\_\_\_ a small church \_\_\_\_\_ the island of Santorini. **9.** The mist was so thick, it was like walking \_\_\_\_\_ a cloud. **10.** He lives just \_\_\_\_\_ the boarder, in Switzerland. **11.** Her children were wandering slowly \_\_\_\_\_ the road. **12.** She made her way up the hill \_\_\_\_\_ a narrow path. **13.** The dog ran away from me and disappeared \_\_\_\_\_ the hill. **14.** I saw Jim when he was walking \_\_\_\_\_ the book shop. **15.** Mr. Fisher is \_\_\_\_\_ Boston now but he'll be \_\_\_\_\_ his way back \_\_\_\_\_ London \_\_\_\_\_ a few days. **16.** If you happen to be careless \_\_\_\_\_ traffic rules and cross a street either \_\_\_\_\_ a red light or not \_\_\_\_\_ a zebra crossing, you are sure to be punished \_\_\_\_\_ traffic rules offence. **17.** I had never been \_\_\_\_\_ the United States before. So, when we arrived \_\_\_\_\_ JFK airport, I felt very excited. **18.** Our journey \_\_\_\_\_ Rome was unforgettable. **19.** The Browns returned \_\_\_\_\_ their native city \_\_\_\_\_ last year. **20.** The river Rhine flows \_\_\_\_\_ the North Sea.

**15**

**Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *past* tense. Mind the word order in the interrogative sentences.**

**A.**

Peter **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) to work yesterday when a dog **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*run*) into the middle of the road. Peter **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*manage*) to stop in time but the car, which **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*follow*) behind him, **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*crash*) into the back of his car. Then the two cars **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*collide*) with a police car, which **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) in the opposite direction.

**B.**

*Policeman:* You **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) here when the accident **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*)?

*Witness:* Yes, we **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) at the bus stop when we first **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*notice*) the car.

*Policeman:* The car **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*speed*) when it **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) to the junction?

*Witness:* Yes, it **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) very fast when it **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*reach*) the corner. But those men **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*cross*) at a red light when the car **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hit*) them.

*Policeman:* The driver **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) when he **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) the men?

*Witness:* As far as I could see, the driver **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*talk*) on his mobile phone while he **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) that's why he **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/stop*) in time. But the men **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/pay*) attention either while they **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*cross*).

*Policeman:* It **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*snow*) when the accident **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*happen*)?

*Witness:* No, it **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) by that time and the road was very slippery.

C.



Last summer some friends and I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrange*) to go camping. We 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) forward to going for weeks when finally the date of our departure 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*). We 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*load*) the car with our luggage and 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*set off*) early in the morning. The weather was perfect, the sun 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*shine*) brightly and the wind 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*blow*) gently. There 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/be*) a cloud in the sky! Shortly afterwards, while we 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*travel*) along the motorway, we 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*notice*) that the car 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) a strange sound. Pete, who 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) very fast, suddenly 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) the car. Everyone 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get out*) and 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) round to the back of the car. To our surprise the boot was wide open – whoever 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*load*) the luggage 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/close*) it properly, and everything 18. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fall out*)!

16

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct *present* and *future* tense. Mind the word order in the interrogative sentences.

A.



Next month, Maggie 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to Australia to visit her sister, who she 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/seen*) for fifteen years. The plane 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) early in the morning and 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stop*) off at Singapore before flying on to Sydney. It 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) a very long, tiring journey, but Maggie is very excited because this time next month, she 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*begin*) her adventure on the other side of the world. She 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stay*) in Australia for one month. She 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*already/book*) her flight, so she 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*) back to Britain on 31<sup>st</sup> May. She hopes that she 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*visit*) lots of fascinating places and 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) many interesting things by the time her holidays 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) over.

B.

A: Did I tell you I am having a meeting in Glasgow at nine o'clock tomorrow morning? I 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) up there overnight.

B: You 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) all through the night? You're crazy. You 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) exhausted before you 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*). Why don't you take a train?

A: I'll be OK. I 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) a car while I 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) there. I have to visit some companies in the area. I can sleep when I 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) home.

B: If you 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*take*) a train, it 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) much more comfortable. If you 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*need*) a car, you can hire one when you 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) to Glasgow.

A: If I 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hire*) a car, it 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) too complicated. I'd rather take my own.

B: *It's too dangerous. You might fall asleep on the motorway.*

A: I **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/fall*) asleep. I can play loud music. Anyway, I **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) there much quicker when there **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) no traffic on the road. As soon as I **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*arrive*), I **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*ring*) you up, I promise.

B: I **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) worried until I **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) from you. But don't ring before I **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) awake in the morning.

A: I **22.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*lie*) down for a couple of hours before I **23.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*).

B: *Good idea. You* **24.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) exhausted tomorrow if you **25.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/get*) some sleep this evening.

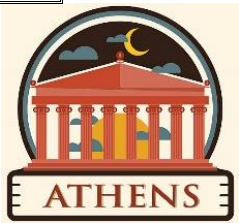
C.



Next Saturday, Daisy **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*fly*) to Paris for a business meeting. Her secretary already **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*book*) the flight. The plane **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) at nine o'clock in the morning and one of her business clients **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*meet*) her at the airport when the plane **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*land*). She **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/know*) how long the meeting **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*last*), but she **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*return*) home by Thursday evening.

17

Fill in the *articles* where necessary.



**1.** \_\_\_\_\_ Athens is becoming more and more attractive to **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ tourists. Although **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ city may seem big and noisy, **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ tourists can still find rather a lot of quiet places with **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ romantic atmosphere to enjoy **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ tasty Greek meal and listen to **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ traditional music. We found that **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ prices in **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ restaurants were very reasonable, not too expensive for **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ average tourist. **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ service was a bit slow, but all **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ waiters were usually friendly. As for **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ transport, **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ number of taxis in **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ Athens is quite amazing. We found **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ cost of getting round by **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ taxi much cheaper than in **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ most European capitals but **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ taxi-drivers can be a bit rude at **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ times.

## SECTION IV: ASKING THE WAY, GIVING THE DIRECTIONS

### GRAMMAR:

- Articles with Geographic Names
- Articles with Names of Streets, Roads, Squares and Parks
- Articles with Names of Buildings and Institutions
- Prepositions of Direction and Movement
- Tense Forms (Revision)

### Vocabulary

Showing Directions	Вказування Дороги
to be lost / to get lost / to lose <i>one's</i> way / to go astray / to run astray	заблукати, збитися з дороги
to find <i>one's</i> way	знайти шлях, дорогу
to ask the way	запитати дорогу
to tell the way	розказати / роз'яснити дорогу
to show <i>sb.</i> the way <b>to</b> ...	показати <i>комусь</i> дорогу до ...
to go / walk <b>along</b> the street	йти по / вздовж вулиці
to go / walk <b>up</b> the street	йти по вулиці (уздовж по убутних номерах будинків вулиці)
to go / walk <b>down</b> the street	йти по вулиці (уздовж по наростаючих номерах будинків)
to go / walk <b>straight ahead</b> / <b>on</b>	йти весь час прямо
to go / walk <b>this</b> / <b>that</b> way	йти сюди, у цей бік
to go / walk <b>past</b>	пройти повз
to go as far as the roundabout	дійти / доїхати до кільцевої дороги
to go / walk <b>for</b> five blocks	пройти п'ять кварталів
to turn <b>to</b> the left / to turn left; to take a left	повернути ліворуч
to turn <b>to</b> the right / to turn right; to take a right	повернути праворуч
to turn <b>into</b> ... street	повернути на вулицю...
to take the 1 <sup>st</sup> / 2 <sup>nd</sup> turning / turn <b>on</b> the left / right	повернути в 1 <sup>й</sup> / 2 <sup>й</sup> поворот ліворуч / праворуч
to cross the street	перетинати вулицю
<b>on</b> <i>sb.</i> 's right / left	праворуч / ліворуч від <i>когось</i>
<b>at</b> the end of the street	в кінці вулиці
<b>across</b> the street	на протилежному боці вулиці
<b>across from</b> <i>sth.</i>	через дорогу від <i>чогось</i>



<b>at</b> the crossroad / <b>at</b> the junction	на перехресті
<b>in</b> the direction of ...	у напрямку ...
<b>at</b> / <b>on</b> the corner of ... and ...	на розі ... та ...
right <b>at</b> / <b>on</b> the corner	прямо на розі
just <b>round</b> the corner	прямо за рогом
the right way <b>to</b> ...	правильний шлях до ...
the nearest / the easiest way <b>to</b> ...	найближчий / найлегший шлях до ...
how to get <b>to</b> ...	як дістатися до ...
It's quite a walk. / It's a long walk.	Це досить далеко / добряча відстань.
Can you please tell me how I can get to the <i>bank</i> ?	Будьте ласкаві, чи можете мені підказати, як дістатися до <i>банку</i> ?
How can I get to the <i>cinema</i> ?	Як дістатися до <i>кінотеатру</i> ?
How do I get to the <i>office</i> ?	Як дістатися до <i>офісу</i> ?
Where is the nearest <i>restaurant</i> ?	Де знаходиться найближчий <i>ресторан</i> ?
The nearest is <i>café</i> next to the <i>church</i> .	Найближчий <i>кафетерій</i> знаходиться поряд з <i>церквою</i> .
What's the best way to get to the <i>city center</i> ?	Як найкраще дістатися до <i>центру міста</i> ?
Where is the <i>zoo</i> from here?	Як звідси дістатися до <i>зоопарку</i> ?
Do you know the directions to the <i>post office</i> ?	Ви не знаєте, як дістатися до <i>пошти</i> ?
Which way should I go to the <i>circus</i> ?	Якою дорогою мені прямувати до <i>цирку</i> ?
Could you tell me the way to the <i>railway station</i> ?	Скажіть, як дістатися до <i>залізничної станції</i> ?
Is this the right way to the <i>cathedral</i> ?	Чи я правильно йду до <i>собору</i> ?
How far is it?	Як це задалеко?
How many blocks away is the <i>metro station</i> ?	У скількох кварталах звідси знаходиться <i>станція метро</i> ?
It takes me ... minutes to get <b>to</b> ...	Мені потрібно ... хвилин, щоб дістатися до ...

**1** Read the dialogues and pay attention to the way directions are given. Give synonyms to the expressions in bold where possible.

1.

\*\*\*

**A:** Excuse me, sir. **Is there** a bank **around here**?

**B:** Yes, there is one **right across the street next to** the library.

\*\*\*

**C:** *Could you give me directions to the petrol station?*

**D:** *Of course, I will, just follow this road until you come to the main road.*

*Turn right and then continue for about 100 metres. You will see the petrol station on the left.*

\*\*\*

**E:** Can you tell me how to get to the London Bridge?

**F:** I'm sorry I can't help as I'm not from around here.

\*\*\*

**G:** *Where's the nearest bus station?*

**H:** *It's on the corner of Oxford Street and Mayfair Lane. Next to the train station.*

\*\*\*

**I:** How can you get to the mall?

**J:** Go straight along this road for about 200 metres. Turn right when you see Apple Street. Carry on straight ahead till you see a Tesco supermarket. The mall is opposite the supermarket.

\*\*\*

**K:** *Is there a bank near here?*

**L:** *Yes, there is one in Orange Street. Orange Street is the third road on your right.*

\*\*\*

**M:** Excuse me, sir. Could you please tell me where I can find the nearest chemist's?

**N:** Yes, there is one next to the bakery. Go back the way you came. Turn right after you go past the bank and there is one on your left next to the hospital.

2.

**William:** *Excuse me, I am sorry to trouble you, but could you tell me how I can get to the train station?*

**Kate:** Yes, no problem, it's that way. Keep walking straight ahead then after you pass the library, turn left. Then take your first right and it's across from the bus station. You can't miss it!

**William:** *Thank you so much! I have only been in Manchester for 2 days, so I don't know how to get anywhere yet.*

**Kate:** Oh, I know that feeling. My husband and me moved here 6 months ago, and I still don't know how to find certain places! Manchester is so big.

**William:** *So just to double check. I keep walking straight ahead till I pass the library, then I have to turn left and take the first right. Then it's across from the bus station. Is that correct?*

**Kate:** Yes, that is correct.

**William:** *Well, thanks for helping me. I must go and catch my train, hopefully I haven't missed it!*

**Kate:** OK, bye.



2

Read the dialogues and pay attention to the way directions are given.  
a) Role-play the dialogue and then retell it a monologue.

**Woman:** *Excuse me?*

**Man:** Yeah?

**Woman:** *I'm sorry to bother you<sup>1</sup>, but I'm completely lost. Are you from here<sup>2</sup>?*

**Man:** Where are you trying to **get to**<sup>3</sup>?

**Woman:** *Well, I was looking for the art museum, but I think I've taken a **wrong turn**<sup>4</sup> somewhere.*

**Man:** I think so! You're miles away.

**Woman:** *Really? This always happens to me. Directions just **aren't my thing**<sup>5</sup>, I suppose.*

**Man:** I think the best thing is to take a bus. **It'll take ages**<sup>6</sup> if you walk from here.

**Woman:** *That's a pity... I wanted to walk around and **get a feel for the city**<sup>7</sup>.*

**Man:** I wouldn't worry – there's nothing to see around here, anyway. Take the bus into the centre and walk around there – it's much more interesting.

**Woman:** *Oh, ok. Where can I take the bus?*

**Man:** It's about five minutes' walk from here. Do you see that hotel, on the corner, there?

**Woman:** *The one that says "Royal Hotel?"*

**Man:** That's right. Go down that street to the end, then turn right. **Take the first left**<sup>8</sup> and go on until you see **a junction**<sup>9</sup> with traffic lights. Go over the junction, keep going straight, and you'll see a bus stop on your left.

**Woman:** *Go to the end, first left, turn right at the traffic lights ...*

**Man:** No, no. Go straight on, past the traffic lights.

**Woman:** *Oh! Yes, and then ...*

**Man:** It'll be on your left.

**Woman:** *Right! **Got it**<sup>10</sup>, I think ...*

**Man:** Well, you can always ask someone else. Good luck!

**Woman:** *Thanks!*

### Vocabulary notes:

1. *I'm sorry to bother you* = a very polite way to introduce a request or a question, often used when talking to people you don't know

2. *Are you from here?* = Are you local?

3. *Get* in this sentence means “go” or “arrive”
4. *I've taken a wrong turn* = I went the wrong way, so now I'm lost
5. If something *isn't your thing*, then you aren't very good at it
6. *It'll take ages* = It'll take a long time
7. *Get a feel for the city* = spend time looking around the city, so you become familiar with it
8. *Take the first left* = turn at the first street on the left
9. A *junction* = a place where two or more streets cross
10. *Got it* = I understand



**b) Match the phrases and sentences, which have opposite meanings.**

- |                               |                                             |
|-------------------------------|---------------------------------------------|
| 1. I'm completely lost        | <i>a. I'm good at finding my way around</i> |
| 2. Got it                     | <i>b. I know where I am</i>                 |
| 3. I took a wrong turn        | <i>c. It won't take long</i>                |
| 4. Directions aren't my thing | <i>d. I don't understand</i>                |
| 5. It'll take ages            | <i>e. I went the right way</i>              |

**3** Transcribe the words and phrases and match them with their definitions.

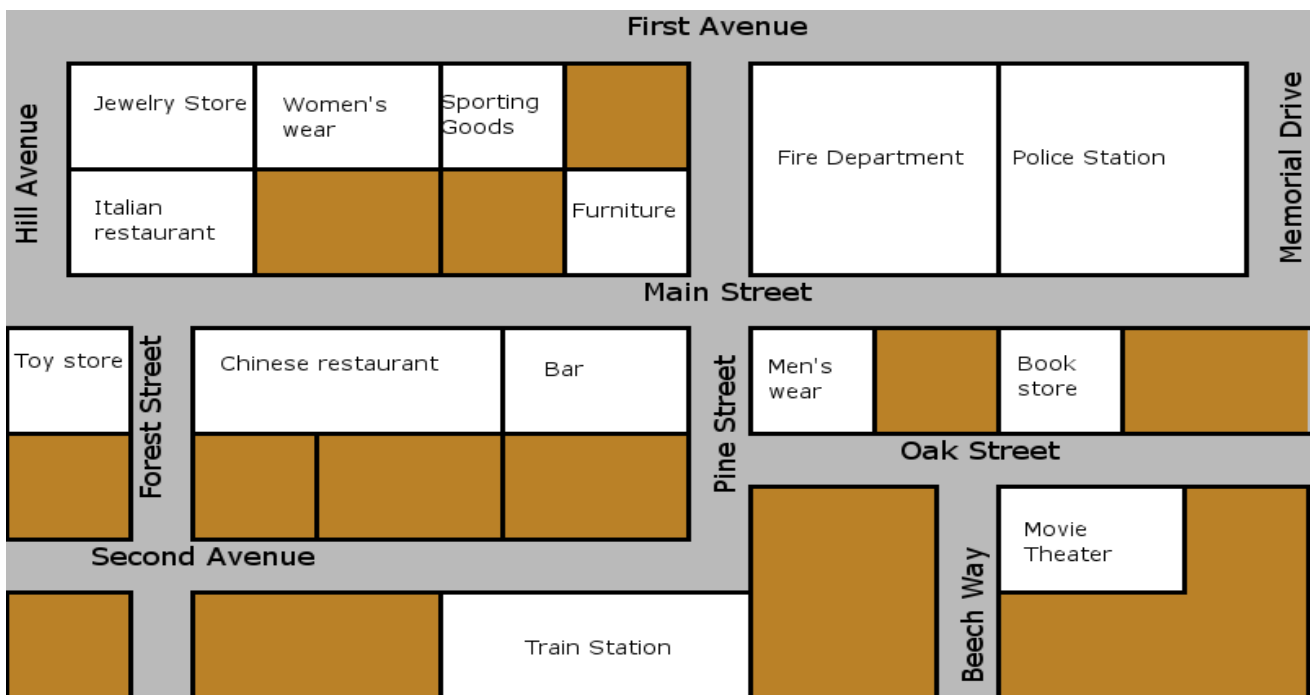
- |                               |                                                                                                                            |
|-------------------------------|----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------|
| 1. <i>roundabout</i>          | <b>a)</b> get lost                                                                                                         |
| 2. <i>go down</i>             | <b>b)</b> continue past something so that it is now behind you                                                             |
| 3. <i>level crossing</i>      | <b>c)</b> a place where pedestrians can cross a street and where drivers must stop to let them cross                       |
| 4. <i>underpass</i>           | <b>d)</b> where all the cars go round a circle in the middle of the road                                                   |
| 5. <i>overpass/flyover</i>    | <b>e)</b> a road under (or through) mountains                                                                              |
| 6. <i>go past</i>             | <b>f)</b> cross something, like a road or crossroads                                                                       |
| 7. <i>zebra crossing</i>      | <b>g)</b> where one road meets another, and you can either go left or right                                                |
| 8. <i>pedestrian crossing</i> | <b>h)</b> a place where taxis queue for passengers                                                                         |
| 9. <i>tunnel</i>              | <b>i)</b> a road off to your left or right                                                                                 |
| 10. <i>crossroads</i>         | <b>j)</b> a road that goes over another road (or railway)                                                                  |
| 11. <i>go across</i>          | <b>k)</b> continue down a road                                                                                             |
| 12. <i>junction</i>           | <b>l)</b> a place where the road and railway meet; there are barriers that go up and down to signal when a train is coming |
| 13. <i>go through</i>         | <b>m)</b> black and white markings in the road for pedestrians to cross the road                                           |
| 14. <i>turning</i>            | <b>n)</b> a big road where there is lots of traffic                                                                        |
| 15. <i>go along</i>           | <b>o)</b> walk or drive up a hill                                                                                          |
| 16. <i>lane</i>               | <b>p)</b> walk or drive down a hill or a road                                                                              |

- 17. *fork in the road*      q) where two roads cross each other
- 18. *go straight on*      r) don't turn left or right
- 19. *main road*      s) a small road or part of a road
- 20. *go up*      t) pass through something such as a tunnel or a town
- 21. *taxi rank*      u) where the road divides and you decide to go left or right
- 22. *go astray*      v) a walkway that goes under a busy road so pedestrians can get to the other side safely

4

a) Look at the map. Say whether the following statements are *True (T)* or *False (F)*.

- 1. The Jewelry Store is behind the Italian restaurant.
- 2. The Bar is on Second Avenue.
- 3. The Police Station is on the left of the Fire Department.
- 4. The Toy Store is across from the Chinese Restaurant.
- 5. The Movie Theatre is opposite the Book Store.
- 6. The Sporting Goods Store is behind the Furniture Store.
- 7. The Bar is next to the Chinese Restaurant.



↑ You are here

b) Look at the map again. Choose the correct name of the building. Start by going up Beech Way.

1. Go straight ahead and turn left. Take the next street on the right. Go straight on and cross the road. Make the 1<sup>st</sup> right. It's on your right with entrance on the other side of the road.

2. At the end of Beech Way, take a left and then a right. Go down the street. Make the 2<sup>nd</sup> right. Take the next street on the right. Go straight on and cross the road. Go straight on. Take the 1<sup>st</sup> turning on the left. Cross the road. It's on your left, on the corner.

3. Make the 1<sup>st</sup> left. Go down the street. Take a left. Take the next street on the left. Go straight along. Cross the road and make a right. It's across from the Chinese Restaurant.

**c) Fill in the missing prepositions or prepositional phrases.**



1. The Fire Department is \_\_\_\_\_ the Police Station. 2. The Movie Theatre is \_\_\_\_\_ the Book Store. 3. The Women's Wear is \_\_\_\_\_ the Jewelry Store and the Sporting Goods. 4. The Toy Store is \_\_\_\_\_ of Main Street and Forest Street.

5. The Train Station is \_\_\_\_\_ Pine Street, \_\_\_\_\_ side of the road. 6. The Furniture Store is \_\_\_\_\_ of Main Street and Pine Street \_\_\_\_\_ the Bar.

**d) Fill in the words from the box correctly. (There are 2 extra)**

between    continue    corner    end    excuse    first    get    left (2x)  
next to    opposite    right    straight on    thank    turn    welcome

A: 1. \_\_\_\_\_ me, how do I 2. \_\_\_\_\_ to the Women's Wear?

B: Go 3. \_\_\_\_\_. Turn 4. \_\_\_\_\_ at the 5. \_\_\_\_\_. Then take the 6. \_\_\_\_\_ road on your 7. \_\_\_\_\_. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ to the 9. \_\_\_\_\_ of the road. 10. \_\_\_\_\_ left there. The Women's Wear is on your 11. \_\_\_\_\_, 12. \_\_\_\_\_ the Sporting Goods.

A: 13. \_\_\_\_\_ you very much.

B: You're 14. \_\_\_\_\_.

**5 Complete the dialogue about asking for directions with the following words.**

ahead    excuse    far    get    how    left    middle    miss  
next    out of town    repeat    right side    sorry    street  
thanks    turn    traffic    walk    welcome    where

**Andrea:** Pardon me. Can you tell me 1. \_\_\_\_\_ to get to the post office?

**Passer-by 1:** No, I'm 2. \_\_\_\_\_. I don't know. I'm from 3. \_\_\_\_\_.

(a minute later)

**Andrea:** 4. \_\_\_\_\_ me. Do you know 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the post office is?

**Passer-by 2:** Sure. It's not 6. \_\_\_\_\_ from here. Walk straight 7. \_\_\_\_\_ until you 8. \_\_\_\_\_ to Main street. Then...

**Andrea:** Sorry to interrupt you. How many blocks is that?

**Passer-by 2:** It's about two or three blocks from here. It's the first 9. \_\_\_\_\_ lights you come to. When you get to Main Street, 10. \_\_\_\_\_



right and **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ one block to Broadway. Then turn **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ and go about half a block.

**Andrea:** Which side of the **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ is it on?

**Passer-by 2:** Coming from this direction, it'll be on your **14.** \_\_\_\_\_. It's in the **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ of the block, **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ to the Sweets Ice Cream Shop. You can't **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ it. Do you want me to **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ any of that?

**Andrea:** No. That's okay. I've got it. **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ a lot.

**Passer-by 2:** You're **20.** \_\_\_\_\_.

6

Fill in the *articles* where necessary.



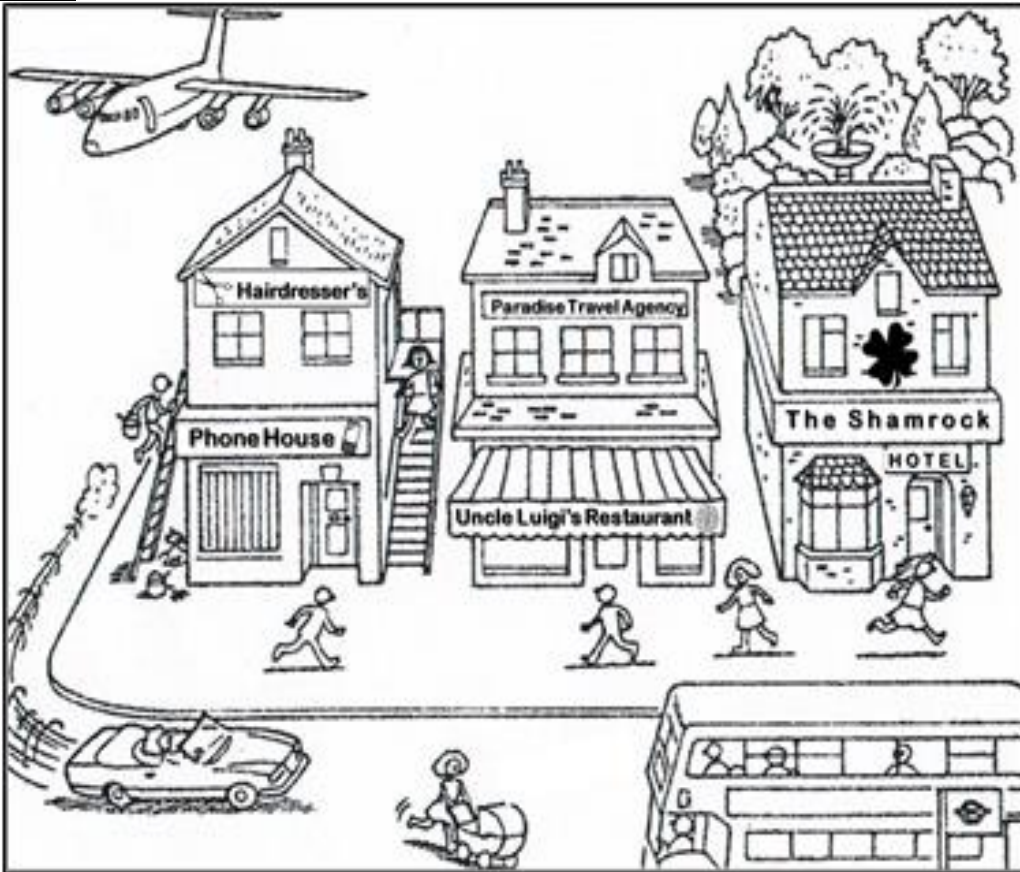
- 1.** \_\_\_\_\_ Tower of London is \_\_\_\_\_ very popular tourist attraction. **2.** They are going for \_\_\_\_\_ walk near \_\_\_\_\_ London Zoo in \_\_\_\_\_ Regent's Park. **3.** The supermarket is in \_\_\_\_\_ Kendell Street opposite \_\_\_\_\_ Lloyds Bank.
- 4.** Anna was born in \_\_\_\_\_ Italy but she lives in \_\_\_\_\_ USA now. **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ Buckingham Palace is where \_\_\_\_\_ Queen of England lives. **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ Gatwick Airport is in \_\_\_\_\_ southern England. **7.** She bought \_\_\_\_\_ expensive necklace at \_\_\_\_\_ Harrods. **8.** They went for \_\_\_\_\_ stroll around \_\_\_\_\_ St. James' Park. **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ Newcastle is \_\_\_\_\_ town in \_\_\_\_\_ north of \_\_\_\_\_ England. **10.** There is \_\_\_\_\_ cinema in \_\_\_\_\_ Bridge Street called \_\_\_\_\_ Odeon. **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ Victoria Coach Station is near \_\_\_\_\_ Apollo theatre. **12.** The names of the following streets have the definite article: \_\_\_\_\_ Mall, \_\_\_\_\_ Strand, \_\_\_\_\_ Wall Street, \_\_\_\_\_ Unter den Linden. **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ MET Museum is located on \_\_\_\_\_ Fifth Avenue. **14.** I met a man from \_\_\_\_\_ New Zealand when I was skiing in \_\_\_\_\_ Swiss Alps. **15.** On my trip around the world, I visited \_\_\_\_\_ Jamaica, \_\_\_\_\_ Bahamas, \_\_\_\_\_ Australia, and \_\_\_\_\_ Republic of Congo. **16.** John lives in \_\_\_\_\_ Fraser Street in \_\_\_\_\_ Sydney. **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ Poland is part of \_\_\_\_\_ European Union. **18.** The tourist arrived at \_\_\_\_\_ Manaus Airport and then took a tour of \_\_\_\_\_ Amazon River. **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ train to \_\_\_\_\_ Paris leaves from \_\_\_\_\_ Waterloo Station. **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ National Theatre is south of \_\_\_\_\_ river. **21.** \_\_\_\_\_ Serpentine is \_\_\_\_\_ lake in \_\_\_\_\_ Hyde Park. **22.** You can get to \_\_\_\_\_ Heathrow Airport by \_\_\_\_\_ underground. **23.** \_\_\_\_\_ Nelson's Column is in \_\_\_\_\_ Trafalgar Square. **24.** You can get \_\_\_\_\_ view of \_\_\_\_\_ Houses of Parliament from there. **25.** \_\_\_\_\_ Earl's Court is in \_\_\_\_\_ West London. **26.** \_\_\_\_\_ M1 goes north from London. **27.** \_\_\_\_\_ Ritz is \_\_\_\_\_ very elegant hotel. **28.** \_\_\_\_\_ National Park was opened last week by \_\_\_\_\_ Mayor. **29.** \_\_\_\_\_ Orly Airport is one of \_\_\_\_\_ busiest in \_\_\_\_\_ world. **30.** \_\_\_\_\_ Tate gallery is rather far from \_\_\_\_\_ Science Museum, so you'd better take \_\_\_\_\_ bus. **31.** We saw many



interesting sights in \_\_\_\_\_ Madrid and we visited \_\_\_\_\_ Prado Museum and \_\_\_\_\_ Escorial where \_\_\_\_\_ King of Spain lives. **32.** It's dangerous to go through \_\_\_\_\_ Central Park at night. **33.** \_\_\_\_\_ Archaeological Museum is closed on Mondays. **34.** \_\_\_\_\_ pub is across from \_\_\_\_\_ train station. **35.** If you walk down \_\_\_\_\_ street, you will find \_\_\_\_\_ post office.

7

Complete the sentences with the following prepositions.



- down
- below
- up
- next to
- opposite
- past
- along
- across
- under
- between
- over
- above
- behind
- round
- in front of

**1.** Luigi's restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ a travel agency. **2.** A painter is climbing \_\_\_\_\_ the ladder. **3.** There is a dog \_\_\_\_\_ the ladder. **4.** Someone is running \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. **5.** Luigi's restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ a hotel called *The Shamrock*. **6.** There is a person \_\_\_\_\_ Luigi's restaurant. **7.** Luigi's restaurant is \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel and the Phone House. **8.** There is a bus stop \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. **9.** There's a nice garden \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. **10.** There's a hairdresser's \_\_\_\_\_ the Phone House. **11.** There are a few people walking \_\_\_\_\_ the road. **12.** There's a car coming \_\_\_\_\_ the corner very fast! **13.** Someone is pushing a pram \_\_\_\_\_ the road. **14.** Someone is coming \_\_\_\_\_ the steps from the hairdresser's. **15.** There's a plane flying \_\_\_\_\_ the town.

8

Put the words in the box into the blank spaces below.

across  
your  
corner  
down

front  
how  
left  
looking

miss  
moment  
next  
off

take  
to  
transfer  
way

exit  
far  
lost  
on  
where

1.

A: Excuse me. Can I trouble you for a 7. \_\_\_\_\_?

B: Sure. What's wrong?

A: I'm lost. Do you know 8. \_\_\_\_\_ to get 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the Stadium?

B: The easiest 10. \_\_\_\_\_ to get there is probably by subway. Just 11. \_\_\_\_\_ the Central Line to Broadway Station. 12. \_\_\_\_\_ to the Green Line and get 13. \_\_\_\_\_ at Harbour Station. If you go out 14. \_\_\_\_\_ number four, it should be right in 15. \_\_\_\_\_ of you.

2.



A: You look 1. \_\_\_\_\_. Can I help you?

B: Yeah. I'm 2. \_\_\_\_\_ for the Caprice Theater. Do you know 3. \_\_\_\_\_ it is?

A: It's on the 4. \_\_\_\_\_ of Elm Street and 22<sup>nd</sup> Avenue. It's 5. \_\_\_\_\_ to the Art Gallery. You can't 6. \_\_\_\_\_ it.

3.



A: Can I get to the Harlton Hotel from here 16. \_\_\_\_\_ foot?

B: Sure. It's not that 17. \_\_\_\_\_. Just go 18. \_\_\_\_\_ 4<sup>th</sup> Avenue to Main Street. Turn 19. \_\_\_\_\_ on Main. It should be on 20. \_\_\_\_\_ right. It's 21. \_\_\_\_\_ from the park.

9

Rearrange the sentences to make up a dialogue.

1 \_\_\_\_\_

– Excuse me, could you tell us the short way to the famous British Museum? We went astray.

\_\_\_\_\_

– Go straight on, then turn left at the traffic lights and go straight on again. In two minutes, you are at Oxford Circus.

\_\_\_\_\_

– One more thing. Is there a bus table at the bus stop? If I see that our bus comes in 15-20 minutes, we shall walk there.

\_\_\_\_\_

– And how can we get to Oxford Circus?

\_\_\_\_\_

– You have to get off at Great Russel Street. This bus stops in front of the British Museum.

\_\_\_\_\_

– I certainly can. It is not very far from here. I think it will take you about thirty minutes to get there from here. If you are in a hurry, you can go by bus. The bus stop is at Oxford Circus.

- \_\_\_\_\_ – Your bus is the 73.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – What bus must we take?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – Thank you very much!  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – I think, about fifteen minutes.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – At what stop do we get off?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – Not at all. Have a good time.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – And how long will it take us to get to the British Museum by bus?  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – Many thanks.  
 \_\_\_\_\_ – Of course, you will find a bus table at the bus stop. I think this bus arrives every 10-15 minutes.



10

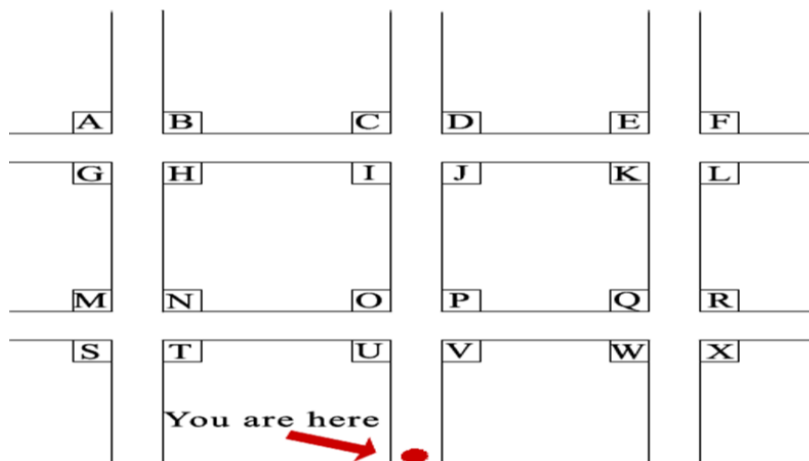
Complete the sentences with *in*, *at* or *on*.



1. We went to a concert \_\_\_\_\_ the Royal Festival Hall. 2. It was a very slow train. It stopped \_\_\_\_\_ every station. 3. My parents live \_\_\_\_\_ a small village about 60 miles from London. 4. I haven't seen Mary for some time. I last saw her \_\_\_\_\_ David's wedding. 5. They stayed \_\_\_\_\_ a very nice hotel when they were \_\_\_\_\_ Amsterdam. 6. There were twenty rooms \_\_\_\_\_ the hotel. 7. I don't know where my umbrella is. Perhaps I left it \_\_\_\_\_ the bus. 8. I wasn't in when you called. I was \_\_\_\_\_ my sister's house. 9. There must be somebody \_\_\_\_\_ the house. The lights are on. 10. The exhibition \_\_\_\_\_ the Museum of Modern Art finished on Sunday. 11. Shall we travel \_\_\_\_\_ your car or mine? 12. What are you doing \_\_\_\_\_ home? I expected you to be \_\_\_\_\_ work. 13. I liked the film, but it was too hot \_\_\_\_\_ the cinema. 14. Peter lives \_\_\_\_\_ Birmingham. He's a student \_\_\_\_\_ Birmingham University. 15. I saw Sue when she passed me \_\_\_\_\_ her bike. 16. The bus was very full. There were too many people \_\_\_\_\_ it. 17. There is a post box \_\_\_\_\_ the corner of the street. 18. My sister's house is \_\_\_\_\_ the other end of the street. 19. Who is the woman \_\_\_\_\_ that photograph \_\_\_\_\_ your album? 20. London is \_\_\_\_\_ the river Thames. 21. In most countries, people drive \_\_\_\_\_ the right. 22. Joe works \_\_\_\_\_ the furniture department of a large store. 23. There has been a serious accident \_\_\_\_\_ the motorway near Milan. 24. Her dream is to play \_\_\_\_\_ Wembley Stadium. 25. His mother works \_\_\_\_\_ a factory.

11

a) Listen to the conversation. Which building in this strangely square town is the nearest Post Office to your location?



b) Listen to the conversation again. Fill in the missing words and phrases.

- A: Hello, excuse me, can you tell me 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the nearest 2. \_\_\_\_\_ is?
- B: Erm, yea, sure – you 3. \_\_\_\_\_ this street. Take the 4. \_\_\_\_\_ on the right. Keep going along there, 5. \_\_\_\_\_, and it’s right there 6. \_\_\_\_\_.
- A: Thanks.
- B: Oh, no, hang on, wait a minute, there’s a 7. \_\_\_\_\_. Walk up this street, take 8. \_\_\_\_\_ and there’s a post office on your right at the 9. \_\_\_\_\_, sorry, I forgot about that one.
- A: Thanks again.

12

a) Look at the map and listen to the short instructions. Do this exercise while you listen.

- The speaker A gives directions to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The speaker B gives directions to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The speaker C gives directions to the \_\_\_\_\_.
- The speaker D gives directions to the \_\_\_\_\_.



b) Listen and fill in the missing words.





1. Go \_\_\_\_\_ on. 2. \_\_\_\_\_ past the traffic lights. 3. It's the building next to the library \_\_\_\_\_ the left. 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the roundabout turn left. 5. Then \_\_\_\_\_ the first left on to Green Street. 6. Go \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic lights and take the \_\_\_\_\_ right on to King's Road.

13

🔊 Listen to the dialogues and fill in the blanks.

1.

A: Excuse me! Is there a newsagent's 1. \_\_\_\_\_ here?

B: Yes. It's 2. \_\_\_\_\_ Church Street. Take 3. \_\_\_\_\_ on the 4. \_\_\_\_\_. It's 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the music shop.

A: Ok. Thanks.

2.

A: Is there a good post office 6. \_\_\_\_\_ here?

B: Go 7. \_\_\_\_\_, and it's 8. \_\_\_\_\_ the left, 9. \_\_\_\_\_ the pub.

A: Thanks a lot.

3.

A: Excuse me! Is there a 10. \_\_\_\_\_ near 11. \_\_\_\_\_?

B: There's an Internet café 12. \_\_\_\_\_ Park Lane 13. \_\_\_\_\_ the bank, and there's an Italian restaurant 14. \_\_\_\_\_ Church Street 15. \_\_\_\_\_ the travel agent's.

A: Is that one 16. \_\_\_\_\_?

B: No. Just 17. \_\_\_\_\_ minutes, that's all.

14

Here is some information about London. Put in *the* where necessary. If the definite article is not necessary, put in (--).



Most tourists want to see where the Queen lives when they visit 1. \_\_\_\_\_ London, so 2. \_\_\_\_\_ Buckingham Palace is very popular. But I think the best thing to do is to take a boat trip on 3. \_\_\_\_\_ River Thames to see all the famous buildings. You can get on the boat at 4. \_\_\_\_\_ Westminster Bridge, near 5. \_\_\_\_\_ Houses of Parliament. If you go down the river to 6. \_\_\_\_\_ Tower of London, you'll pass 7. \_\_\_\_\_ St. Paul's Cathedral on the way. This is a very old and beautiful church, and my favourite building. As a change from sightseeing, you could go shopping along 8. \_\_\_\_\_ Oxford Street, or maybe if you like animals, go to 9. \_\_\_\_\_ London Zoo. There's lots to do and see in the capital. Come and see!



15

🎧 Take a tour of London by listening to this tour guide and do the exercises to check your understanding.

a) Listen to the tour and write a number (1-8) to put these places in order that the tour bus will visit them.

- |                                          |                                                  |
|------------------------------------------|--------------------------------------------------|
| <input type="checkbox"/> Oxford Street   | <input type="checkbox"/> Houses of Parliament    |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tower of London | <input type="checkbox"/> Buckingham Palace       |
| <input type="checkbox"/> London Eye      | <input type="checkbox"/> Big Ben                 |
| <input type="checkbox"/> Tower Bridge    | <input type="checkbox"/> Madame Tussaud's Museum |



b) Circle the best word to complete these sentences.

1. The tour takes 2 / 3 / 4 hours. 2. At Madame Tussaud's you can see *maps of London* / *models of famous people* / *famous shops*. 3. Oxford Street is a famous street for *drinking tea* / *eating* / *shopping*. 4. The Queen lives at *Buckingham Palace* / *the Tower of London* / *Tower Bridge*. 5. Big Ben is a *tour guide* / *clock* / *bridge*. 6. You can see great views of London from *Oxford Street* / *the Houses of Parliament* / *London Eye*.

➤ How many of these sights has this tour visited? Why?

16

🎧 Listen to the directions and fill in the blanks.

- a. Start 1. \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet café. Go 2. \_\_\_\_\_ Main Street. Take 3. \_\_\_\_\_ street 4. \_\_\_\_\_ the right. It's 5. \_\_\_\_\_ the bookshop. It's the music shop.
- b. Start 6. \_\_\_\_\_ the bookshop. 7. \_\_\_\_\_ into South Street. 8. \_\_\_\_\_ the second street 9. \_\_\_\_\_. It's on the 10. \_\_\_\_\_. It's the chemist's.
- c. Start 11. \_\_\_\_\_ the railway station. Go 12. \_\_\_\_\_ ahead. You are 13. \_\_\_\_\_ South Street. It's 14. \_\_\_\_\_ the left, next 15. \_\_\_\_\_ the newsagent's. It's the post office.
- d. Start 16. \_\_\_\_\_ the school. You're 17. \_\_\_\_\_ Cambridge Street. Take 18. \_\_\_\_\_ on 19. \_\_\_\_\_. Go straight 20. \_\_\_\_\_. Take the second street 21. \_\_\_\_\_. It's 22. \_\_\_\_\_ the left. It's the cinema.
- e. Drive 23. \_\_\_\_\_ Farm Road, 24. \_\_\_\_\_ the farm and the pub, and turn 25. \_\_\_\_\_. Go 26. \_\_\_\_\_ the hill and 27. \_\_\_\_\_ the railway bridge. Turn left 28. \_\_\_\_\_ the park and go 29. \_\_\_\_\_ the hill 30. \_\_\_\_\_ the church. Turn right 31. \_\_\_\_\_ the church and go 32. \_\_\_\_\_ the road 33. \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic lights. Turn 34. \_\_\_\_\_ at the traffic lights and then turn 35. \_\_\_\_\_. It's 36. \_\_\_\_\_ the left. Meet you there.
- f. Leave the A34 37. \_\_\_\_\_ Apple Cross. Turn left 38. \_\_\_\_\_ the traffic lights. Then go 39. \_\_\_\_\_ the hill and 40. \_\_\_\_\_ the first bridge. Ok? Then go



41. \_\_\_\_\_ the second bridge and 42. \_\_\_\_\_ the road 43. \_\_\_\_\_ the river. Go 44. \_\_\_\_\_ the pub and 45. \_\_\_\_\_ right 46. \_\_\_\_\_ the hill. Go 47. \_\_\_\_\_ the corner 48. \_\_\_\_\_ the farm. And my cottage is 49. \_\_\_\_\_ the right.

g. You go 50. \_\_\_\_\_ the path, 51. \_\_\_\_\_ the pond, 52. \_\_\_\_\_ the bridge, and 53. \_\_\_\_\_ the gate. Then you go 54. \_\_\_\_\_ the road and take the path 55. \_\_\_\_\_ the wood. When you come 56. \_\_\_\_\_ the wood, you walk 57. \_\_\_\_\_ the path and 58. \_\_\_\_\_ the church. It takes 59. \_\_\_\_\_ minutes.



17

**Translate the following dialogues into English.**

1. – Вибачте. Можете мені допомогти?

– Так, з радістю.

– Мені потрібно доїхати до Ірпеня. Можете мені сказати, як туди дістатися?

– Так, звичайно. Спочатку ви повинні їхати на метро.

– Метро? Де воно знаходиться? В якому напрямку я повинен іти?

– Я раджу поїхати автобусом, так як метро знаходиться досить далеко звідси.



– А де автобусна зупинка?

– Вона недалеко. Перейдіть вулицю і на розі ви побачите зупинку. Ви можете сісти на автобус там. Краще сісти на 4<sup>й</sup> або 6<sup>й</sup>.

– Мені потрібно робити пересадку?

– Ні. Автобус йде прямо до метро.

– А скільки коштує проїзд?

– Близько 8 гривень. Ви можете заплатити за проїзд кондуктору або водію.

– Скільки часу триватиме поїздка?

– Близько 10 хвилин. Попросіть водія зупинитися біля метро. Потім спустіться до метро та купіть жетони у касі або в автоматі. Далі спускайтеся на платформу на ескалаторі та чекайте потяг.

– Де мені потрібно вийти?

– По-перше, вам потрібно зробити пересадку зі станції “Майдан Незалежності” на “Хрещатик”. А далі їхати до метро “Святошин”.

– А що там?

– Там залізнична станція. Вам слід купити білет у касі. Далі ви сядете на потяг і через 15 хвилин ви будете в Ірпені.

– І скільки коштує проїзд?

– Близько 8 гривень. І не викидайте квиток, тому що контролер захоче його перевірити.

- Дякую!
- Будь ласка.
- А ви не підкажете, коли прибуває потяг?
- На жаль, я не пам'ятаю розкладу. Але ви також можете поїхати на автобусі. Вийдіть на станції “Академмістечко”. Там є зупинка. Сядьте на 392<sup>й</sup> автобус. Він йде прямо до Ірпеня.
- Плата за проїзд висока?
- Дорожче. Коштує 17 гривень. Там зазвичай немає кондуктора, тому заплатіть водію.
- Дуже дякую!
- Нема за що.

2.



- Перепрошую, ви не могли б мені допомогти?
- Так, з радістю.
- Я тільки приїхав до Києва. Я боюся, що заблукав.
- Я спробую вам допомогти.
- Ви можете підказати, як дістатися до метро?
- Звісно. Вам слід йти прямо 2 картали, потім повернути направо. Там ви побачите ресторан швидкого харчування “Пузата Хата”. Метро знаходиться на протилежній стороні.
- Дякую. А як я зрозумію, що це метро?
- Ви легко його впізнаєте за великою літерою “М”.
- Дякую! А чи не могли б ви сказати, як мені краще дістатися до метро “Дружби Народів”?
- Ви можете дістатися туди за допомогою метро, автобуса чи маршрутки.
- Можете пояснити, як дістатися туди на метро та на маршрутці?
- Якщо ви хочете їхати на метро, то спустіться на платформу. Ця гілка червона, а вам необхідно буде перейти на зелену. Доїдете до станції “Театральна”, де ви зможете перейти на станцію “Золоті Ворота”.
- А скільки станцій мені треба їхати до “Дружби Народів”?
- 3 станції. Четверта буде ваша. Але я думаю, що автобусом буде швидше та комфортніше.
- Тоді розкажіть, будь ласка, як мені дістатися автобусом. Де я можу знайти найближчу автобусну зупинку?
- Перейдіть вулицю та йдіть прямо по вулиці Урицького, доки не побачите автобусну зупинку.
- А який номер автобуса мені потрібен?
- Я не знаю, але ви можете подивитися напрям на передньому склі автобуса.
- А ви не знаєте часом, як пройти до вулиці Підвисоцького?

- Ви щасливчик. Я знаю. Коли вийдете з автобуса, йдіть вздовж вулиці, потім поверніть праворуч, пройдіть супермаркет. У кінці кварталу побачите вулицю Підвисоцького.

18

🗨️ **Speak about the way you get from home to the university.**  
**You should:**

- 1. *Tell the way on foot to the nearest from your home metro station or bus/tram/trolleybus stop*
- 2. *Describe your trip by a certain means of transport to the university area in detail*
- 3. *Tell the way from the stop / station to the university building*



19

**Translate the following dialogues into English.**

1.



- Привіт. Скажи мені, як дістатися з університету до твого дому?
- Добре. Виходиш з університету і повертаєш ліворуч. Йдеш до перехрестя, повертаєш праворуч та переходиш дорогу. Потім йдеш прямо два квартали до станції метро “Олімпійська”.

- Чи потрібно мені їхати на метро?
- Так, ти їдеш на метро до станції “Виставковий центр”. Там ти маєш сісти на тролейбус.
- А як мені дістатися до зупинки тролейбуса?
- Коли вийдеш зі станції метро, поверни ліворуч. Іди вздовж вулиці Васильківська, потім поверни праворуч і пройди ще 50 метрів. Там побачиш зупинку тролейбуса.
- На який тролейбус я маю сісти?
- Сідай на тролейбус номер 2, 43 або 11.
- До якої зупинки мені їхати?
- Якщо сядеш на 2 або 43, виходь на зупинці “Одеська площа”. Спустися у підземний перехід і перейди на протилежну сторону. Потім іди по проспекту Глушкова повз торгівельний центр “Магеллан”. У кінці вулиці ти побачиш невелику церкву.
- А потім куди іти?
- Поверни ліворуч і на перехресті поверни праворуч та іди весь час прямо вздовж улиці Заболотного повз дві школи. На першому повороті справа ти побачиш мій дім.
- А якщо я сяду на 11 тролейбус, до якої зупинки мені їхати?

- Вийди на зупинці “Заболотного”. Йди в напрямку пошти. Перейди дорогу до зупинки маршрутного таксі.
- Потім я маю їхати маршрутною?
- Ні. Йди постійно прямо два квартали, потім поверни праворуч. Там побачиш мій дім.
- Добре. Дякую! До зустрічі!
- До зустрічі!

2.



- Вибачте, будь ласка. Ви не могли б мені підказати дорогу до лінгвістичного університету?
- Так, скажу, якщо ви мені скажете адресу.
- О, так. Вулиця Велика Васильківська, 73. Це далеко? Я зможу дістатися пішки?
- Ні. Це далеко. Вам краще сісти в метро або на маршрутку чи тролейбус. Але якщо ви хочете сісти на маршрутку, то необхідно поквапитися, тому що зараз час-пік.
- Де знаходиться найближча автобусна зупинка?
- Ідіть прямо приблизно 100 метрів, поверніть ліворуч і перейдіть Голосіївський проспект. Зліва від вас буде зупинка Михайла Стельмаха.
- Яка маршрутка чи тролейбус туди йде?
- Маршрутка 507 і плата 8 грн. І тролейбус 12, проїзд у якому коштує 8 грн. Але тролейбусом буде повільніше ніж маршрутною.
- Дякую. Але якщо я поїду зараз маршрутною, то я застрягну в пробці.
- Тому вам необхідно йти до станції метро.
- Це далеко?
- Ні. Лише один квартал донизу. Ідіть постійно прямо і ви побачите велику літеру “М”.
- Мені потрібно переходити на іншу лінію в метро?
- Ні. Потяг їде прямо до станції “Олімпійська”.
- Дуже дякую.
- Нема за що. Далі ви можете запитати дорогу. Але вона не важка. Просто йдіть прямо два квартали вгору і поверніть ліворуч.
- Дуже Вам дякую!
- Щасливої дороги!

3.



- Вибачте, будь ласка, ви не могли б мені підказати, як я можу дістатися до залізничного вокзалу? Я першокурсниця і приїхала подивитися на свою кімнату в гуртожитку, але дорогу на вокзал, на жаль, погано пам’ятаю.



- Звичайно, я допоможу вам. Якщо ви поспішаєте, то вам краще взяти таксі. Це буде дорожче, але швидше.
- Ні, я не спішу. Тим паче, я хочу краще запам'ятати дорогу від гуртожитку до залізничного вокзалу.
- Зрозуміло. Тоді йдіть від гуртожитку метрів 200 наліво і незабаром ви побачите ще один поворот наліво. Поверніть і йдіть вверх вулицею. На першому перехресті поверніть направо, пройдіть трішки вниз і справа ви одразу ж побачите автобусну зупинку.
- Добре. А далі мені як їхати? Краще автобусом чи тролейбусом?
- Я думаю, що краще автобусом, оскільки ним ви дістанетеся до вокзалу без пересадок.
- А можете сказати, будь ласка, який номер автобуса мені потрібен?
- Номер 10 або 539. Це один і той же автобус, просто краще, щоб ви знали обидва його номери на всяк випадок.
- А до залізничного вокзалу далеко? Коли мені потрібно виходити?
- Це кінцева зупинка. Тому можете не переживати, її ви точно не пропустите.
- Велике спасибі Вам за допомогу. А є ще якийсь спосіб туди доїхати?
- Ви можете сісти на 457 автобус і доїхати до метро.
- А до якого метро?
- Метро “Либідська”. Там вам потрібно буде зробити пересадку зі станції “Майдан Незалежності” на “Хрещатик” і звідти вже їхати на “Вокзальну”.
- Велике спасибі ще раз.
- Будь ласка. Удачі!

20

Fill in with *the Past Simple, the Past Continuous or the Past Perfect*.



Simon 1. \_\_\_\_\_ (*walk*) home from work the other day when he 2. \_\_\_\_\_ (*notice*) something shining on the other side of the road. A car 3. \_\_\_\_\_ (*come*) down the street, so he waited until it 4. \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) past. Then he 5. \_\_\_\_\_ (*cross*) over. When he 6. \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) to the other side, he 7. \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) that there was a shiny gold coin on the road! He 8. \_\_\_\_\_ (*look*) around to make sure no one 9. \_\_\_\_\_ (*watch*) him. Then, he 10. \_\_\_\_\_ (*bend*) down to pick it up. Imagine his surprise when he 11. \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/can*) move it! He 12. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) just about to give up when he 13. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hear*) a strange sound behind him. Someone 14. \_\_\_\_\_ (*laugh*) at him, but he couldn't see who it 15. \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*). Two little boys 16. \_\_\_\_\_ (*hide*) behind a hedge, laughing at anyone who tried to pick up the coin they 17. \_\_\_\_\_ (*stick*) to the road with glue!



21

Fill in *a*, *an* or *the* where necessary.

Dear Nicole,

Hi. How are you? My family and I just came back from Japan two days ago and we had such **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ fantastic time!

Japan is **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ extraordinary country rich in culture and tradition. We stayed at **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ traditional Japanese hotel in **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ Asakusa. This gave us the chance to experience Japanese customs and taste **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ local cuisine. Luckily, our hotel was only **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ fifteen-minute walk from **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ city centre.

Tokyo is **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ city full of modern architecture. First, we went to **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ Tokyo Tower from where we had **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ wonderful view of the city. Next, we went to **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ Tokyo National Museum, which has **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ enormous collection of Japanese Art. On the last day, we went shopping. Shopping is **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ extremely popular activity in Tokyo and not just for **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ travellers.

Well, that's all my news. Write back soon.

Jill

22

Put the verbs in brackets into the correct tense.

**1.** – Kim looked tired this morning. – I know. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) all night long.

**2.** – Sorry, I'm late. – Where have you been? I \_\_\_\_\_ (*expect*) you an hour ago.

**3.** – What you \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) at ten o'clock this morning? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*drive*) to an important meeting in my office. **4.** – Why are you so disappointed? – Because I \_\_\_\_\_ (*hope*) that I would pass my driving test, but I didn't. **5.** – Have

you found your bag yet? – No, but I \_\_\_\_\_ (*report*) it stolen to the police yesterday. **6.** – Did you enjoy the play last night? – No, even though I \_\_\_\_\_

(*read*) good reviews of it before I bought the tickets. **7.** – Have you written your report yet? – I \_\_\_\_\_ (*just/start*) when you came in, actually. **8.** – We \_\_\_\_\_

(*go*) to an antique market yesterday. – You \_\_\_\_\_ (*buy*) anything? **9.** – Were you surprised that the factory closed down? – Not really. In fact, I \_\_\_\_\_

(*know*) it was going to happen. **10.** – Julia did well in the driving test, didn't she? – Yes. She \_\_\_\_\_ (*study*) very hard for it. **11.** – Did you enjoy your holiday? – Yes. We \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) most of our time on the beach. **12.** – The

park looks awful. – Yes, that's terrible! People \_\_\_\_\_ (*leave*) litter everywhere! **13.** Louise usually \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to work by tube, but today she \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) there

in a chauffeur-driven limousine. The reason for this is that she just \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) the young businessperson award, and as part of the prize people \_\_\_\_\_ (*treat*)

her like royalty.



23

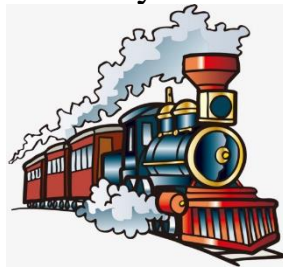
Put each verb in brackets into a suitable *past tense*.



This time last year I **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*cycle*) in the rain along a country road in France with a friend of mine. We **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*decide*) to go on a cycling holiday in Normandy. Neither of us **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to France before, but we **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*know*) some French from our time at school and we **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*manage*) to brush up on the basics. Now we **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*wonder*) if we **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*make*) the right decision. We **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*plan*) our route carefully in advance, but we **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*forget*) one important thing, the weather. It **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*rain*) solidly since our arrival and that night we **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*end up*) sleeping in the waiting room at the railway station. Then the next morning as we **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*ride*) down a steep hill, my bike **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*skid*) on the wet road and I **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*fall off*). I **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*realize*) immediately that I **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*break*) my arm, and after a visit to the local hospital, I **17.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*catch*) the next train to Calais for the ferry home. Unfortunately my parents **18.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/expect*) me home for a fortnight, and **19.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) away on holiday. So I **20.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*spend*) a miserable couple of weeks alone, reading *Teach Yourself French*.

24

Fill in the correct tense forms.



Kevin Adams **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*love*) trains. He first **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) one when he was four years old and he **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*think*) it was great. He **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to a different railway station every week and **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*write down*) the engine number of every train he sees. He **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*do*) this since he was eight. By the time he was fifteen he **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*collect*) over ten thousand different engine numbers in various counties. Once, while he **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*stand*) in a station in Cheshire, he saw something very unusual. He **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*wait*) for over an hour for a train to go by when suddenly he **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) a very old steam train coming down the track. It **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*not/stop*) at the station and, as it passed, Kevin noticed that all the passengers **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*wear*) old-fashioned clothes. When he told the station guard about this, the poor man **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) pale. He said that no steam train **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*pass*) through that station for years, and that the last one **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*crash*), killing everyone on board.

Fill in the verbs either in the *Infinitive* or *Gerund*.



My brother wanted **1.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the cinema with me. He suggested **2.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) later that evening. In the afternoon I decided **3.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) and **4.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) my friend. I promised **5.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*get*) home in time. I enjoyed **6.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*see*) my friend. We decided **7.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) tennis. We both managed **8.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*win*) some games. We finished **9.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*play*) quite late, just as it was getting dark. On the way home I avoided **10.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) on the motorway. I forgot **11.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*turn*) right at the traffic lights and I got completely lost. When the police stopped me, I denied **12.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) too fast. I admitted **13.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) lost. I dislike **14.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*be*) lost. In the end the police agreed **15.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*let*) me go. I got home far too late, but I offered **16.** \_\_\_\_\_ (*go*) to the cinema with my brother on a different evening.

## ENGLISH LANGUAGE EXAM TOPICS

1. My native city / town / village.
2. Advantages and disadvantages of living in the countryside.
3. Advantages and disadvantages of living in the city.
4. Public transport in London.
5. Public transport in Kyiv. (Travelling by Kyiv city transport.)
6. How to travel by Kyiv / London Underground.
7. Describe a trip that you took by public transport.
8. Different ways of getting around the city.
9. Traffic rules.
10. My way home.





## GRAMMAR REFERENCE

### Classification of Nouns

According to their lexical meaning nouns fall under two classes:

**Common nouns** (загальні назви)

**Proper nouns** (власні назви)

**Common nouns** are names applied to any individual of a class of persons or things, collections of similar individuals or things regarded as a unit, materials or abstract notions. They are subdivided into:

- ❖ **class nouns** (конкретні іменники)
- ❖ **collective nouns** (збірні іменники)
- ❖ **material nouns** (речовинні іменники)
- ❖ **abstract nouns** (абстрактні іменники)

1. **Class nouns** denote living beings or things belonging to a class, such as *a man, a dog, a book*. They are countable. They can have a singular and plural form.

2. **Collective nouns** denote a number of persons or things collected together to form a single unit. They are subdivided into:

a) Nouns that are used in both numbers: *a family, a company, a team*. They are countable.

When these nouns are used in singular, they may be followed by the verb either in the singular or in the plural. The verb is singular if the collective noun is thought of as a single unit. The verb is plural if the collective noun is thought of as a collection of separate individuals:

*My family is my everything.*

*My family are sitting at the table and drinking tea.*

b) Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are singular in form and singular in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *furniture, money, youth*.

c) Nouns that are used only in the plural. They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *goods, belongings, looks*. Very often they are nouns formed from other parts of speech.

d) Nouns that are used only in the plural. These are names of things consisting of two similar parts (halves). They are plural in form and plural in meaning. They are uncountable, e.g., *scales, trousers, shorts*.

e) Nouns of multitude that are singular in form but plural in meaning. They are uncountable and followed by plural verbs, e.g., *people, police*.

f) Nouns that are used only in the singular. They are plural in form but singular in meaning. They are uncountable. These are names of some subjects, games and activities, e.g., *maths, phonetics, aerobics*.

3. **Material nouns** denote materials, such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*. They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

4. **Abstract nouns** denote notions (*science, information*), qualities (*beauty, humour*), actions (*work, conversation*), feelings and emotions (*joy, love, anger*). They are uncountable and used only in the singular.

**Proper nouns** are names given to individuals of a class to distinguish them from other individuals of the same class: 1) personal names; 2) geo names; 3) months, days; 4) hotels, streets, etc.

## Countable Nouns Plural of Nouns

Countable nouns denote things or individuals that can be counted. Countables have two numbers – **the singular** and **the plural**.

1. Normally nouns form the plural by adding **-s** to the singular form. This plural ending is pronounced as:

❖ /z/ after voiced consonants and vowels – *beds, bees, flowers, ladys*;

❖ /s/ after voiceless consonants – *books, caps*;

❖ /ɪz/ after sibilants – *noses, horses, bridges*.

2. If the noun ends in **-s, -ss, -x, -sh, -ch, -tch**, the plural is formed by adding **-es** to the singular stem. This plural ending is pronounced as /ɪz/:

*a bus – buses*

*a glass – glasses*

*a bench – benches*

*a box – boxes*

*a bush – bushes*

*a match – matches*

3. If the noun stem ends in **-y**:

**Consonant + y = y → i + es**

**Vowel + y = y + s**

*a fly – flyes, an army – armyies;*

*a monkey – monkeys, a boy – boys.*

4. If a noun ends in **-o**:

**Consonant + o = o + es**

**Vowel + o = o + s**

*a potato – potatoes, a hero – heroes;*

*a radio – radios, a cuckoo – cuckoos.*

**But:** *a piano – pianos (піаніно); a solo – solos (сольний номер); a photo – photos (фотографія); kilo – kilos (кілограм).*

5. If a noun ends in **-f(e)**:

**f(e) → v + es /vz/**

*a knife – knifes, a wife – wifes, a wolf – wolfes.*

But there are some nouns in which there is no change:



*a chief – chiefs* (начальник)      *a gulf – gulfs* (затока)  
*a roof – roofs* (дах)      *a kerchief – kerchiefs* (хусточка)  
*a belief – beliefs* (віра)      *a safe – safes* (сейф)  
*a handkerchief – handkerchiefs* (носова хусточка)

There are some nouns which have two forms:

*a scarf – scarfs/scarves* (шарф)  
*a hoof – hoofs/hooves* (копито)  
*a wharf – wharfs/wharves* (пристань).

6. The plural forms of some nouns are survivals of earlier formations.

a) There are 7 nouns which form the plural by changing the root vowel:

*a man – men* (чоловік)      *a goose – geese* (гуска)  
*a woman – women* (жінка)      *a mouse – mice* (миша)  
*a foot – feet* (ступня)      *a louse – lice* (воша)  
*a tooth – teeth* (зуб)

b) There are 3 nouns which form the plural in **-en**:

*an ox – oxen* (бик)  
*a child – children* (дитина)  
*a brother – brethren* (брат (реліг.))

c) In some nouns the plural form does not differ from the singular (they have the same form):

*a deer – deer* (олень)      *a means – means* (засіб)  
*a fish – fish* (риба)  
*a sheep – sheep* (вівця)      *a series – series* (серія)  
*a swine – swine* (свиня)      *a species – species* (вид)  
*a trout – trout* (форель)  
*an aircraft – aircraft* (літак)

d) Some nouns from **Latin** and **Greek** retain their original forms:

<b>a</b> /ə/ → <b>ae</b> /i:/	<i>an antenn<u>a</u> – antenn<u>ae</u>, a formul<u>a</u> – formul<u>ae</u>;</i>
<b>ex(ix)</b> /ks/ → <b>ices</b> /si:z/	<i>an appendix – appendix<u>es</u>, an index – index<u>es</u>;</i>
<b>is</b> /ɪs/ → <b>es</b> /i:z/	<i>a basis – bas<u>es</u>, a thesis – thes<u>es</u>;</i>
<b>on</b> /ən/ → <b>a</b> /ə/	<i>a criteri<u>on</u> – criteri<u>a</u>, a phenomen<u>on</u> – phenomen<u>a</u>;</i>
<b>um</b> /əm/ → <b>a</b> /ə/	<i>a medi<u>um</u> – medi<u>a</u>, a curricul<u>um</u> – curricul<u>a</u>;</i>
<b>us</b> /əs/ → <b>i</b> /aɪ/	<i>a cact<u>us</u> – cact<u>i</u>, a nucle<u>us</u> – nucle<u>i</u>;</i>
<b>o</b> /əʊ/ → <b>i</b> /i:/	<i>a temp<u>o</u> – temp<u>i</u>.</i>

7. In compound nouns the plural is formed in different ways.

a) if a noun is non-hyphenated, the last word is used in the plural:

*a housewife – housewives, an onlooker – onlookers, a postman – postmen.*



**b)** if the noun is hyphenated, the main meaningful word (the head word) is used in the plural:

*a brother-in-law – brothers-in-law, an editor-in-chief – editors-in-chief.*

**c)** if there is no noun stem in the compound, **-s** is added to the last element:

*a forget-me-not – forget-me-nots, a merry-go-round – merry-go-rounds.*

**d)** if the first word of the compound is man or woman, both words are used in the plural:

*a man-servant – men-servants, a woman-doctor – women-doctors.*

## Uncountable Nouns

Uncountable nouns denote objects that cannot be counted. The uncountable nouns are subdivided into the so-called *singularia tantum* and *pluralia tantum*.

**1. Singularia tantum** are nouns used only in the singular in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular. Here belong the following:

**a) material nouns** such as *air, water, paper, cotton, leather*:

*Sugar is sweet.*

**b) abstract nouns** such as *love, courage, weather, traffic*:

*The traffic is very heavy here.*

Some abstract nouns are used only in the singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian: *advice* (порада – поради), *information* (інформація – відомості), *knowledge* (знання), *progress* (успіх – успіхи):

*Your advice was the best. – Твої поради були найкращі.*

**c) some collective nouns** such as *linen, equipment, luggage, furniture, currency, money, machinery*:

*There is a lot of equipment in this chemistry-lab.*

The nouns *money* (гроші) and *furniture* (меблі) are singular in English, but plural in Ukrainian:

*I don't need this money. – Мені не потрібні ці гроші.*

*This furniture is broken. – Ці меблі зламані.*

**Note** that these uncountable nouns can be made countable by means of partitives:

*a piece of cake/information/advice/furniture; a glass/bottle of water; a jar of jam; a rasher of bacon; a box of chocolates; a packet of biscuits/tea; a slice/loaf of bread; a pot of yoghurt; a pot/cup of tea; a kilo/pound of meat; a bottle of vinegar, a tube of toothpaste; a bar of chocolate/soap; a bit/piece of chalk; an ice cube/scoop; a lump of sugar; a sheet of paper; a bag of flour; a pair of trousers; a game of soccer; a(n) item/piece of news; a drop/can of oil; a can of Coke; a carton of milk; a block of wood, a scoop of ice-cream.*

**NB:** Some of the above-mentioned nouns can be used in the singular and in the plural, but they have different meanings. Compare:

<i>This glass is transparent. (скло)</i>	<i>I'd like 3 glasses of juice. (склянка)</i>
<i>I have no time. (час)</i>	<i>I met him two times. (раз)</i>
<i>Her hair is wonderful. (волосся)</i>	<i>I see a hair in my plate. (волосина)</i>
<i>I have no paper. (папір)</i>	<i>I need a paper. (газета)</i>

**d)** Some nouns are plural in forms but singular in meanings. Their final **-s** loses the meaning of the plural inflexion and the nouns are treated as singular. Here belong names of some subjects, games and activities: *athletics* (атлетика, гімнастика), *economics* (економіка), *linguistics* (мовознавство, лінгвістика), *mathematics* (математика), *news* (новина, новини, звістка, вісті), *phonetics* (фонетика), *physics* (фізика), *classics* (класична література), *politics* (політика), *statistics* (статистика), *aerobics* (аеробіка), *billiards* (більярд), *dominoes* (доміно), *draughts* (шашки), *darts* (дартс, дротики), *bowls* (гра в кулі), *cards* (карти), *skittles* (кегли).

But when these nouns don't refer to subjects of study and activities, they may be used in plural:

*The statistics are not accurate. – Статистичні данні (цифри) не є точними.*  
*His politics are rude. – Його політичні дії дуже грубі.*

**2. Pluralia tantum** are nouns used only in the plural in English. They agree with the predicate verb in the plural. Here belong the following:

**a)** Names of things consisting of two similar halves. Here belong nouns which refer to clothes, tools and other things that people wear or use: *scales* (ваги), *scissors* (ножиці), *spectacles / glasses* (окуляри), *binoculars* (бінокль), *tweezers* (пінцет), *handcuffs* (наручники), *rujamas* (піжама), *trousers* (штани), *jeans* (джинси).

*Her jeans are black. – Її джинси чорні.*

If we want to refer to a single piece of clothing or a single tool, we can use “**some**” or “**a pair of**” in front of the noun:

*She has a new pair of jeans. – В неї є нова пара джинс.*

*She bought three pairs of tights. – Вона купила три пари панчіх.*

**b)** some **collective nouns** such as: *clothes* (одяг, речі), *contents* (зміст), *goods* (товар, товари), *proceeds* (виторг, прибуток), *riches* (багатство, скарби), *wages* (заробітна плата), *expenses* (затрати, витрати), *looks* (зовнішній вигляд), *greens* (зелень, овочі), *troops* (війська), *remains* (залишок, рештки), *premises* (будинок з прилеглою територією), *stairs* (сходи, тран).

These nouns may have both forms in Ukrainian:

*These traffic-lights are not working. – Цей світлофор не працює. або*  
*Ці світлофори не працюють.*

c) Nouns of multitude *people* (люди), *police* (міліція, поліція), *cattle* (велика рогата худоба), *poultry* (домашня птиця). These nouns are singular in form but plural in meaning:

*Do the police know about him? – Чи знає поліція про нього?*

d) The nouns *fruit* (фрукт) and *fish* (риба) are singular in English, but have both forms in Ukrainian. They agree with the predicate verb in the singular:

*Fruit is cheap in summer.*

**Note** that the plural is used to speak about different kinds of fruit:

*There are apples, plums and other fruits on the table.*

### Some – Any – No – Not Any – Every

	Adjectives	Pronouns	Adverbs	
		people	things	places
+	<b>some</b> <b>any</b>	<b>someone/somebody</b> <b>anyone/anybody</b>	<b>something</b> <b>anything</b>	<b>somewhere</b> <b>anywhere</b>
?	<b>any</b>	<b>anyone/anybody</b>	<b>anything</b>	<b>anywhere</b>
-	<b>no/</b> <b>not any</b>	<b>no one/not anyone</b> <b>nobody/not anybody</b>	<b>nothing</b> <b>not anything</b>	<b>nowhere</b> <b>not anywhere</b>
+ - ?	<b>every</b>	<b>everybody/everyone</b> <i>(all the people)</i>	<b>everything</b> <i>(all the things)</i>	<b>everywhere</b> <i>(in all the places)</i>

❖ **Some** is normally used in a positive sentence before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns:

*There's **some** cheese left.*

**Some** is also used in questions when we want to make an offer, a request or when we expect a positive answer:

*Would you like **some** hot chocolate?*

*Could I have **some** cake, please?*

*Did you buy **some** oranges? (= I expect you bought.)*

❖ **Any** is normally used before uncountable nouns or plural countable nouns in questions:

*Are there **any** more apples?*

**Any** and its compounds can be used after **if** in a positive sentence:

*I doubt if **anyone** can help me.*

**Any** can also be used in positive sentences meaning **it doesn't matter when/which/who/where**:

*You can come **any** day you want.*

*You can go **anywhere** you want.*

❖ **No/Not any** are used before plural countable nouns or uncountable nouns in negations:

*There is **no** cheese left. or There **isn't any** cheese left.*

**Any** is always used after negative words (*hardly, never, without, seldom, rarely*):

*There's **hardly any** food left.*

❖ **Every** is used before singular countable nouns. **Every** and its compounds take a verb in the singular:

***Every** student has a task. (=all the students)*

***Everything** is ready for the wedding. (=all the things)*

❖ The above-mentioned rules apply to the compounds of **some/any/no/every**:

*There's **someone** in the office.*

### The Possessive Case of Nouns

To show possession, we can use both the *of + noun* and *the possessive case*. English nouns denoting living beings (and some nouns denoting lifeless things) have two cases the *common case* and the *possessive case*.

To make the possessive case of nouns in writing, we add 's (*apostrophe s*) to singular nouns and to irregular plurals that don't end in -s:

***Philip's** car, **the women's** hats*

We add ' (an apostrophe) to regular plurals (which end in -s):

***the boys'** football boots*

***the girls'** room*

***the Carters'** house*

<i>possessive 's</i> is used:	<i>of + noun</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> for people and animals <i><b>Tom's</b> sister</i> <i><b>the cat's</b> tail</i>	<b>1.</b> for things, ideas <i>the name <b>of the</b> book</i> <i>the handle <b>of the</b> bag</i>
<b>2.</b> for a group of people and organizations <i><b>the team's</b> success</i> <i><b>the company's</b> decision</i>	<b>2.</b> for a group of people and organizations <i>the success <b>of the</b> team</i> <i>the decision <b>of the</b> company</i>
<b>3.</b> for places <i><b>the city's</b> streets</i> <i><b>the world's</b> population</i> <i><b>Kyiv's</b> parks</i>	<b>3.</b> for places <i>the streets <b>of the</b> city</i> <i>the population <b>of the</b> world</i> <i>the parks <b>of</b> Kyiv</i>

	When we are talking about a process, or a change over time only this construction is possible: <i>the reconstruction of the airport</i>
4. with time expressions <i>yesterday's newspaper</i> <i>tomorrow's meeting</i> <i>Monday's lesson</i>	
5. with periods of time, distance, weight <i>ten minutes' walk</i> <i>three miles' trip</i> <i>nine kilos' bag</i>	

**Notes:**

- ❖ We can use 's after more than one noun:

*Peter and Mary's wedding*

*Mr and Mrs John's house*

- ❖ To make the possessive form of names ending in -s we can add either ' or 's:

*It's Derek Jones' (or Derek Jones's) new sports car.*

- ❖ The noun following a possessive form can be left out when we talk about someone's home or some shops and services, e.g., *the newsagent's*, *the chemist's*, *the hairdresser's*:

*We're going to Linda's for the evening. (= Linda's home)*

*I must go to the butcher's this morning. (= the butcher's shop)*

We also usually leave out the noun when the meaning is clear in cases like:

*"Whose hat is this?" – "Richard's." (rather than Richard's hat.)*

This is the so-called **absolute possessive**.

- ❖ We use **of + possessive case/possessive pronoun** when there is a determiner (*this*, *some*, etc.) before the noun:

*That's a poem of Steve's. (= one of Steve's poem)*

*They have some books of mine. (= some of my books)*

- ❖ When the noun is a long noun phrase, we prefer to use **of + noun**:

*What is the name of the man who phoned you?*

## Special Subject-Verb Agreement Rules

1. Phrases and clauses which come between the subject and the verb do not change the number of the subject:

*The picture of his classmates **pleases** him.*

2. Some pronouns take singular verbs even though the pronouns may seem plural in meaning. These pronouns include:

<i>anybody</i>	<i>nobody</i>	<i>somebody</i>	<i>everybody</i>	<i>each</i>
<i>anyone</i>	<i>none</i>	<i>someone</i>	<i>everyone</i>	<i>either</i>
<i>anything</i>	<i>nothing</i>	<i>something</i>	<i>everything</i>	<i>neither</i>

*Everybody **likes** this pie.*

3. When subjects are joined by *either/or*, *neither/nor*, *not only/but also*, the verb agrees with the closer subject:

*Not only the teacher but also the students **are going** to the conference.*

4. When subjects are joined by *and* or by *both/and*, they take a plural verb:

*Both Ann and Fred **are coming** tonight.*

5. *None*, *all*, *some*, *any*, *most*, *majority* and other similar expressions can take either a singular or a plural verb depending on the noun that comes after them:

*None of the sugar **was** eaten. None of the students **were** pleased.*

6. *Several*, *both*, *many*, *few* are plural words which need plural verbs:

*Few **were** present at the last meeting.*

7. A *number of* requires a plural verb. *The number of* requires a singular verb:

*A number of my friends **were** here last night.*

*The number of books **is** limited.*

8. In sentences beginning with *it*, the verb should be singular:

*It is his problems at work that **are** bothering him.*

9. In sentences beginning with *there* or *here*, the verb agrees with the real subject which comes after the verb:

*Here are the pictures you wanted.*

10. A *pair of*, *a flock of*, *a herd of* and other expressions indicating group of things or animals take singular verbs even though nouns used with them will be plural:

*A pair of swans **mates** for life.*

11. The verbs in relative clauses agree with the nouns that their head relative words replace:

*The professor and the students, who **were working** together, wrote this article.*



**12.** Some nouns which look plural are really singular and take singular verbs. These words include: *news*, *politics*, *mathematics*, etc.:

*Linguistics is his major.*

**13.** Some nouns, which look singular, are really plural and take plural verbs. These nouns include those for which the singular and the plural form are the same:

*The magazine series are all located in the reference section of the library.*

*This television series is a popular one.*

**14.** Expressions showing quantities of time, money, weight, and volume look plural but take singular verbs:

*Three days is enough time to finish this project.*

**15.** Nouns that refer to a country or a nationality can be singular or plural. When one of these words refers to a language, it is singular; when to the people of a country, it is plural:

*French is a difficult language.*

*The French are interesting people.*

## The Article

The article is a structural part of speech used as a determiner with nouns. There are two articles in Modern English: the **indefinite** article and the **definite** article.

**The indefinite article** is used only with nouns in the singular and has the forms *a* and *an*. The form *a* is used before words beginning with a consonant sound, e.g., *a book* /ə'buk/, *a university* /ə ˌju:nɪ'vɜ:sɪti/.

The form *an* is used before words beginning with a vowel sound, e.g., *an apple* /ən'æpl/, *an hour* /ən'auə/. This article is usually unstressed and pronounced /ə/, /ən/; when stressed it is pronounced /æn/.

**The definite article** has one graphic form **the**, which is pronounced in two ways: /ði/ before a vowel sound, e.g., *an apple* /ði'æpl/, and /ðə/ before a consonant sound, e.g., *a book* /ðə'buk/. The use of the definite article shows that a particular object is meant.

These two articles are related to other determiners in the following way: **the** = *this*, *that*, *the same*; **a (an)** = *some*, *any*, *such*.

The absence of articles (sometimes called “**zero**” **article**) with class nouns in the plural, with abstract nouns and nouns of material has grammatical significance: it shows that the nouns are used in a general sense.

## The Use of the Indefinite Article with Class Nouns

Class nouns are used with the indefinite article:

1. When the speaker mentions a noun (which is countable) for the first time:

*For lunch I usually have a sandwich and an apple.*

It is also used in sentences beginning with “*there is/was*”:

*There is a newspaper on the table.*

2. When the speaker presents the object expressed by the noun as belonging to a certain class. In this case the indefinite article has the meaning of “*який-небудь*”, “*якийсь*”, “*один*”, “*деякий*”:

*A man and a woman are sitting opposite us.*

*We saw a house with a lawn in front of it.*

In the plural we can use *some*, *a few*, *several* instead of *a/an* or no article is used in this case.

*(Some) men and (a few) women are sitting opposite us.*

*I like the room because there are flowers in it.*

3. With a predicative noun, when the speaker states that the object denoted by the noun belongs to a certain class (it is one of a class and has the meaning of “*один з багатьох*”):

*My husband is a sailor.*

*Tom is a very nice person.*

In the plural neither the article nor the pronoun *some* is used:

*They are good children, no doubt.*

4. When the noun is used in a general sense. The article has the meaning of “*every*” and indicates that the following noun denotes a typical member of a class:

*A cat is a domestic animal. (= Every cat is a domestic animal.)*

In this case plural nouns are used without any articles:

*Cats are domestic animals.*

5. There are cases when the indefinite article preserves its old original meaning of “*one*”:

*An hour in the morning is worth two in the evening.*

This meaning is generally found with:

❖ nouns denoting time, measure and weight:

*A week or two passed.*

*I'll come back in a minute.*

❖ in certain expressions of quantity:

*a lot of, a couple, a great many, etc.*

❖ in the pattern *a...of* with possessives, as in:

*She's a colleague of mine.*

*That's a friend of Bill's.*

❖ after a negative **not**:

*not a word, not a thought, etc.*

❖ in some set-phrases: *one at a time, at a draught*

❖ the numerals **hundred**, **thousand**, **million** and the nouns **dozen**, **score**:

*My new car cost a thousand pounds.*

❖ in expressions of price, speed, ratio, etc.:

*5p a kilo*

*four times a day*

*10p a dozen*

*60 kilometers an hour (an = per)*

However, we use **one** rather than **a/an** if we want to emphasize that we are talking about only one person or thing rather than two or more:

*Do you want one sandwich or more?*

*Are you staying just one night?*

With nouns in the plural **some** is used:

*Oliver kept silence for some minutes.*

**Note 1.** We use **one**, not **a/an** in the pattern **one...other/another**:

*Close one eye, and then the other.*

*Bees carry pollen from one plant to another.*

**Note 2.** We use **one** with the words **day**, **week**, **month**, **year**, **night**, **winter**, etc. or with specific day or month to say when something happened to mean a particular, but unspecified day, evening, winter, etc.:

*One summer, our family decided to go to the Crimea.*

We can use **one day** to refer to the future:

*One day, you will regret this.*

**6.** Before singular countable nouns after **such** and in exclamations after **what**:

*What a lovely day today!*

*It's such an interesting idea, isn't it?*

***But:** What pretty girls!*

**7.** Nouns with the indefinite article are used after **quite** and **rather**:

*It's quite a long story and not a nice one.*

*He was rather a curious man to look at.*

Sometimes **quite** and **rather** can be placed after the indefinite article (especially in AmE):

*He is a rather clever man.*

*It's a quite important problem.*

**8.** Nouns with the indefinite article follow **many** (the verb is used in the singular):

*Many an evening he sat staring at the fire.*

**9.** The indefinite article is also used in various descriptions:

*He's got a long face and a turned-up nose.*

## The Use of the Definite Article with Class Nouns

The definite article is used both with singular and plural nouns.

Class nouns are used with the definite article:

1. When the speaker mentions a noun for the second time:

*For lunch I had a sandwich and an apple. The sandwich wasn't very nice.*

2. When the speaker and the hearer know what particular object is meant. No special indication is necessary:

*What do you think of the table? (= the table we are looking at)*

*How did you like the play?*

3. When the speaker uses an attribute pointing out a particular object:

*This is the house that Jack built.*

4. When the situation itself makes the object definite and when the speaker wants to talk about something that is associated with an earlier item:

*The wedding looked dismal. The bride was too old.*

*I went to the window again to try to smash the glass. (the glass in the window)*

5. When the noun denotes the object or group of objects, which is unique or considered to be unique.

Here are some words, which belong to this group:

*the devil*

*the north pole*

*the solar system*

*the universe*

*the earth*

*the planets*

*the south pole*

*the world*

*the equator*

*the pope*

*the stars*

*the moon*

*the sky*

*the sun*

*The sun was getting warmer.*

6. With nouns used in a generic sense. A noun becomes a composite image (збірний образ) of the class and is used to talk about the general features and characteristics of a class of things:

*The telephone was invented in the 19<sup>th</sup> century.*

*The tragedy and the comedy first appeared in Greece.*

**Note.** Groups of nouns which are used generically: names of animals, plants, professions and occupations, collective nouns denoting social groups, scientific terms, etc.:

*The verb is a part of speech.*

The noun **people** is used with the definite article when the idea of collectivity is emphasized (meaning “all the persons forming a state”). When this noun means “persons, human beings in general”, it has no article:

*The Ukrainian people are very hospitable.*

*People often believe in fairy tales.*

A noun used in a generic sense should not be confused with a noun used in a general sense:

<b>The</b>	1. <i>The lion is a wild animal.</i> 2. <i>Conan Doyle is a master of the detective story.</i>	<b>The</b> emphasizes the <i>class itself</i> , without regard for concrete representatives of the class.
<b>A</b>	1. <i>A lion is a wild animal.</i> 2. <i>A detective story helps to while away the time.</i>	<b>A</b> emphasizes an individual representative of a class. It has the sense of <i>any</i> or <i>every</i> .
<b>No article</b>	1. <i>Lions are wild animals.</i> 2. <i>Detective stories are very popular with people.</i>	The plural form without an article emphasizes <i>all</i> the representatives of this class.

7. When nouns are modified by adjectives in the superlative degree and by ordinal numerals:

*Mary had the softest voice in the class.*

8. With nouns in word-groups the first component of which is *some*, *many*, *none*, *most* and the second – a noun with the preposition *of*. Often, *of the* makes the situation specific:

*Most of the students looked both angry and uncomfortable.*

9. When nouns are modified by adjectives which are used to identify unique things:

*I began the last section of the book.*

Here is a list of adjectives, which are used in this way:

<i>following</i>	<i>next</i>	<i>present</i>	<i>same</i>	<i>usual</i>
<i>last</i>	<i>only</i>	<i>principal</i>	<i>sole</i>	<i>wrong</i>
<i>main</i>	<i>opposite</i>	<i>right</i>	<i>ultimate</i>	<i>past</i>

**Note 1.** The indefinite article can be used before “*only*” when it is used in the expressions “only child”, “only son”, and “only daughter”:

*I was an only child.*

**Note 2.** “*Next*” and “*last*” are commonly used in time expressions without *the*:

*I’m flying next week. I saw them last month.*

10. With substantivized adjectives and participles.

A combination of the definite article and substantivized adjective can be used to refer to all the people with that characteristic. “The poor” means people who are poor.

Many adjectives can be used in this way; here are some common ones:

<i>aged</i>	<i>educated</i>	<i>injured</i>	<i>powerful</i>	<i>unemployed</i>
<i>blind</i>	<i>elderly</i>	<i>living</i>	<i>rich</i>	<i>weak</i>
<i>brave</i>	<i>free</i>	<i>needy</i>	<i>sick</i>	<i>wealthy</i>
<i>dead</i>	<i>handicapped</i>	<i>old</i>	<i>starving</i>	<i>wounded</i>
<i>deaf</i>	<i>homeless</i>	<i>oppressed</i>	<i>strong</i>	<i>young</i>
<i>disabled</i>	<i>hungry</i>	<i>poor</i>	<i>uneducated</i>	

**Note.** They behave like nouns in the plural and are followed by a plural verb:

*The aged have many problems with health.*

**11.** With collective nouns denoting social groups:

*The workers have nothing to lose.*

**12.** With nationality words when referring to nations or racial groups:

*The Chinese have their own version of this proverb.*

*It seems to me that the British are too often their own worst critics.*

When separate representatives are meant, the definite article is not used:

*Italians are good singers.*

**Note.** These words always begin with a capital letter; and they are followed by the plural form of a verb even if they do not look plural.

**13.** At the beginning of stories, in titles of stories and novels:

*“The Enemy”, “The Letter”.*

This is a stylistic device. The author indicates in this way that the reader will shortly be told more about these things.

### **The Use of Articles with Class Nouns Modified by Attributes**

In accordance with their role in the choice of articles attributes may be divided into **particularizing** (or **limiting**) and **descriptive**.

A **particularizing attribute** is used to single out an object from all the objects of the class, to point out one particular object or group of objects. The use of a particularizing attribute implies the idea of “*той, який*”; “*саме мої*”; “*мої саме*”. It makes the noun definite. So, the definite article is used with this kind of attribute:

*Look at picture 5 at the top of page 43.*

*I want to get back to the hotel where he was staying.*

*Where is the book I gave you last week?*

*He knocked at the door of a very neat house.*

A **descriptive attribute** is used to describe an object or to give some additional information about it. This kind of attribute does not single out an object (or a group of objects) but only narrows the class to which it belongs:

*He wrote a novel.*

*He wrote a good novel.*

*He wrote a good historical novel.*

*In a fortnight I got a long letter, which I considered odd.*

### **The Use of Articles with Material Nouns**

**1.** With nouns of material (substances) used in a general sense, when a certain material as such is meant, no article is used:

*I like coffee, I don't drink tea.*



2. Nouns of substances modified by a descriptive attribute are used with the zero article as well. A descriptive attribute only narrows the notion denoted by a noun without specifying it:

*There was not a single thing made of real wood in the room: everything was made of metal and plastic.*

3. When a definite part of the substance is meant (when the noun is modified by a particularizing attribute or is made definite by the situation), the definite article is used:

*The tea is too hot. I can't drink it.*

*The meat you prepared yesterday was very delicious.*

4. When an indefinite part of the substance is meant, **some** is used:

*We took some bread and cheese with us, and got some milk.*

5. Nouns of material denoting different sorts of material are countable and the articles are used according to the general use of articles with class nouns.

Names of materials become countable nouns in the following cases:

❖ when various sorts of food products are meant:

*We can buy different cheeses here.*

❖ when a portion of food or drink is meant:

*If you want to please the boy, buy him an ice-cream.*

*We went into the cafe and I ordered two coffees.*

6. Some collective nouns denoting a group of objects thought of as a whole, behave like names of substances. Among them are *furniture, equipment, machinery, crockery, hardware, silverware, china, luggage, baggage*, etc. Such nouns follow the rules of the use of articles for names of substances:

*I need furniture.*

*The furniture which I bought a few days ago was very expensive.*

### **The Use of Articles with Abstract Nouns**

Abstract nouns fall into two classes: **countables** and **uncountables**.

The use of articles with countable abstract nouns does not differ from their use with countable concrete nouns – in the singular countable abstract nouns are used with the indefinite or definite article; in the plural they are used without any article or with the definite article:

*He told the child a story.*

*He told the child stories.*

*The child knew the story he told.*

*The child knew the stories he told.*

## The Use of Articles with Uncountable Abstract Nouns

1. As a general rule, uncountable abstract nouns are used without any article:

*There was silence for a few moments.*

*Light was coming into the cellar from somewhere.*

2. The definite article is used with uncountable nouns when they are modified by a particularizing attribute or when the situation makes the idea definite. The definite article is used here to denote a particular instance of the notion expressed by the noun:

*Andrew was the first to break the silence.*

*The silence in the room was oppressive.*

*The light was shaded; his mother was sitting in the corner of the room.*

3. The definite article is also found with substantivized adjectives denoting abstract notions: *the ordinary, the average, the beautiful, the unusual, the supernatural, the extravagant, the unknown, the regrettable, the normal, the unbearable*, etc.:

*“You shouldn’t think you’re something out of the ordinary”, she said.*

*“Do you believe in the supernatural?”, he asked.*

To this group also belong nouns always used with the definite article as *the present, the past, the future, the singular, the plural*:

*He is certain nothing will happen in the near future.*

*He told strange stories of the past.*

**Note.** Mark the difference in meaning between the expressions *in future* (надалі), i.e. from this time on, and *in the future* (у майбутньому), i.e. after a certain period of time passes:

*I hope in future you’ll be more careful.*

*Everybody thinks he will find a good job in the future.*

4. Abstract nouns can be used with the indefinite article. In this case the abstract noun denotes a certain kind (відтінок) of a quality, feeling, state, etc. The noun nearly always has a descriptive attribute:

*There was a reflective silence.*

*There was a bitterness in her voice.*

5. Sometimes an uncountable abstract noun is used with an attribute and yet has no article. In some cases, the attribute does not bring out a special aspect of the notion expressed by the noun. The attribute may express:

- ❖ degree or extent (*great, perfect, sufficient, huge, tremendous, immense, sheer, complete, endless, major* and some others): *immense joy, great success;*
- ❖ time and historical periods (*modern, ancient, eternal, daily, contemporary, further, final, original*): *modern art, further discussion, ancient history;*
- ❖ nationality (*English, French*, etc.): *Italian music, French poetry;*

- ❖ position or locality (*London, world, outside, inner, local, internal*, etc.): *inner vision, inside information*;
- ❖ authenticity or reliability (*real, genuine, authentic, symbolic, true, solid, false* and some others): *real freedom, true friendship*;
- ❖ social characteristic (*Soviet, bourgeois, capitalist, racial, religious*, etc.): *racial segregation, feudal law*;
- ❖ genres or trends in art (*dramatic, theatrical, classical, romantic, detective*, etc.): *romantic prose, detective literature*;
- ❖ man's social and spiritual life (*social, public, political, intellectual, spiritual, moral, mental, reasonable, personal*, etc.): *public recognition, human philosophy*;
- ❖ man's manner or behaviour (*polite, formal, nervous, serious*, etc.): *nervous attitude, formal behavior*;
- ❖ recurrent or going on without stopping phenomena (*continual, continuous, constant, incessant*, etc.): *constant displeasure*;
- ❖ there are also some other adjectives of different meaning (*good, bad, free, critical, ordinary, plain, human*, etc.): *ordinary honesty, human psychology*.

As these attributes do not express a special aspect, the nouns modified by them are used without any article:

*I have perfect confidence in him.*

*She has great experience in her work.*

*They talked about modern poetry.*

*It's three o'clock by Kyiv time.*

**Note.** The definite article is used with the combinations *French poetry, modern art, American literature, German philosophy* if there is a descriptive attribute, as in *the French poetry of the 19<sup>th</sup> century*.

**6.** Some nouns are never used with the indefinite article. They are nouns of verbal character denoting actions, activity, and process, such as *advice, assistance, admiration, guidance, permission, progress, recognition, research, torture, work, information, approval, concern, trade* and some others.

This rule is also applied to the following nouns: *weather, money, news, luck, fun, nature, health, nonsense, evidence, bliss, breeding, cunning* and some others:

*I am not sure whether it is good news or bad.*

*He was anxiously waiting for permission to begin his experiment.*

*She was making great progress.*

*They promised Jackson further assistance.*

**Note.** Although the above-mentioned nouns are never used with the indefinite article, they can be used with the definite article:

*He told me of the progress he was making.*

*The news was so bad that she said she would not see anyone that night.  
What is the weather like today?*

7. The nouns *pity, shame, disgrace, pleasure, relief, comfort, disappointment* are always used with the indefinite article in the following constructions:

❖ in sentences with the formal **it** as subject when they are used as predicative of the main clause:

*It's a pity. It's a shame.*

❖ in exclamatory sentences after **what**:

*What a disgrace!*

## Determiners

A determiner is a word that introduces a noun. It always comes before a noun, not after, and it also comes before any other adjectives used to describe the noun. Determiners are required before a singular noun but are optional when it comes to introducing before plural nouns.

Determiner	Meaning / Use	Examples
<i>Articles</i>		
<b>a / an</b> <b>the</b> <b>no article</b>	❖ (see <b>Article</b> )	<i>For lunch I usually have <b>a</b> sandwich and <b>an</b> apple. How did you like <b>the</b> play? They are good children.</i>
<i>Demonstratives</i>		
<b>this / these</b> <b>that / those</b>	❖ people and things near us ❖ present / future situations ❖ people and things not near us ❖ past situations	<i><b>This</b> soup is tasty. <b>These</b> people are polite. I'm leaving <b>this</b> week. I don't like <b>that</b> building. <b>Those</b> days were the worst in my life.</i>
<i>Possessives and Possessive case</i>		
<b>my/your/its/ her/his/our/ their/ Ann's</b>	❖ ownership or relationship between people ❖ <i>my/your, etc. + own + noun</i>	<i>This is <b>my</b> diary. <b>Peter's</b> car is very fast. She's got <b>her own</b> chauffeur.</i>
<i>Numerals</i>		
<b>one/two/ten/ hundred, etc.</b>	❖ exact number of people or things	<i><b>One</b> apple is not enough. She has <b>four</b> children.</i>
<i>Ordinals</i>		
<b>first / second next / last</b>	❖ order of people or things in a series	<i>This is his <b>first</b> car. The <b>last</b> train leaves at 10 p.m.</i>

<b>Quantifiers</b>		
<b>many</b>	❖ a large number of people or things ( <i>with countables</i> )	<i>How <b>many</b> sisters do you have?</i>
<b>much</b>	❖ a large amount of sth. ( <i>with uncountables</i> ) (in negations and questions)	<i>There isn't <b>much</b> coffee left.</i>
<b>more</b>	❖ a large number or amount ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> )	<i>We need <b>more</b> apples. She makes <b>more</b> money.</i>
<b>most</b> <b>most of</b>	❖ nearly all ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> )	<i><b>Most</b> shops are closed. <b>Most</b> information is fake. <b>Most</b> of the people are happy.</i>
<b>a lot of</b> <b>lots of</b> <b>plenty of</b>	❖ a large amount of sth. ( <i>with uncountables</i> ) ❖ a large number of people or things ( <i>with countables</i> ) (in statements)	<i>There are <b>a lot of</b> people in the street. He has <b>lots of</b> money.</i>
<b>a few</b>	❖ a small number of; enough ( <i>with plural countables</i> )	<i>I have <b>a few</b> friends. But they are very reliable.</i>
<b>few</b>	❖ not many, not enough ( <i>with plural countables</i> )	<i>I have <b>few</b> friends. I'm very lonely.</i>
<b>a little</b>	❖ a small amount, enough ( <i>with uncountables</i> )	<i>I have <b>a little</b> money. Let's have some coffee.</i>
<b>little</b>	❖ not much, not enough ( <i>with uncountables</i> )	<i>Unfortunately, I have <b>little</b> money left.</i>
<b>several</b>	❖ some, but not a large quantity ( <i>with countables</i> )	<i>Milk will keep for <b>several</b> days in the fridge.</i>
<b>enough</b>	❖ as much or as many as required ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> )	<i>We have <b>enough</b> time. There are <b>enough</b> books for all the students.</i>
<b>some</b>	❖ not many or much ❖ a certain number or amount ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> ) (in statements)	<i>We bought <b>some</b> flowers. I need <b>some</b> information.</i>
<b>any</b>	❖ quantities which do not or may not exist ❖ a certain number or amount ( <i>with plural countables and uncountables</i> ) (in negations and questions)	<i>I didn't buy <b>any</b> flowers. I don't need <b>any</b> information.</i>

	❖ it doesn't matter which one (in statements)	<i>We can go to <b>any</b> restaurant you like.</i>
<b>no</b>	❖ quantities which do not exist (with countables and uncountables) (in negations)	<i>There was <b>no</b> bus at the stop. There is <b>no</b> money left. There were <b>no</b> shops open.</i>
<b>other</b> <b>the other</b>	❖ people or things in addition to the ones already known  <i>Note: <b>others</b> and <b>the others</b> can be used without a noun.</i>	<i>This is Peter and I have two <b>other</b> brothers. Give me <b>the other</b> pen. <b>The others</b> are waiting there. <b>Others</b> want to stay here.</i>
<b>another</b>	❖ an additional person or thing (with singular countables)	<i>We need <b>another</b> chair.</i>
<b><i>Predeterminers</i></b>		
<b>all</b> <b>all of</b>	❖ the whole number or amount of, every one of	<i>He has spent <b>all</b> money. <b>All</b> shops are closed.</i>
<b>both</b> <b>both of</b>	❖ two people or things together  <i>Note: <b>both...and</b> + plural verb</i>	<i><b>Both (of)</b> her parents are teachers. <b>Both</b> my father <b>and</b> my brother are here.</i>
<b>whole</b>	❖ all of; entire; complete	<i>She was hungry, so she ate the <b>whole</b> pizza.</i>
<b><i>Distributives</i></b>		
<b>each</b> <b>each of</b>	❖ every single one of two or more things or people considered separately  <i>Note: <b>each</b> + singular noun, <b>each of</b> + plural noun</i>	<i><b>Each</b> child was given a toy. <b>Each of</b> the children was given a present.</i>
<b>every</b>	❖ each one of a group of things or people ❖ regular intervals of time and distance (with singular countables)	<i><b>Every</b> student has to write the test. We meet <b>every</b> week. We check the route <b>every</b> kilometer.</i>
<b>either</b>	❖ each of two	<i>You can buy a Fiat or a Ford. <b>Either</b> brand is good.</i>
<b>either ... or</b>	❖ one or the other of two people, things or groups	<i>I need <b>either</b> a pen <b>or</b> a pencil.</i>
<b>neither</b>	❖ none of two	<i><b>Neither</b> side of the street is clean.</i>



<b>neither...nor</b>	❖ not one or the other of two people, things or groups	<i>Neither my sister nor my brother works.</i>
<b>none of</b>	❖ not any of three or more people or things	<i>None of the boys has been to Paris.</i>

## Order of Adjectives

Adjectives describe nouns. They have the same form in singular and plural, e.g., *a beautiful girl – two beautiful girls.*

There are two types of adjectives.

**Opinion adjectives** describe what we think of someone or something, e.g., *beautiful, great, cheap, lovely.*

**Fact adjectives** describe what someone or something really is, e.g., *short, long, red, round.* Opinion adjectives go before fact adjectives:

*You live in a nice big house.*

When you use more than one adjective to express your opinion, an adjective with a more general meaning such as “**good**”, “**bad**”, “**nice**”, or “**lovely**” usually comes before an adjective with a more specific meaning:

*It’s a nice, clean shirt.*

If you use two or more fact adjectives, you normally put them in the following order:

1. **Size** (*large, big, small*)
2. **Length, height, weight** (*heavy, light, long, tall, short*)
3. **Age** (*young, old, modern*)
4. **Shape** (*round, square, triangular*)
5. **Colour** (*red, blue*)
6. **Origin** (*Spanish, Chinese*)
7. **Material** (*leather, glass, wooden*)
8. **Purpose (used for/be about)** (*private, historical, writing*).

Opinion adjectives		Fact adjectives								Noun
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	
<b>general</b>	<b>specific</b>	<b>size</b>	<b>length height weight</b>	<b>age</b>	<b>shape</b>	<b>colour</b>	<b>origin</b>	<b>material</b>	<b>purpose</b>	

Adjectives of character and emotion are used after adjectives of physical description, e.g., *She is a tall shy girl.*

You usually put comparative and superlative adjectives in front of other adjectives, e.g., *This is the largest round table I’ve ever seen.*

- ❖ The words *fast*, *hard*, *late* are both adjectives and adverbs. When they are used before nouns, they are adjectives, when after verbs – they are adverbs:

Adjectives:	Adverbs:
<i>Ann is a <b>hard</b> worker.</i>	<i>Ann works <b>hard</b>.</i>
<i>He is <b>late</b> for school every morning.</i>	<i>He gets up <b>late</b> every morning.</i>
<i>Jack is a very <b>fast</b> runner.</i>	<i>Jack can run very <b>fast</b>.</i>

- ❖ There are many pairs of adjectives ending in *-ing* and *-ed*. Someone is *-ed* if something or someone is *-ing*. Or, if something is *-ing*, it makes you *-ed*.

*Tom is **bored** because his job is **boring**.*

*Mary's job is **tiring**, so she is **tired**.*

### Degrees of Comparison

Adjectives	Positive	Comparative ( <i>than</i> )	Superlative ( <i>in/of</i> )
of one syllable add <b>-er/-est</b>	short thin large	shorter thinner larger	<i>the</i> shortest <i>the</i> thinnest <i>the</i> largest
of two syllables ending in <i>-er</i> , <i>-le</i> , <i>-y</i> , <i>-ow</i> add <b>-er/-est</b>	heavy shallow clever	heav <i>ier</i> shallower cleverer	<i>the</i> heav <i>iest</i> <i>the</i> shallowest <i>the</i> cleverest
of two syllables with stress on the second syllable add <b>-er/-est</b>	polite severe complete	polit <i>er</i> severer complet <i>er</i>	<i>the</i> politest <i>the</i> severest <i>the</i> completest
of two and more syllables take <b>more/most</b>	special attractive nervous	<b>more</b> special <b>more</b> attractive <b>more</b> nervous	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> special <i>the</i> <b>most</b> attractive <i>the</i> <b>most</b> nervous
ending in <i>-ed</i> and <i>-ing</i> take <b>more/most</b>	tired boring	<b>more</b> tired <b>more</b> boring	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> tired <i>the</i> <b>most</b> boring
used only predicatively take <b>more/most</b>	afraid aware	<b>more</b> afraid <b>more</b> aware	<i>the</i> <b>most</b> afraid <i>the</i> <b>most</b> aware

- ❖ Certain adjectives form their comparative and superlative in both ways, either by adding **-er/-est** to the positive form or taking **more/most**. Some of them are: *clever*, *friendly*, *gentle*, *narrow*, *polite*, *quiet*, *simple*, *stupid*, etc.  
e.g., *simple* – *simpler* – *the simplest* **or** *simple* – *more simple* – *the most simple*

❖ Adjectives ending in mute **-e** drop it and add **-er/-est**:

e.g., *white* – *whiter* – *the whitest*

❖ Adjectives ending in **-y** after a consonant drop **-y** and add **-ier/-iest**:

e.g., *happy* – *happier* – *the happiest*

❖ In one syllable adjectives final consonants are doubled after short vowels:

e.g., *fat* – *fatter* – *the fattest*

## Irregular Forms

<b>good</b>	<b>better</b>	<b>the best</b>	гарний, хороший
<b>bad</b>	<b>worse</b>	<b>the worst</b>	поганий
<b>old</b>	<b>older</b> (age) <b>elder</b> (family order)	<b>the oldest</b> <b>the eldest</b>	старий
<b>far</b>	<b>farther</b> (distance) <b>further</b> (order)	<b>the farthest</b> <b>the furthest</b>	далекий, далеко
<b>much,</b> <b>many</b>	<b>more</b>	<b>the most</b>	багато
<b>little,</b> <b>few</b>	<b>less</b> (uncountable) <b>fewer</b> (countable)	<b>the least</b> <b>the fewest</b>	маленький, мало
<b>near</b>	<b>nearer</b>	<b>the nearest</b> (distance) <b>the next</b> (order)	близький, близько наступний
<b>late</b>	<b>later</b> (time) <b>latter</b> (order)	<b>the latest</b> (time) <b>the last</b> (order)	пізній, пізно останній

**Note.** In emphatic constructions different intensifiers can be used:

1) **a lot, much, still, far, pretty, extremely** + comparative degree:

*He is a lot better.*

*I'm pretty tired.*

2) **by far, possible, imaginable** + superlative degree:

This is by far the best teacher.

This is the most difficult task possible.

## The Verb

The verb is a part of speech which denotes an action. The verb has the following grammatical categories: **person, number, tense, aspect, voice** and **mood**.

Verbs may be **transitive** and **intransitive**.

Verbs have **finite** forms which can be used as the predicate of a sentence and **non-finite** forms which cannot be used as the predicate of a sentence.

According to their morphological structure verbs are divided into:

❖ **simple**, e.g., *read, live, speak*;

- ❖ **derived**, having affixes, e.g., *magnify, fertilize, captivate, undo, decompose*;
- ❖ **compound**, consisting of two stems, e.g., *daydream, browbeat, picklock*;
- ❖ **composite**, consisting of a verb and a postposition of adverbial origin, e.g., *sit down, go away, give up*.

The basic forms of the verb in Modern English are: **the Infinitive, the Past Indefinite and Participle II**: *to speak – spoke – spoken*. According to the way in which the Past Indefinite and Participle II are formed, verbs are divided into **regular** verbs, **irregular** verbs and **mixed** verbs.

According to the syntactic function of verbs, which depends on the extent to which they retain, weaken or lose their meaning, they are divided into **notional** verbs, **auxiliary** verbs and **link** verbs.

a) **Notional verbs** are those which have a full meaning of their own and can be used without any additional words as a simple predicate. Here belong such verbs as *to write, to read, to speak, to know*, etc.:

*I read and write very quickly.*

b) **Auxiliary verbs** are those which have lost their meaning and are used only as form words, thus having only a grammatical function. They are used in analytical forms. Here belong such verbs as *to do, to have, to be, shall, will, should, would*:

*I don't speak German. He has read this book twice.*

c) **Link verbs** are verbs which have partially lost their meaning and are used in the compound nominal predicate:

*They are very good people.*

*He suddenly turned pale.*

In different contexts the same verb can be used as a notional verb and an auxiliary verb or a link verb:

*I do lessons every day. (notional)*

*Do they speak any foreign language? (auxiliary)*

*Peter is in the classroom. (notional)*

*John is listening to music. (auxiliary)*

*Mark is a sailor. (link)*

d) There is a special group of verbs which cannot be used without additional words, though they have a meaning of their own. These are **modal verbs** such as *can, may, must, ought*, etc.:

*I can cook perfectly.*

## Modal Verbs

Modal verbs are used to show the speaker's attitude toward the action or state indicated by the infinitive. They show that the action is considered as *possible, impossible, probable, improbable, obligatory, necessary, advisable, uncertain*, etc.

- ❖ The modal verbs are: **can, could, may, might, must, ought to, will, would, shall and should.**
- ❖ They do not take **-s** in the third person singular. *He **can** ride fast.*
- ❖ They come before the subject in questions and are followed by '**not**' in negations. ***Could** I leave now? – I'm afraid you **can't** leave.*
- ❖ The modal verbs are followed by an infinitive without **to** except for '**ought to**'. *She **could** leave early but she really **ought to** stay till the end.*
- ❖ Each modal verb normally has more than one use or meaning.
- ❖ Certain verbs or expressions have virtually the same meaning as some modals. These are:  
***need** (= must), **have to/have got to** (= must), **be able to** (= can), **used to** (= would), etc.*

	Past	Present	Future
<b>can</b>	could	can	(=will be able to)
<b>may</b>	might	may	-
<b>must</b>	(=had to)	must	(=will have to)
<b>have to</b>	had to	have to/has to	will have to
<b>should/ought to</b>	-	should/ought to	-
<b>to be to</b>	was/were to	am/are/is to	-
<b>shall</b>	-	-	shall
<b>will/would</b>	-	-	will/would
<b>need</b>	-	need	-
<b>dare</b>	dared	dare	-

### Functions of Modal Verbs and Synonymous Expressions

Modals	Meaning / Use	Example
<b>can</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ mental or physical ability in the present and future</li> <li>❖ possibility (90% certain)</li> <li>❖ logical assumption / certainty (<i>negative</i>)</li> <li>❖ giving or refusing permission (<i>informal</i>)</li> <li>❖ requests (<i>informal</i>)</li> </ul>	<i>I <b>can</b> swim.</i> <i>We <b>can</b> do this task tomorrow.</i> <i>He <b>can</b> win the race.</i> <i>She <b>can't</b> be over forty. =</i> <i>(I'm sure she isn't over forty.)</i> <i>You <b>can/can't</b> borrow my car.</i>  <i><b>Can</b> I borrow your book?</i>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ offers (<i>informal</i>)</li> <li>❖ prohibition (<i>informal</i>)</li> </ul>	<p><b>Can</b> I/we do anything for you?  You <b>can't</b> smoke there. =  (You aren't allowed to smoke.)</p>
<b>could</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ ability and repeated actions in the past</li> <li>❖ possibility at present (50% certain)</li> <li>❖ asking for permission (<i>more polite</i>)</li> </ul>	<p>He <b>could</b> read when he was four.</p> <p>They <b>could</b> still be at school. =  (It's possible they are still there.)</p> <p><b>Could</b> I use your phone?</p>
<b>be able to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ ability</li> <li>❖ ability in the past for single actions</li> </ul>	<p>She <b>is able to</b> run a marathon.  He <b>has been able to</b> work since 1999  If she studies hard, she <b>will be able to</b> pass the test.  He <b>was able to</b> reach Brighton before midnight. (single action)  was able to (= <b>managed to</b>)</p>
<b>may</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ to refuse permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ to ask for permission (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ possibility (<i>perhaps; 50% certain</i>)</li> <li>❖ requests (<i>formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ prohibition (<i>formal</i>)</li> </ul>	<p>You <b>may</b> use the phone.  Children <b>may not</b> be left alone.</p> <p><b>May</b> I use your phone? (= Will you allow me to use your phone?)  Tom <b>may</b> be studying in his room.  It's possible that he's studying.  <b>May</b> I have a cup of coffee, please?  You <b>may not</b> smoke there.</p>
<b>be allowed to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ permission</li> </ul>	<p>Visitors <b>are / were / will be allowed to</b> use the car park.</p>
<b>not be allowed to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ prohibition</li> </ul>	<p>He <b>isn't / wasn't / won't be allowed to</b> come in.</p>
<b>might</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests (<i>very formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ asking for permission (<i>very formal</i>)</li> <li>❖ permission in the past</li> <li>❖ possibility at present (40% certain)</li> <li>❖ reproach</li> </ul>	<p><b>Might</b> I use your phone?  <b>Might</b> I speak to Mr Jones, please?</p> <p>He said I <b>might</b> go out.  He <b>might</b> want some more food.  (Perhaps he wants some more food.)  You <b>might</b> be more careful.</p>
<b>must</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity</li> <li>❖ obligation</li> <li>❖ prohibition</li> </ul>	<p>I <b>must</b> buy a new jacket. = (I say so.)  I <b>must</b> go on a diet. =  (I'm obliged to; I say so.)  You <b>mustn't</b> smoke there. =  (It's forbidden.)</p>



	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ duty and order</li> <li>❖ logical assumption / certainty (<i>positive</i>) (90% certain)</li> <li>❖ urgent advice</li> </ul>	<p><i>Everyone <b>must</b> obey the law.</i></p> <p><i>He <b>must</b> be a driver. =</i> <i>(I'm sure he's a driver.)</i></p> <p><i>You <b>must</b> see the doctor.</i></p>
<b>have to = (have got to)</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity coming from outside the speaker</li> <li>❖ absence of necessity</li> <li>❖ obligation</li> </ul>	<p><i>He <b>has to</b> put some petrol in the car.</i></p> <p><i>They <b>don't have to</b> come if they don't want to. (It isn't necessary)</i></p> <p><i>I <b>have to</b> go on a diet. (I'm obliged to; the doctor says so.)</i></p>
<b>had to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity and obligation in the past</li> <li>❖ absence of necessity in the past</li> </ul>	<p><i>I <b>had to</b> go on a diet a month ago.</i></p> <p><i>She <b>didn't have to</b> buy any apples. (It wasn't necessary for her to buy any apples and she didn't.)</i></p>
<b>should / ought to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving advice</li> <li>❖ asking for advice</li> <li>❖ criticism</li> <li>❖ strong surprise or complain in the question “<i>Why should ...</i>”</li> </ul>	<p><i>You <b>should</b> drink more water. (general advice; I advise you)</i></p> <p><i>You <b>ought to</b> respect the elderly. (I advise you; most people believe this)</i></p> <p><i><b>Should</b> I go by car or by train?</i></p> <p><i>They <b>should</b> try harder.</i></p> <p><i>You <b>ought to</b> behave yourself.</i></p> <p><i><b>Why should</b> I do this?</i></p>
<b>be to</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ giving orders or instructions</li> <li>❖ arrangement which is not to be discussed</li> </ul>	<p><i>You <b>are to</b> stay here until I return.</i></p> <p><i>We <b>are to</b> meet at the theatre.</i></p>
<b>need</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ necessity</li> </ul>	<p><i>My car <b>needs / needed / will need</b> repairing. or</i></p> <p><i>My car <b>needs / needed / will need</b> to be repaired. = (It's necessary.)</i></p>
<b>don't need to / needn't</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ absence of necessity</li> </ul>	<p><i>Today is a holiday, so you / <b>don't need to / needn't</b> go to work.</i></p>
<b>didn't need</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ absence of necessity in the past</li> </ul>	<p><i>She <b>didn't need</b> to buy any fruit. (It wasn't necessary for her to buy any fruit and she didn't.)</i></p>
<b>shall</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ offers (<i>informal</i>)</li> <li>❖ suggestions</li> </ul>	<p><i><b>Shall</b> I/we do it for you?</i></p> <p><i><b>Shall</b> we dance?</i></p>

	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ asking for advice</li> <li>❖ threat or warning (<i>with the 2<sup>nd</sup> and the 3<sup>d</sup> person in statements and negations</i>)</li> </ul>	<i>Shall I do it right now?</i> <i>You shall not do that again.</i> <i>You shall pay for this!</i>
<b>will</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests</li> <li>❖ invitation / suggestion</li> </ul>	<i>Will you please be quiet in here?</i> <i>Will you go to the cinema with me?</i> <i>Will you have a cup of coffee?</i>
<b>would</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ requests</li> <li>❖ offers</li> <li>❖ habitual action in the past</li> </ul>	<i>Would you do me a favour?</i> <i>Would you like a lift to the airport?</i> <i>She would tell me all her secrets in her childhood.</i>
<b>dare</b>	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>❖ expressing courage or impertinence to do sth.</li> <li>❖ expressing lack of courage or impertinence to do sth.</li> </ul>	<i>How dare you say this?</i> <i>I dare say ...</i> <i>He didn't dare (to) phone me.</i>

### The Present Simple = The Present Indefinite

The Present Indefinite is formed from the infinitive without the particle *to*. In the third person singular the ending -s is added. The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to do* and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle *to*.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I work	<b>Do</b> I work?	<b>I do not (don't)</b> work
He works <u>s</u>	<b>Does</b> he work?	<b>He does not (doesn't)</b> work
She works <u>s</u>	<b>Does</b> she work?	<b>She does not (doesn't)</b> work
It works <u>s</u>	<b>Does</b> it work?	<b>It does not (doesn't)</b> work
We work	<b>Do</b> we work?	<b>We do not (don't)</b> work
You work	<b>Do</b> you work?	<b>You do not (don't)</b> work
They work	<b>Do</b> they work?	<b>They do not (don't)</b> work

The Present Indefinite is used:

**1.** To express facts which are always true, general statements or a universal truth:

*The earth goes round the sun.*

*Domestic animals return to their homes.*

**2.** To express habitual or repeated actions in present (*usually, sometimes, often, rarely/seldom, never, always, every..., once/twice a week*):

*We often see him in the evening.*

*She never drinks coffee.*

3. To express permanent actions. Such actions give a general characteristic to a person:

*She has skills in her work.*

*She sings and plays the piano beautifully.*

4. When the action as such attracts the attention of the speaker and the idea of its progress becomes unimportant at the moment:

*You talk too much.*

*I repeat, you have to stay.*

5. With verbs that perform the action they describe (performative verbs), e.g., *to accept, to advise, to apologize, to deny, to guarantee, to inform, to predict, to promise, to recommend, to suggest, to suppose*, etc.:

*I promise I will call on Monday.*

*I refuse to believe in it. (refusal)*

6. To describe the events in a narrative, when the events are summarized. To describe what happens in a film or book:

*In Chapter 1, Susan meets David, and agrees to dance with him.*

7. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous), e.g., *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc. to describe a state at the moment of speaking:

*Now I know what you mean.*

*I see she understands me perfectly.*

8. To express future actions according to timetables, programmes (for public transport, theatre, etc.):

*My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.*

The Present Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

*every day, usually, seldom=rarely, often, always, never, sometimes, from time to time, at weekends, on Sundays, several times/once/twice a week, as a rule.*

### **The Present Continuous = The Present Progressive**

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>am</b> working	<b>Am</b> I working?	I <b>am not</b> working
He <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> he working?	He <b>is not</b> working
She <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> she working?	She <b>is not</b> working
It <b>is</b> working	<b>Is</b> it working?	It <b>is not</b> working
We <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> we working?	We <b>are not</b> working
You <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> you working?	You <b>are not</b> working
They <b>are</b> working	<b>Are</b> they working?	They <b>are not</b> working

The Present Continuous is used:

1. To express actions which are in progress, in their development *now, at the/this moment*:

*It is raining now. I can't go out.*

*We are not speaking at the moment.*

2. To express habits over a period of time, temporary habits. The action is not necessarily happening at the time of speaking:

*He is writing a new play now. I think it will be successful.*

*I am reading an interesting historical novel. It's about the Second World War.*

3. To show that the situation is temporary (*at this period, currently, this year, this season*):

*Banks are lending more money these days to encourage new businesses.*

*I'm living with some friends until I find a flat.*

4. To express changes, developments and trends over a period of time:

*The climate is getting warmer.*

*The prices are going up.*

5. To express anger or irritation at a repeated action, to emphasize that something is done repeatedly (too/very often, all the time) (*always, constantly, continually*):

*You are always coming late!*

*He is constantly losing his keys!*

6. To describe background events when we give commentaries, instructions, tell a story or a joke:

*She goes up. She looks tired. She is carrying a bag full of shopping.*

7. With some **Stative Verbs** when there is a change of meaning and they become **dynamic verbs** (denote an action):

*I am thinking of you.*

*She is having breakfast.*

8. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance:

*Peter is getting married next month.*

*We are flying to Paris tomorrow.*

9. With **never ... again** to show the intention not to do something in future:

*I'm never speaking to you again.*

*I'm never driving again.*

The Present Continuous is used with the following time indicators: **now, at the moment, at present, nowadays, still, these days, this year (month), today, at this period, currently, always/constantly/continually.**

## Stative Verbs

Verbs describing a permanent state (**Stative Verbs**) do not normally have continuous forms. These are:

- ❖ verbs of the senses: **see, hear, smell, feel, taste**, etc. We often use **can** or **could** with these verbs, e.g., *Can you see that tall boy over there?*
- ❖ verbs of opinion: **agree, believe, consider**, etc.
- ❖ verbs of emotions: **feel, forgive, hate, like, love**, etc.
- ❖ other verbs: **appear, seem, be, belong, fit** (= be the right shape and size for sth), **have** (= possess), **know, look** (= appear), **need, prefer, require, want, weigh, wish**, etc.:

*He knows where Peter is. (not ~~is knowing~~)*

Some Stative Verbs (**see, smell, taste, feel, think, have**, etc.) have continuous forms but there is a difference in meaning.

State	Action
<i>I <b>think</b> she's rich.</i> (= I believe)	<i>I'm <b>thinking</b> about your plan.</i> (= I'm considering)
<i>The milk <b>tastes</b> awful.</i> (= it has a bad flavour)	<i>He's <b>tasting</b> the sauce; it might need some salt.</i> (= he's trying its flavour)
<i>He <b>has</b> a pet dog.</i> (= he owns)	<i>He's <b>having</b> dinner now.</i> (= he's eating)
<i>This cloth <b>feels</b> like velvet.</i> (= has the texture)	<i>She's <b>feeling</b> her way in the dark.</i> (= she's finding her way)
<i>I <b>see</b> you're in trouble.</i> (= I understand)	<i>I'm <b>seeing</b> my lawyer tonight.</i> (= I'm visiting)
<i>The kitchen <b>smells</b> of burnt meat.</i> (= has the smell)	<i>Why <b>are</b> you <b>smelling</b> your food?</i> (= trying the smell of)
<i>He <b>comes</b> from Spain.</i> (= he was born in)	<i>He's <b>coming</b> from Spain.</i> (= he's travelling from)

<i>Your hair <b>looks</b> great.</i> (= it appears)	<i>She's <b>looking</b> at some old photographs.</i> (= she's examining)
<i>The baby <b>weighs</b> 5 kilos.</i> (= it is)	<i>I'm <b>weighing</b> myself on my new scales.</i> (= I'm finding out my weight)
<i>These shoes <b>fit</b> me perfectly.</i> (= they are the right size)	<i>We're <b>fitting</b> a new carpet in the hall.</i> (= laying)
<i>I <b>love/enjoy</b> good films.</i> (= I like in general)	<i>I'm <b>loving/enjoying</b> this film.</i> (= I like specifically)
<i>He <b>appears</b> to be working.</i> (= he seems to be)	<i>The opera singer <b>is appearing</b> on stage tonight.</i> (= he will make an appearance)
<i>Peter <b>is</b> naughty.</i> (= his character is bad.)	<i>Suzy <b>is being</b> very naughty.</i> (= she is misbehaving)

Here are some of the many **Stative Verbs** in English:

❖ **mental & emotional states:**

<b>to believe</b>	вірити	<b>to (dis)like</b>	(не)любити
<b>to prefer</b>	надавати перевагу	<b>to feel*</b> (have an opinion)	мати передчуття
<b>to doubt</b>	сумніватися	<b>to love</b>	любити
<b>to realise</b>	усвідомлювати	<b>to want</b>	хотіти
<b>to recognize</b>	впізнавати	<b>to hate</b>	ненавидіти
<b>to suppose</b>	припускати	<b>to wish</b>	бажати
<b>to imagine</b>	уявляти	<b>to understand</b>	розуміти
<b>to remember</b>	пам'ятати	<b>to know</b>	знати
<b>to mind</b>	мати на увазі	<b>to find</b>	переконуватися
<b>to see*(understand)</b>	розуміти	<b>to consider</b>	брати до уваги
<b>to appreciate</b>	цінувати	<b>to adore</b>	обожнювати

❖ **use of the senses:**

<b>to appear</b>	виявлятися	<b>to look (seem)</b>	здаватися
<b>to seem</b>	здаватися	<b>to sound</b>	звучати
<b>to hear</b>	чути	<b>to see</b>	бачити
<b>to smell</b>	пахнути	<b>to taste</b>	мати смак

❖ **other:**

<b>to agree on/with</b>	погоджуватись з	<b>to please</b>	радувати, догоджати
<b>to belong to</b>	належати до	<b>to lack</b>	бракувати, не мати
<b>to consist of</b>	складатися з	<b>to matter</b>	мати значення
<b>to deny</b>	заперечувати	<b>to need</b>	потребувати
<b>to contain</b>	включати в себе	<b>to owe</b>	заборгувати
<b>to depend on</b>	залежати від	<b>to satisfy</b>	задовольняти
<b>to impress</b>	вражати	<b>to possess</b>	володіти



<b>to deserve</b>	заслужувати	<b>to surprise</b>	дивувати
<b>to fit</b>	підходити за розм.	<b>to weigh</b>	мати вагу
<b>to mean</b>	означати	<b>to require</b>	потребувати
<b>to include</b>	включати в себе	<b>to sound</b>	звучати
<b>to involve</b>	включати	<b>to be</b>	бути

### The Past Simple = The Past Indefinite

The Past Indefinite is formed by adding **-ed** or **-d** to the stem (regular verbs), or by changing the root vowel, or in some other ways (irregular verbs). The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to do (did)** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle **to**.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> I work (write)?	I <b>didn't</b> work (write)
He worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> he work (write)?	He <b>didn't</b> work (write)
She worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> she work (write)?	She <b>didn't</b> work (write)
It worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> it work (write)?	It <b>didn't</b> work (write)
We worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> we work (write)?	We <b>didn't</b> work (write)
You worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> you work (write)?	You <b>didn't</b> work (write)
They worked <u>ed</u> (wrote)	<b>Did</b> they work (write)?	They <b>didn't</b> work (write)

The Past Indefinite is used:

**1.** To express a complete action or event which happened at a stated past time (*yesterday, last (week), (a week) ago, in 1998, then*):

*I cleaned the room yesterday.*

*Last time I played tennis a week ago.*

**2.** To express past habits or states, repeated actions in the past:

*In my childhood I lived with my granny.*

*I always got up at six in those days.*

**3.** To express an action which happened at a definite past time, but the time is not mentioned. This action is not connected with the present:

*Shakespeare wrote a lot of plays.*

*My mother grew up in Scotland.*

**4.** With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous), e.g., *to agree, to love, to like, to belong, to contain, to consist, to cost, to hear, to know*, etc:

*At that moment I didn't know what to do.*

*We didn't agree with her.*

The Past Indefinite is used with the following time indicators: *yesterday, then, when, How long ago...?, last night/week/month, two days/weeks ago, in 1997*, etc.

## Used to do

**Used to do** means that something happened regularly in the past, but no longer happens. It describes past habits, past states or regularly repeated actions in the past, usually in contrast with the present:

*I **used to play** football a lot, but I **don't play** very often now.*

*I **used to think** Peter was unfriendly, but now I see he is a nice person.*

The interrogative and the negative forms are formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to do (did)** and the infinitive of the verb **to use** without the particle **to**.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> I use to work?	I <b>didn't</b> use to work
He <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> he use to work?	He <b>didn't</b> use to work
She <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> she use to work?	She <b>didn't</b> use to work
It <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> it use to work?	It <b>didn't</b> use to work
We <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> we use to work?	We <b>didn't</b> use to work
You <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> you use to work?	You <b>didn't</b> use to work
They <b>used</b> to work	<b>Did</b> they use to work?	They <b>didn't</b> use to work

I **used to do** something is the past. There is no present form. Use the Present Simple to talk about the present:

*I **used to live** in a small village, but now I **live** in Kyiv.*

*There **used to be** four banks in our town. Now there **is** only one.*

**Note** that **would** is also used to express regularly repeated actions and routines in the past, but it isn't used for states:

*She **used to tell** me the stories. (= She **would tell** me the stories.)*

*He **used to have** a beard. (not ~~would~~ – state)*

## The Past Continuous = The Past Progressive

The Present Continuous is formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> I working?	I <b>was not</b> working
He <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> he working?	He <b>was not</b> working
She <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> she working?	She <b>was not</b> working
It <b>was</b> working	<b>Was</b> it working?	It <b>was not</b> working
We <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> we working?	We <b>were not</b> working
You <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> you working?	You <b>were not</b> working
They <b>were</b> working	<b>Were</b> they working?	They <b>were not</b> working

The Past Continuous is used:

1. To express an action which was in progress, in its development at a particular moment of time or period in the past:

*He was playing tennis at 4.30 yesterday.*

*We were cleaning the flat the whole evening yesterday.*

2. To express anger or irritation at a repeated action in the past, to emphasize that something was done repeatedly (too/very often, all the time) (***always, constantly, continually***):

*At school you were always coming late.*

*In his childhood he was constantly losing his keys.*

3. With some ***Stative Verbs*** when there is a change of meaning and they become ***dynamic verbs*** (denote an action):

*Yesterday the whole evening I was thinking of you.*

*She was being very naughty during the party.*

4. ***Was/were going to do sth.*** is used to express actions one intended to do but didn't do:

*She was going to move to London but she decided to stay in York.*

The Past Continuous is used with the following time indicators: ***while, when, as, all morning/evening/day/night***, etc.

### The Past Simple vs The Past Continuous

<b><i>The Past Simple</i></b>	<b><i>The Past Continuous</i></b>
1. To express several past actions which happened one after the other:	1. To express two or more simultaneous past actions ( <b><i>while/when</i></b> ):
<i>She came home, had dinner, did her homework and went for a walk.</i>	<i>While I was reading, my mother was watching TV.</i>
2. To express a single past action which interrupts another past action in its development: →	2. To show an action or activity that was in progress, and which was interrupted by another action:
<i>The bell rang</i> <i>My mother entered the room</i>	<i>while I was getting dressed.</i> <i>when I was doing my homework.</i>
3. To describe main events in a story: →	3. To express background descriptions to events in a story:
<i>That funny accident happened</i>	<i>while she was flying to Paris.</i>

### The Future Indefinite = The Future Simple

The Future Indefinite is formed by means of the auxiliary verb ***will*** and ***shall*** and the infinitive of the notional verb without the particle ***to***. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle ***not*** is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>will/shall</b> work	<b>Shall/Will</b> I work?	I <b>will not (won't)</b> work
He <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> he work?	He <b>will not (won't)</b> work
She <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> she work?	She <b>will not (won't)</b> work
It <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> it work?	It <b>will not (won't)</b> work
We <b>will/shall</b> work	<b>Shall/Will</b> we work?	We <b>will not (won't)</b> work
You <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> you work?	You <b>will not (won't)</b> work
They <b>will</b> work	<b>Will</b> they work?	They <b>will not (won't)</b> work

**Note.** We normally use *shall* only in questions with **I** and **we** to ask somebody's opinion (especially in offers and suggestions) and to ask for advice or instructions:

*Shall I open the window?* (= Do you want me to open the window?)

*Shall we go for a walk?* (= Let's go for a walk.)

The Future Indefinite is used:

1. To express decisions made at the moment of speaking:

*I'm tired. I will go and have a nap.*

*OK, I'll see you this evening at eight.*

2. To express predictions, often with *I believe, expect, hope, think*, etc:

*I think it will be a difficult game.*

*Don't worry. Everything will be ok.*

3. To express offers or willingness:

*I'll give you a lift home if you like.*

*All right. I'll water the flowers.*

4. To ask somebody to do something:

*Will you please make some coffee?*

*Will you do me a favour?*

5. To say that you or somebody refuses, promises and threats to do something:

*I won't speak to you ever again!*

*I'll pay you back on Friday.*

*Don't give her advice. She won't listen.*

The Future Indefinite is used with the following time indicators:

*tomorrow, soon, next week/month/year, the day after tomorrow*, etc.

### Different Ways of Expressing the Future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses:

1. To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance: <i>I'm not working tomorrow.</i> <i>What are you doing this evening?</i>	<b>Present Continuous</b>
--------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------	---------------------------

2. To express a future action according to timetable, programme (for public transport, theatre, etc.): <i>My train <b>leaves</b> at 11.30 on Tuesday.</i> <i>The football championship <b>begins</b> on Monday.</i>	<b>Present Simple</b>
3. To express plans and intentions to do something in future: <i>I'm <b>going to phone</b> him tomorrow.</i> <i>He <b>is going to join</b> a gym next week.</i>	<b>to be going to do</b>
4. To make on-the-spot decisions and also to offer, to refuse, to agree, to promise, to threat and to ask to do something: <i>I'll <b>go and shut</b> the door.</i> <i>We'll <b>help</b> you with your housework.</i>	<b>Future Simple</b>
5. To make predictions based on what we see or we know, especially when there is evidence: <i>Look at the dark clouds! It's <b>going to rain</b>.</i> <i>That building <b>is going to collapse</b> soon.</i>	<b>to be going to do</b>
6. To make predictions based on what we believe or think, often with <i>I believe, expect, hope, think</i> , etc: <i>I hope it <b>won't rain</b> tomorrow.</i> <i>I'm sure she <b>will pass</b> the exam easily.</i>	<b>Future Simple</b>

### WHEN and IF Clauses

Sentences with adverbial clauses of **time** (*when*) and **condition** (*if*) have two parts:

#### *if/when*-clause and **main clause**

*If you finish work early, we will go for a walk.*

*We will go to the cinema when you finish work.*

❖ Note that we use a comma (,) when the *if/when*-clause comes before the *main clause*.

Adverbial clauses of **time** show the time of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the following conjunctions: *when, while, whenever* (коли б не), *as, till, until, as soon as, as long as, after, before*.

Adverbial clauses of **condition** state the condition which is necessary for the realization of the action expressed in the main clause. They are introduced by the conjunctions *if, unless* (якщо не), *on condition that, as long as, in case*.

## Zero and First Conditionals

The **Zero Conditional** is used to show that one action, result, etc. always follows another:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Present Simple</b>
<i>If/When water freezes, it turns into ice.</i> <i>When I travel by car, I'm always sick.</i>	

The **First Conditional** is used to talk about events which are possible, real or very probable in the present or future:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If you study hard, you will do well in the test.</i> <i>When I am in London again, I'll phone you.</i>	

Note that we use **when** for things which are *sure* to happen, and we use **if** (not **when**) for things that will *possibly* happen:

*If they don't come soon, I won't wait for them.* (= it's possible)

*When I go shopping, I'll buy some food.* (= for sure)

❖ Other structures are also possible, depending on what we want to say:

<i>if/when-clause</i>	<i>main clause</i>
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>to going to do (future)</b>
<i>If you don't work, you are going to fail.</i> <i>When I get home, I am going to have dinner.</i>	
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>modal verbs (can/may/should)</b>
<i>If you behave yourself, you may come.</i> <i>When you get money, you can buy a new house.</i>	
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Imperative</b>
<i>If you need anything, ask.</i> <i>When you have some free time, visit us.</i>	
<b>Present Simple</b>	<b>Present Simple (for future)</b>
<i>If there are no problems, the ceremony starts in time.</i> <i>When the weather is clear, my flight arrives at 7a.m.</i>	



<b>Present Continuous</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If he is listening to me attentively, When our father is sleeping,</i>	<i>I will tell him an interesting story. I'll play computer games.</i>
<b>Present Perfect</b>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<i>If I have promised, When (As soon as) I have finished,</i>	<i>I will try to do my best to be in time. I'll phone you.</i>
<b>Imperative</b>	<b>and/or + Future Simple</b>
<i>Work hard, and you will do well in the test. Stop arguing, or I'll punish you.</i>	

### The Present Perfect

The Present Perfect is formed by means of the Present Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to have* and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> I worked?	I <b>have not</b> worked
He <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> he worked?	He <b>has not</b> worked
She <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> she worked?	She <b>has not</b> worked
It <b>has</b> worked	<b>Has</b> it worked?	It <b>has not</b> worked
We <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> we worked?	We <b>have not</b> worked
You <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> you worked?	You <b>have not</b> worked
They <b>have</b> worked	<b>Have</b> they worked?	They <b>have not</b> worked

Participle II of the regular verbs is built up by adding **-ed** to the stem of the verb, or only **-d** if the stem of the verb ends in mute **-e**:

e.g., *to want – wanted*, *to open – opened*, *to live – lived*, *continue – continued*

The following spelling rules should be observed:

- ❖ Final **-y** is changed into **-i** and then **-ed** is added if it is preceded by a consonant: e.g., *to carry – carried*, *to reply – replied*

But **-y** remains unchanged if it is preceded by a vowel: e.g., *to enjoy – enjoyed*,

- ❖ If a verb ends in a consonant preceded by a short stressed vowel, the final consonant is doubled: e.g., *to stop – stopped*, *to plan – planned*
- ❖ Final **-r** is doubled if it is preceded by a stressed vowel: e.g., *to stir – stirred*, *to refer – referred*,

But final **-r** is not doubled when it is preceded by a diphthong: e.g., *to appear* – *appeared*

- ❖ Final **-l** is doubled if it is preceded by a short vowel, stressed or unstressed: e.g., *to compel* – *compelled*, *to quarrel* – *quarrelled*, **but** *to appeal* – *appealed*.
- ❖ If a verb ends in **-c**, we add **-k** and **-ed**: e.g. *to mimic* – *mimicked*

The Present Perfect is used:

**1.** To express an action which has recently finished and whose result is visible in the present:

*She has just washed her hair that's why it is wet.*

*Mark has already gone. He's not here.*

**Note:** The Present Perfect is often used with **just**, **already**, **yet**:

*Hello. Have you just arrived?*                    **just** = a short time ago

*She has already bought the tickets.*        **already** = happened sooner than expected

*Has it stopped raining yet?*                    **yet** = until now (in questions and

*She hasn't bought the tickets yet.*        negative sentences.)

**2.** To express an action which happened at an unstated time in the past. The exact time is not mentioned because it is either unknown or unimportant. The emphasis is placed on the action:

*The Smiths have bought a car.*

*There has been an accident. The road is closed.*

**3.** With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous) for an action which started in the past and continues up to the present. In this case **for** and **since** are often used:

*Ann has known me for three years.*

*We haven't seen them since Friday.*

**Note:** The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration, **since** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

If the conjunction **since** introduces a clause, the verb in this case is used in the Past Indefinite:

*I haven't heard from you since I moved to a new apartment.*

*They have known each other since they were at school.*

However, the Present Perfect can be used in the **since**-clause if the two situations described in the main clause and **since**-clause extend until the present:

*Since I've lived here, I haven't seen my neighbours.*

**4.** To indicate an action which has happened within a specific time period which is not over at the moment of speaking. We often use words and expressions such as **today**, **this morning/week/month/year**, **in the last few days**, **so far**, etc.:

*She has drunk 3 cups of coffee today.*  
*Everything is ok. We haven't had any problems so far.*

**5.** With ordinal numerals and adjectives in superlative degree:

*It's the first time he has driven a car.*  
*It's the most terrible weather we have ever had.*

**6.** To announce a piece of news, but the Past Indefinite or/and the Past Continuous is used to give more details about the news:

*The police have finally arrested Peter Parker. He was trying to leave the country when they caught him.*  
*I've burnt myself. I picked up a hot dish.*

**7.** To express a future action in adverbial clauses of time:

*When I have translated this text, I'll let you know.*  
*I will tell you the secret when he has gone out.*

**Note 1:** The Present Perfect is not used in questions introduced by **when, what time** as in this case the speaker is interested in the time of action:

*When did you repair your car?*  
*What time did you come home?*

**Note 2:** There is some difference in meaning between **Have gone to... / Have been to... / Have been in...**

*Nick has gone to Rome.* (= He is there or on his way to Rome.)  
*Nick has been to Rome once.* (= He's visited Rome but he's back now.)  
*Nick has been in Rome for two days.* (= He's in Rome now.)

The Present Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*already, yet, always, just, ever, never, so far, today, this week, how long, recently, of late, lately, still* (in negations), *for, since*.

### The Past Simple vs The Present Perfect

<i>The Past Simple</i> is used:	<i>The Present Perfect</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> For a completed action which happened at a stated time in the past:	<b>1.</b> For a completed action which happened at an unstated time in the past:
<i>She left yesterday.</i> (When did she leave? – Yesterday.)	<i>She has left for London.</i> (We don't know when she left; unstated time; she's either now there or on her way there.)
<b>2.</b> For an action which happened in the past and cannot be repeated:	<b>2.</b> For an action which happened in the past and may be repeated:

<i>I met Michel Jackson.</i> (I won't meet him again. He's dead. – the period of time is finished.)	<i>I've met Julia Roberts.</i> (I may meet her again. She's alive. – the period of time is not finished yet.)
<b>3.</b> For an action which is not connected to the present:	<b>3.</b> For an action which is connected to the present:
<i>Jane was in Paris for two months.</i> (She isn't in Paris any more. The action is not connected to the present.)	<i>Jane has been in Paris for two months.</i> (She is still in Paris. The action is connected to the present.)
<b>4.</b> For an action which happened within a specific time period which is over at the moment of speaking:	<b>4.</b> For an action which happened within a specific time period which is not over at the moment of speaking:
<i>I wrote five letters this morning.</i> (The time period is over. It is evening or night now.)	<i>I have written five letters this morning.</i> (The time period is not over. It is still morning now.)

### The Present Perfect Continuous

The Present Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Present Perfect of the auxiliary verb *to be* and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
<b>I have been working</b>	<b>Have I been working?</b>	<b>I have not been working</b>
<b>He has been working</b>	<b>Has he been working?</b>	<b>He has not been working</b>
<b>She has been working</b>	<b>Has she been working?</b>	<b>She has not been working</b>
<b>It has been working</b>	<b>Has it been working?</b>	<b>It has not been working</b>
<b>We have been working</b>	<b>Have we been working?</b>	<b>We have not been working</b>
<b>You have been working</b>	<b>Have you been working?</b>	<b>You have not been working</b>
<b>They have been working</b>	<b>Have they been working?</b>	<b>They have not been working</b>

The Present Perfect Continuous is used:

**1.** To put an emphasis on the duration of an action that started in the past and continues up to the present, especially with such words: *for, since, all day/year*, etc.

*Sam has been talking on the phone for half an hour.*

*I have been looking for you all day long.*

**2.** To denote an action which began in the past, lasted for some time, has been going on up to the present and is still going on:

*I have been waiting for him for the last three days.*

*Terry has already been sleeping for ten hours.*

**3.** To express an action which started in the past and was recently in progress. The action has finished and is no longer going on at the present moment, but the result of the action is visible in the present:

*Her feet hurt. She has been walking all morning.*

*Your eyes are red. Have you been crying?*

**4.** To express anger, irritation or annoyance at an action which happened in the past but whose result is visible in the present:

*Who has been using my computer?*

*Mary has been telling lies again.*

**Note:** With non-terminative verbs such as *to live, to work, to study, to learn, to travel*, both the Present Perfect and the Present Perfect Continuous are used with no or very little difference in the meaning:

*We have lived here since 1994.* (the fact is emphasized)

*He has worked for this company all his life.*

*We have been living here since 1994.* (the process is emphasized)

*He has been working for this company all his life.*

The Present Perfect Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*for, since, today, this week, how long, recently, of late, lately, still, already, yet, always, just, ever, never, so far.*

### The Present Continuous vs The Present Perfect Continuous

<b><i>The Present Continuous</i></b> is used:	<b><i>The Present Perfect Continuous</i></b> is used:
To denote an action going on at the present moment:	To denote an action going on at the present moment when the previous duration of the action is expressed:
<i>Hurry up! We are waiting.</i> <i>We need an umbrella. It is raining.</i>	<i>We have been waiting for three hours.</i> <i>The ground is wet. It has been raining.</i>

### The Present Perfect Continuous vs The Present Perfect

<b><i>The Present Perfect Continuous</i></b> is used:	<b><i>The Present Perfect</i></b> is used:
<b>1.</b> To emphasize the activity. It does not matter whether it is finished or not:	<b>1.</b> To emphasize the completion of the action. It is important that it is finished:
<i>Her hands are very dirty. She has been repairing the car.</i> <i>Peter has been eating too much recently.</i> <i>He should eat less.</i>	<i>The car is OK again now. She has repaired it.</i> <i>Peter has eaten everything. The fridge is empty.</i>

<b>2.</b> To say <i>how long</i> (for an activity that is still happening):	<b>2.</b> To say <i>how much, how many</i> or <i>how many times</i> (for completed actions):
<i>How long have you been reading that book?</i> <i>Lisa has been writing letters all day.</i>	<i>How much of that book have you read?</i> <i>Lisa has written five letters today.</i>
<b>3.</b> With dynamic verbs:	<b>3.</b> With stative verbs:
<i>I have been teaching them for two years.</i> <i>We have been having lunch since 1p.m.</i>	<i>I have known them for two years.</i> <i>We have had this car since 2016.</i>

### The Past Perfect

The Past Perfect is formed by means of the Past Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to have* and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> I worked?	I <b>had not</b> worked
He <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> he worked?	He <b>had not</b> worked
She <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> she worked?	She <b>had not</b> worked
It <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> it worked?	It <b>had not</b> worked
We <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> we worked?	We <b>had not</b> worked
You <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> you worked?	You <b>had not</b> worked
They <b>had</b> worked	<b>Had</b> they worked?	They <b>had not</b> worked

The Past Perfect is used:

**1.** To express an action which happened before another past action or before a stated moment in the past. The moment may be indicated by another past action expressed by a verb in the Past Indefinite or by an adverbial phrase.

*Ann had finished work when she met her friends.*

*Ann had finished work by 5 p.m.*

**2.** To express an action which finished in the past and whose result was visible in the past:

*He was happy. He had signed an important contract.*

*Sally was tired. She had walked 5 miles.*

(The actions finished in the past and their results were visible in the past, too.)

**3.** To denote only the completion of the action but not the priority:

*He waited until she had found the key and opened the door.*

*She did lots of work until she had finally gone to bed.*



4. With **Stative Verbs** (verbs describing states) (not used in the Continuous) for an action or state which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point or the whole period of duration of the action is indicated:

*Ann had known me since our childhood.*

*We had had bad weather for a week. We were fed up with it.*

**Note:** The preposition **for** is used to denote the whole period of duration, **since** is used to indicate the starting point of the action.

If the conjunction **since** introduces a clause, the verb in this case is used in the Past Indefinite:

*Betty couldn't speak when I phoned her. She had been very busy since early morning. (since she got up.)*

5. Rarely in negative sentences:

*They hadn't spoken to each other for three days and were in a state of rage.*

6. After verbs **to want, to hope, to expect, to mean, to think about** to say what we wanted or hoped to do, but didn't:

*I had wanted to see the gallery before I left Paris, but it was closed.*

7. With the conjunctions **hardly ... when, scarcely ... when, no sooner ... than**. For the sake of emphasis, the word order may be inverted:

*Hardly had I turned on the television, when I heard shocking news.*

*No sooner had he opened the door than the children rushed to meet him.*

*Scarcely had Peter opened the letter when he understood everything.*

**Note:** The Past Perfect is the past equivalent of the Present Perfect:

*He had lost his watch. He couldn't find it.* (The action happened in the past and its result was also visible in the past.)

*He has lost his watch. He can't find it.* (The action happened in the past and its result is still visible in the present)

The Past Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

**before, after, as soon as, already, just, for, since, till/ until, when, by, by the time, never,** etc.

### The Past Simple vs The Past Perfect

<b><i>The Past Simple</i></b> is used:	<b><i>The Past Perfect</i></b> is used:
1. To denote a succession of actions in the past:	1. To denote an action which happened before another action in the past:
<i>When he stopped singing, everyone left. (= they left after he stopped singing.)</i>	<i>When he stopped singing, everyone had left. (= they left before he stopped singing.)</i>

<i>I got up when the phone rang. (= the phone rang and then I got up.)</i>	<i>I had gone to bed when the phone rang. (= I went to bed and then the phone rang.)</i>
<b>2. With <i>before, as soon as, when</i> or <i>after</i> to say that one event happened after another:</b>	<b>2. With <i>before, as soon as, when</i> or <i>after</i> when the idea of completion of the previous action is more important:</b>
<i>They went out after it stopped raining.</i> <i>When Carol brushed her teeth, she went to bed.</i>	<i>They went out after it had stopped raining.</i> <i>When Carol had brushed her teeth, she went to bed.</i>
<b>3. To emphasise that the second event is the result of the first:</b>	
<i>She became famous after she appeared on the TV programme.</i> <i>When the teacher came in, all the children stood up.</i>	

### The Past Perfect Continuous

The Past Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Past Perfect of the auxiliary verb *to be* and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
<b>I had been working</b>	<b>Had I been working?</b>	<b>I had not been working</b>
<b>He had been working</b>	<b>Had he been working?</b>	<b>He had not been working</b>
<b>She had been working</b>	<b>Had she been working?</b>	<b>She had not been working</b>
<b>It had been working</b>	<b>Had it been working?</b>	<b>It had not been working</b>
<b>We had been working</b>	<b>Had we been working?</b>	<b>We had not been working</b>
<b>You had been working</b>	<b>Had you been working?</b>	<b>You had not been working</b>
<b>They had been working</b>	<b>Had they been working?</b>	<b>They had not been working</b>

The Past Perfect Continuous is used:

**1.** To denote an action which began before a definite moment in the past, continued up to that moment and was still going on at that moment. The starting point or the whole period of duration of the action is indicated:

*We could not go out because it had been raining since early morning.*

*They had been expecting the news for two hours when I called.*

**2.** To put an emphasis on the duration of an action which started and finished in the past before another past action or a stated time in the past, usually with *for* and *since*:

*They had been looking for a house for six months before they found one they liked.*

**3.** To express an action which lasted for some time in the past and whose result was visible in the past:

*Her eyes were red. She had been crying all morning.*

*I had been working hard, so I felt I needed some rest.*

**Note:** The Past Perfect Continuous is the past equivalent of the Present Perfect Continuous:

*At last the bus came. I had been waiting for 30 minutes.* (The action lasted for some time in the past and its result was also visible in the past.)

*I hope the bus will come soon. I have been waiting for 30 minutes.* (The action started in the past and its result is still visible in the present)

The Past Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*before, after, as soon as, already, just, for, since, till/ until, when, by, by the time, never,* etc.

### The Past Continuous vs The Past Perfect Continuous

<i>The Past Continuous</i> is used:	<i>The Past Perfect Continuous</i> is used:
To denote an action going on at a definite moment in the past:	To denote an action which lasted for some time in the past and whose result was visible in the past:
<i>When we met Mark and Sue, they were playing tennis. (= we met while they were playing.)</i> <i>It was raining when we went out.</i>	<i>When we met Mark and Sue, they had been playing tennis. (= we met after they had finished.)</i> <i>When we went out, the sun was shining but the ground was wet. It had been raining.</i>

### The Past Perfect Continuous vs The Past Perfect

<i>The Past Perfect Continuous</i> is used:	<i>The Past Perfect</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> To emphasize the continuity or duration of a situation or activity in the past:	<b>1.</b> To emphasize the completion of a situation or action in the past:
<i>John had been saving since Christmas to buy a bike he wanted.</i>	<i>John had saved enough money to buy a bike he wanted.</i>
<b>2.</b> To say <i>how long</i> (for an activity that was still happening):	<b>2.</b> To say <i>how much, how many</i> or <i>how many times</i> (for completed actions):

<i>Tim was busy. He had been writing letters all day.</i>	<i>Tim was busy. He had written five letters that day.</i>
<b>3. With dynamic verbs:</b>	<b>3. With stative verbs:</b>
<i>He had been repairing the car for 5 hours before it started.</i>	<i>He had owned the car for 3 years before it broke.</i>

## The Future Continuous

The Future Continuous is formed by means of the Future Indefinite of the auxiliary verb **to be** and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle **not** is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
<b>I will be working</b>	<b>Will I be working?</b>	<b>I will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>He will be working</b>	<b>Will he be working?</b>	<b>He will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>She will be working</b>	<b>Will she be working?</b>	<b>She will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>It will be working</b>	<b>Will it be working?</b>	<b>It will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>We will be working</b>	<b>Will we be working?</b>	<b>We will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>You will be working</b>	<b>Will you be working?</b>	<b>You will not (won't) be working</b>
<b>They will be working</b>	<b>Will they be working?</b>	<b>They will not (won't) be working</b>

The Future Continuous is used:

**1.** To denote an action in progress at a definite future moment. This future moment can be clear from the situation or it can be indicated by the adverbial phrases of definite time such as ***at this time tomorrow/next week/next month, at 9 o'clock on Monday***, etc.:

*She will be sleeping at 7 a.m. tomorrow.*

*Jack will be flying to London at this time on Saturday.*

**2.** To express an action which the speaker expects to take place in the future in the natural course of events, or which will definitely happen in the future as the result of a routine or arrangement:

*I feel I'll be asking you the same question tomorrow.*

*I'll be seeing Tom tomorrow. (because we work together.)*

**Note 1:** There is some difference between the Future Indefinite and the Future Continuous:

<i>Will you be coming to the meeting tonight?</i>	(casual question about future event)
<i>Will you come to the meeting tonight?</i>	(request)
<i>I'll be coming to visit you tomorrow so I can bring the magazines then.</i>	(future activity in normal course of events)
<i>I'll come and visit you tomorrow.</i>	(intention, promise)

**Note 2:** Both the Present Continuous and the Future Continuous are used to denote an action which is already planned or decided in advance:

*I am travelling by train. I have already bought the ticket.*

*I will be travelling by train.*

However, when a more distant or uncertain future is involved, the Future Continuous is preferable:

*He says he will be returning from abroad some time in the future.*

*He says he is returning from abroad next month.*

**3.** To express polite enquiry about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them:

*Will you be going to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?*

**Note:** Depending on the situation different future tenses can be used. Compare:

<b>Future Continuous</b>	<i>Will you be staying in this evening?</i>	(just asking politely about plans)
<b>to be going to do</b>	<i>Are you going to stay in this evening?</i>	(perhaps pressing for a decision)
<b>Future Indefinite</b>	<i>Will you stay in this evening?</i>	(request or order)

**4.** To express simultaneous actions in the future, with the Future Continuous in the main clause and the Present Continuous in the subordinate clauses of time:

*I'll be looking after the children while you are making dinner.*

*While Mary is doing the shopping, Peter will be washing the car.*

The Future Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*at this time tomorrow/next week/next month, at 7 o'clock on Monday, soon, the day after tomorrow, etc.*

## The Future Perfect

The Future Perfect is formed by means of the Future Indefinite of the auxiliary verb *to have* and Participle II of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
<b>I will have worked</b>	<b>Will I have worked?</b>	<b>I will not (won't) have worked</b>
<b>He will have worked</b>	<b>Will he have worked?</b>	<b>He won't have worked</b>
<b>She will have worked</b>	<b>Will she have worked?</b>	<b>She won't have worked</b>
<b>It will have worked</b>	<b>Will it have worked?</b>	<b>It won't have worked</b>
<b>We will have worked</b>	<b>Will we have worked?</b>	<b>We won't have worked</b>
<b>You will have worked</b>	<b>Will you have worked?</b>	<b>You won't have worked</b>
<b>They will have worked</b>	<b>Will they have worked?</b>	<b>They won't have worked</b>

The Future Perfect is used:

**1.** To denote an action which will be completed before a particular moment in the future:

*I'll have gone to bed by the time you return home.*

*Sally won't have finished the translation until 7 o'clock.*

The Future Perfect is used with the following time indicators:

*by the time, by then, by that time, by, before, until/till* (in negative sentences), etc.

### The Future Perfect Continuous

The Future Perfect Continuous is formed by means of the Future Perfect of the auxiliary verb *to be* and Participle I of the notional verb. In the interrogative form the first auxiliary verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary verb.

Affirmative	Interrogative	Negative
I <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will I have been</b> working?	I <b>won't have been</b> working
He <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will he have been</b> working?	He <b>won't have been</b> working
She <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will she have been</b> working?	She <b>won't have been</b> working
It <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will it have been</b> working?	It <b>won't have been</b> working
We <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will we have been</b> working?	We <b>won't have been</b> working
You <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will you have been</b> working?	You <b>won't have been</b> working
They <b>will have been</b> working	<b>Will they have been</b> working?	They <b>won't have been</b> working

The Future Perfect Continuous is used:

**1.** To denote an action which will begin before a definite moment in the future, will continue up to that moment and will be going on at that moment:

*On Saturday, we will have been dating for a year.*

*By the end of the year, I will have been working for this company for 20 years.*

The Future Perfect Continuous is used with the following time indicators:

*by the time/then/that time/Monday ... for*, etc.

### The Future Perfect Continuous vs The Future Perfect

<i>The Future Perfect Continuous</i> is used:	<i>The Future Perfect</i> is used:
<b>1.</b> To emphasize the continuity or duration of a situation or activity by a particular moment in the future:	<b>1.</b> To emphasize the completion of a situation or action by a particular moment in the future:
<i>We will have been writing the report for 5 hours by the evening.</i>	<i>We will have written the report by the evening.</i>



<b>2.</b> To say <i>how long</i> (for an activity that will be still happening):	<b>2.</b> To say <i>how much, how many</i> or <i>how many times</i> (for completed actions):
<i>Tom will have been repairing his car for 3 days by tomorrow. .</i>	<i>Tim will have repaired three cars by tomorrow.</i>
<b>3.</b> With dynamic verbs:	<b>3.</b> With stative verbs:
<i>Next month I will have been teaching Jason for 2 years.</i>	<i>Next month I will have known Jason for 2 years.</i>

### Different Ways of Expressing the Future

We can use different ways to express the future in English. The choice depends on the situation. Here are the main forms and their uses:

<b>1.</b> To express future actions which are fixed personal arrangements made in advance: <i>I'm not working tomorrow.</i> <i>What are you doing this evening?</i>	<b>Present Continuous</b>
<b>2.</b> To express a future action according to timetable, programme (for public transport, theatre, etc.): <i>My train leaves at 11.30 on Tuesday.</i> <i>The football championship begins on Monday.</i>	<b>Present Simple</b>
<b>3.</b> To express plans and intentions to do something in future: <i>I'm going to phone him tomorrow.</i> <i>He is going to join a gym next week.</i>	<b>to be going to do</b>
<b>4.</b> To make on-the-spot decisions and also to offer, to refuse, to agree, to promise, to threaten and to ask to do something: <i>I'll go and shut the door.</i> <i>We'll help you with your housework.</i>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<b>5.</b> To make predictions based on what we see or we know, especially when there is evidence: <i>Look at the dark clouds! It's going to rain.</i> <i>That building is going to collapse soon.</i>	<b>to be going to do</b>
<b>6.</b> To make predictions based on what we believe or think, often with <i>I believe, expect, hope, think</i> , etc: <i>I hope it won't rain tomorrow.</i> <i>I'm sure she will pass the exam easily.</i>	<b>Future Simple</b>
<b>7.</b> To express that something is going to happen very soon: <i>The train is about to leave – let's hurry.</i> <i>I am about to fall asleep. Don't bother me!</i>	<b>to be about to do</b>

<p><b>8.</b> To express official arrangements and orders, especially when announced:  <i>The President <b>is to visit</b> Brussels next week.</i>  <i>You <b>are to be</b> here by nine o'clock.</i></p>	<b>to be to do</b>
<p><b>9.</b> To show that something is going to happen immediately:  <i>She <b>is on the point of</b> leaving.</i>  <i>I <b>am on the point of</b> explaining.</i></p>	<b>to be on the point of doing</b>
<p><b>10.</b> To express actions in progress at a stated future time:  <i>I <b>will be watching</b> this series tomorrow at 5p.m.</i>  <i>He <b>will be sunbathing</b> in Hawaii this time next week.</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<p><b>11.</b> To express actions which are the result of a routine (instead of Present Continuous):  <i>I <b>will be seeing</b> John tomorrow. (=We work in the same office so we'll definitely meet)</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<p><b>12.</b> To ask politely about people's arrangements to see if they can do something for us or because we want to offer to do something for them:  <i><b>Will you be going</b> to the supermarket? Can you buy me some tea?</i></p>	<b>Future Continuous</b>
<p><b>13.</b> To express actions which will be finished before a stated future time:  <i>She <b>will have come back</b> <u>by</u> the end of July.</i>  <i>She <b>won't have finished</b> <u>until</u> 8 o'clock.</i>  <i>(till/until – in negative sentences)</i></p>	<b>Future Perfect</b>
<p><b>14.</b> To express duration of an action up to a certain time in the future:  <i><u>By</u> the end of this year she <b>will have been working</b> here <u>for</u> two years.</i>  <i>They <b>will have been dating</b> <u>for</u> three months <u>by</u> tomorrow.</i></p>	<b>Future Perfect Continuous</b>

### Future in the Past

Future in the Past is used to denote actions which were future from the point of view of the past:

*I was sure they would help me.*

*He knew she would have finished work by 7 p.m.*

	<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
<b>Future Indefinite in the Past</b>	I <b>would</b> work	<b>Would</b> I work?	I <b>would (wouldn't)</b> work
<b>Future Continuous in the Past</b>	I <b>would be</b> working	<b>Would</b> I <b>be</b> working	I <b>would (wouldn't) be</b> working
<b>Future Perfect in the Past</b>	I <b>would have</b> worked	<b>Would</b> I <b>have</b> worked	I <b>would (wouldn't) have</b> worked
<b>Future Perfect Continuous in the Past</b>	I <b>would have been</b> working	<b>Would</b> I <b>have been</b> working	I <b>would (wouldn't) have been</b> working

### The Passive Voice

The Passive Voice is formed by means of the auxiliary verb *to be* in the required form and Participle II (Past Participle) of the notional verb.

	<b>Active</b>	<b>Passive</b>
<i>Present Indefinite</i>	He repairs his car.	His car <b>is</b> repaired.
<i>Past Indefinite</i>	He repaired his car.	His car <b>was</b> repaired.
<i>Future Indefinite</i>	He <b>will</b> repair his car.	His car <b>will be</b> repaired.
<i>Modal + Infinitive</i>	He <b>can</b> repair his car. He <b>must</b> repair his car. He <b>should</b> repair his car. He <b>has to</b> repair his car.	His <b>can be</b> repaired. His <b>must be</b> repaired. His <b>should be</b> repaired. His car <b>has to be</b> repaired.

In the interrogative form the first auxiliary or a modal verb is placed before the subject. In the negative form the negative particle *not* is placed after the first auxiliary or a modal verb.

<b>Affirmative</b>	<b>Interrogative</b>	<b>Negative</b>
His car <b>is</b> washed.	<b>Is</b> his car washed?	His car <b>is not</b> washed.
His car <b>was</b> washed.	<b>Was</b> his car washed?	His car <b>was not</b> washed.
His car <b>will be</b> washed.	<b>Will</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His car <b>will not be</b> washed.
His car <b>can be</b> washed.	<b>Can</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>cannot be</b> washed.
His car <b>must be</b> washed.	<b>Must</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>must not be</b> washed.
His car <b>should be</b> washed.	<b>Should</b> his car <b>be</b> washed?	His <b>should not be</b> washed.

The Passive Voice is used:

**1.** When the person who carries out the action is unknown, unimportant or obvious from the context:

*My car was stolen last week. (We do not know who stole the car.)*

*Coffee beans are grown in Brazil. (It's not important who grows the coffee.)*

*My car will be serviced tomorrow. (It's obvious that a mechanic will service it.)*

2. When the action itself is more important than the person who carries it out, as in news headlines, newspaper articles, formal notices, instructions, advertisements, processes, etc.:

*The new hospital will be opened by the Queen on May 15<sup>th</sup>. (formal notice)*

*Then, the milk is taken to a factory where it is pasteurized. (process)*

3. When we refer to an unpleasant event and we do not want to say who or what it is to blame:

*A lot of mistakes were made. (instead of 'You made a lot of mistakes.')*

4. When we want to emphasize the agent:

*The English lesson was taken by the German teacher yesterday.*

Changing from the Active Voice into the Passive Voice:

- ❖ The object of the active sentence becomes the subject in the passive sentence. The active verb changes into a passive form and the subject of the active verb becomes the agent which either introduced with “by” or is omitted:

	<i>Subject</i>	<i>Verb</i>	<i>Object</i>	<i>Agent</i>
<i>Active</i>	<i>Kate</i>	<i>wrote</i>	<i>the story.</i>	
<i>Passive</i>	<i>The story</i>	<i>was written</i>		<i>by Kate.</i>

- ❖ The active verb remains in **the same tense** but changes into a passive form.
- ❖ We use **by + agent** to say who or what carries the action. We use **with + instrument / material/ ingredient** to say what the agent used.  
*The pancakes were made by Claire.*  
*They were made with eggs, flour, milk.*
- ❖ In passive questions with **who, whom, which** we do not omit “by”:  
*Who offered her the job? → Who was she offered the job by?*
- ❖ Only transitive verbs (those that take a direct object) can be changed into the passive:  
*Active: Bill lives in a flat. – (no passive, live is an intransitive verb)*
- ❖ The agent (the subject of the active sentence) can be omitted when the subject is *they, he, someone, somebody, people, one*, etc.:
- ❖ With the verbs which can take two objects, such as **bring, tell, send, show, teach, promise, buy, sell, read, offer, give, lend**, etc., we can form two different passive sentences.  
*The conductor gave me the ticket. (active)*  
*I was given the ticket by the conductor. (passive, more usual)*  
*The ticket was given to me by the conductor. (passive, less usual)*

- ❖ If in an active sentence a preposition follows a verb, then in the passive it is placed immediately after the verb:  
*She looks **after** her son well. → Her son is looked **after** well.*  
*They listened **to** that song last month. → That song was listened **to** last month.*

### The Infinitive and The -ing Form

The <b>to-infinitive</b> is used:	The <b>-ing form</b> is used:
<p><b>1.</b> to express purpose:  <i>She went out <b>to buy</b> some milk.</i></p>	<p><b>1.</b> as a noun:  <i><b>Eating</b> vegetables is good for health.</i></p>
<p><b>2.</b> after certain verbs (<i>advise, agree, appear, decide, expect, hope, offer, promise, offer, refuse, etc.</i>):  <i>He promised <b>to be</b> back at 10 o'clock.</i></p> <p><b>3.</b> after certain adjectives (<i>angry, happy, glad, etc.</i>):  <i>She was glad <b>to see</b> him.</i></p> <p><b>4.</b> with <i>so + adjective + as</i>:  <i>Would you be so kind as <b>to help</b> me move the sofa?</i></p>	<p><b>2.</b> after certain verbs (<i>admit (to), avoid, consider, continue, delay, deny, enjoy, escape, excuse, fancy, finish, forgive, imagine, involve, keep (= continue), look forward to, mention, miss, object to, postpone, practise, prevent, report, resist, risk, save, stand, suggest, understand, etc.</i>):  <i>He doesn't mind <b>staying</b> home.</i></p>
<p><b>5.</b> in the expressions <i>to tell you the truth, to begin with, to be honest, etc.</i>:  <i><b>To be honest</b>, I don't like him.</i></p>	<p><b>3.</b> after <i>adore, love, like, dislike, hate, enjoy, mind, prefer</i> (to express general preference):  <i>He likes <b>cooking</b>. (in general).</i>  <b>BUT</b> <i>I like <b>to cook</b> meat and fish. (specific preference)</i></p>
<p><b>6.</b> after question words (<i>where, what, who, how, which</i>, but not after 'why'):  <i>Has she told you where <b>to meet</b> them?  <b>BUT</b> I don't know why <u>he left</u> so early.</i></p> <p><b>7.</b> after <i>be + the first, second, next, last, best, etc.</i>:  <i>He was the last <b>to come</b> to work.</i></p>	<p><b>4.</b> after certain expressions (<i>I'm busy, it's no use, it's no good, it's (not) worth, what's the use of, can't help, there's no point in, can't stand, be/get used to, be/get accustomed to, have difficulty in, etc.</i>):  <i>It's no use <b>complaining</b>.</i></p>
<p><b>8.</b> after <i>would like, would love, would prefer</i> (to express specific preference):  <i>I would love <b>to go</b> for a walk.</i></p>	<p><b>5.</b> after 'go' for physical activities:  <i>They go <b>skiing</b> every winter.</i></p>

<p><b>9.</b> after nouns: <i>It's a pleasure <b>to work</b> with you.</i></p>	<p><b>6.</b> after <i>spend/waste time</i>: <i>He wasted his time <b>playing</b> cards.</i></p>
<p><b>10.</b> after <i>too/enough</i> constructions: <i>He's too short <b>to reach</b> the top shelf.</i> <i>He isn't tall enough <b>to reach</b> the shelf.</i></p>	<p><b>7.</b> after prepositions: <i>He left without <b>saying</b> goodbye.</i></p>
<p><b>11.</b> with <i>it + be + adjective + of + smb.</i> <i>It was nice of him <b>to remember</b> my birthday.</i></p> <p><b>12.</b> with 'only' to express unsatisfactory result: <i>He called me <b>only to say</b> that he would be late.</i></p>	<p><b>8.</b> after <i>see, hear, listen, watch</i> to express an incomplete action, an action in progress or a long action: <i>I saw Kate <b>painting</b> the kitchen. = (I saw part of the action in progress.)</i> <b>BUT</b> after <i>see, hear, listen, watch + infinitive without to</i> to express a complete action: <i>I watched Kate <b>paint</b> the kitchen. = (I saw the whole action from beginning to end.)</i></p>

The <b>infinitive without to</b> is used:	
<b>1.</b> after modal verbs ( <i>must, can, will, must, might, should, shall, etc.</i> ): <i>You <b>must be</b> back at 12 o'clock.</i>	
<b>2.</b> after <i>had better, would rather</i> : <i>I'd rather <b>go</b> to the theatre.</i>	
<b>3.</b> after <i>make, let + object</i> : <i>I made him <b>apologise</b>.</i> <b>BUT</b> in the passive form <i>be made, be allowed + to-infinitive</i> : <i>He was <b>made to apologise</b>.</i>	
<b>Note 1.</b> The verb <i>help</i> is followed by a to-infinitive or an infinitive without to: <i>She helped me (to) <b>wash</b> the dishes.</i>	
<b>Note 2.</b> If two infinitives are joined by ' <i>and</i> ', the ' <i>to</i> ' of the second infinitive can be omitted: <i>I want <b>to eat</b> something and <b>have</b> a rest.</i>	

### Prepositions in Place and Movement Phrases

The following are the main prepositions, which are used in place phrases:

<b>At</b>	❖ to show a point in space where something is happening:	<i>There was a huge queue <b>at</b> the bus stop.</i> <i>Turn right <b>at</b> the next corner.</i>
	❖ with verbs that show place: <i>be, wait, sit, stay, live, etc.</i> :	<i>He waited <b>at</b> the door for five minutes.</i> <i>We were <b>at</b> the theatre yesterday.</i>
	❖ before the names of group activities:	<i><b>at</b> a party, <b>at</b> a lecture, <b>at</b> a meeting, <b>at</b> the match, <b>at</b> a concert, <b>at</b> the wedding, <b>at</b> the funeral</i>



	❖ with a large place when it is thought of as a point, a stage on a journey or a meeting place:	<i>The plane stops for an hour <b>at</b> Frankfurt.</i>
	❖ with a possessive to mean “at somebody’s house or shop”:	<i>I’m <b>at</b> my friends’.</i> <i>She stayed <b>at</b> the hairdresser’s till 5.</i>
	❖ before the name of a city to refer to that city’s university:	<i>He’s a student <b>at</b> Oxford.</i>
	❖ with <b>arrive</b> to talk about places or events:	<i>When did she arrive <b>at</b> the party?</i> <i>They arrived <b>at</b> the airport early.</i>
	❖ to talk about addresses:	<i>We live <b>at</b> number 7 Hill Street.</i> <i>Are you still <b>at</b> the same address?</i>
	❖ <b><u>useful phrases</u></b> :	<i><b>at the bottom of the pile, at the top of the hill, at the crossroads, at home, at work, at school, at a hotel, at university, at the table, at sea (=on a voyage)</b></i>

<b>In</b>	❖ for position inside large areas (when something is surrounded on all sides):	<i>She grew up <b>in</b> Paris.</i> <i>I last saw her <b>in</b> the car park.</i> <i>He is <b>in</b> his room now.</i>
	❖ to show that something is taking place inside rather than outside:	<i>Come <b>in</b> the office.</i>
	❖ with <b>arrive</b> to talk about large cities and countries:	<i>We arrived <b>in</b> Kyiv on Monday.</i> <i>He arrived <b>in</b> Ukraine yesterday.</i>
	❖ with verbs which do not involve movement: <b>be, wait, sit, stay, live, etc.:</b>	<i>I live <b>in</b> the old town.</i> <i>Wait for me <b>in</b> the pub.</i>
	❖ to give the name of the street:	<i>She lives <b>in</b> Park Street.</i>
	❖ to show the position of things which form part of the line:	<i>There’s a misprint <b>in</b> line 6.</i> <i>I don’t see him <b>in</b> the queue.</i>
	❖ to talk about private cars, taxis:	<i>John arrived <b>in</b> a taxi.</i> <i>Mary went <b>in</b> her car.</i>
	❖ <b><u>useful phrases</u></b> :	<i><b>in the country, in the world, in hospital, in prison, in a hotel, in the middle of the road, in the center of town, in the north / south, in the open air, in the street, in the mountains, in the sky, in the rain, in a picture, in a tent, in bed</b></i>

<b>On</b>	❖ for position on a surface:	<i>Our hotel is <b>on</b> a small island.</i>
	❖ for position by a river, lake or sea:	<i>The city is <b>on</b> the (river) Danube. He owns a villa <b>on</b> the coast.</i>
	❖ for position on a line:	<i>My house is <b>on</b> the way from Kyiv to Chernihiv.</i>
	❖ to talk about travel using buses, planes, trains, motorcycles, horses:	<i>He's arriving <b>on</b> the 3.15 train. There's no room <b>on</b> the bus.</i>
	❖ <b><u>useful phrases:</u></b>	<i><b>on</b> the left / right, <b>on</b> the left-hand / right-hand side, <b>on</b> a map, <b>on</b> a menu, <b>on</b> a list, <b>on</b> a farm, <b>on</b> the way, <b>on</b> a trip, <b>on</b> a tour, <b>on</b> board, <b>on</b> a cruise, <b>on</b> an excursion, <b>on</b> Earth, <b>on</b> the outskirts, <b>on</b> the pavement, <b>on</b> page three, <b>on</b> (at) the corner of the street.</i>

**Note:** Compare the sentences:

*We were **at** sea for 20 days. (on a voyage)*

*We love swimming **in** the sea. (in the water)*

*I was **at** Sue's (house) last night. (position at a point)*

*It was cold **in** Sue's house last night. (inside the house)*

*I was sitting **in** the back when we crashed. (inside the car)*

*Let's sit **at** the back. (in the cinema)*

*I wrote my address **on** the back of the photo. (on the surface)*

<b>To</b>	❖ with verbs of movement including <i>go, come, travel, return, fly, send, get, walk</i> , etc. to show the direction:	<i>When are you going back <b>to</b> Italy? Welcome <b>to</b> Kyiv! I don't want to return <b>to</b> my city. He drove <b>to</b> the airport in two hours.</i>
	❖ with nouns that suggest movement including <i>journey, trip, stroll, visit, way</i> , etc.:	<i>Did you enjoy your visit <b>to</b> the zoo? My trip <b>to</b> Glasgow was very tiring.</i>
	❖ with <i>been</i> when it means "visited":	<i>I've been <b>to</b> Italy several times.</i>
	<b>But</b> when <i>been</i> means "stayed or lived", it is used with <i>in</i> :	<i>I've been <b>in</b> France for five days now.</i>

**Note:** Preposition *to* is not used before home:

*I'm tired. Let's go home.*

*He met us on his way home.*

<b>Into</b>	❖ with verbs to mean “to move from outside to inside”:	<i>Let’s drop <b>into</b> the shop. He got <b>into</b> the car and drove away.</i>
<b>Out of</b>	❖ the opposite of the preposition <b>into</b> :	<i>I ran <b>out of</b> the shop. He got <b>out of</b> the car and came to me.</i>
<b>Towards</b>	❖ means “moving or pointing in a particular direction”:	<i>She was coming <b>towards</b> me. Pat moved <b>towards</b> the door.</i>
<b>Across / Over</b>	❖ to talk about the position on the other side of sth., or getting to the other side of sth:	<i>The truck came <b>across/over</b> the bridge. Sam lives in the house <b>across/over</b> the road from ours.</i>
<b>Across</b>	❖ to talk about sth. that is thought of as a surface or an area:	<i>He saw me <b>across</b> the hall. They travelled <b>across</b> Australia.</i>
<b>Over</b>	❖ to talk about reaching the other side of sth. that is high, or higher than it is wide:	<i>He hurt his leg as he jumped <b>over</b> the wall.</i>
<b>Along</b>	❖ to talk about following a line of some kind (a path, a road, a river, a beach, a canal, etc.):	<i>They walked <b>along</b> the path and came to a small bridge. We were running <b>along</b> the road very fast.</i>
<b>Through</b>	❖ to talk about movement in a three dimensional space, with things all around:  <b>But:</b>	<i>He pushed his way <b>through</b> the crowd of people. I walked <b>through</b> the forest to the station. (from one side to the other) I like walking <b>in</b> the forest. (inside)</i>

### It and There

The use of **it** allows us to put the topic of a sentence at the end, and places more emphasis on what you want to talk about. Compare:

*Making snowmen can be very funny.* (emphasis on *funny*)

*It is very funny making snowmen.* (emphasis on *making snowmen*)

Here is a summary of the uses of **it** as a subject:

❖ to talk about the weather:	<i>It snowed heavily last winter.</i> <i>It has been sunny all week.</i>
❖ to tell the time:	<i>It is seven o'clock.</i> <i>It is ages since we met.</i>
❖ to focus on an adjective:	<i>It is useful to know how to use the computer.</i> <i>It's essential to take a raincoat.</i>
❖ to introduce an action:	<i>It takes two hours to get there.</i> <i>It will rain tomorrow.</i>
❖ to describe a place:	<i>It was calm and beautiful up in the mountains.</i>
❖ to comment on a fact:	<i>It was amazing (that) no one was hurt during the hurricane.</i> <i>It is possible (that) you can catch in the rain.</i>

**There** is used:

❖ to say that something exists:	<i>There are some puddles in the street.</i> <i>There is something I'd like to ask you.</i>
❖ to mention the presence of something:	<i>I think there is somebody in the hall.</i>
❖ to say something has happened or will happen:	<i>There has been an accident at the crossroad.</i> <i>There's going to be trouble.</i>
❖ with modal verb to express possibility and probability:	<i>There must be a solution to the problem.</i> <i>There may be life on other planets.</i>
❖ with <i>seems</i> and <i>appears</i> :	<i>There seems to be a lot of problems.</i> <i>There appears to be</i>
❖ to explain a problem:	<i>There seems to be flood in that region.</i>

*It was windy yesterday.*

*There was a cold wind yesterday.*

**Note:** After **there** the verb **to be** agrees with the first noun:

*There was a heavy snowfall that night.*

*There is a lot of snow in the street.*

*There are a lot of people in the garden.*

## Appendix: Irregular Verbs

### Неправильні Дієслова

	<b>Infinitive</b>	<b>Past Simple</b>	<b>Past Participle</b>	<b>Translation</b>
1.	<b>abide</b> /ə'baɪd/	<b>abode</b> /ə'bəʊd/ <b>abided</b> /ə'baɪdɪd/	<b>abode</b> /ə'bəʊd/ <b>abided</b> /ə'baɪdɪd/	дотримуватись, терпіти, зносити
2.	<b>arise</b> /ə'raɪz/	<b>arose</b> /ə'rəʊz/	<b>arisen</b> /ə'rɪzn/	виникати, з'являтися
3	<b>awake</b> /ə'weɪk/	<b>awoke</b> /ə'wəʊk/ <b>awakened</b> /ə'weɪknd/	<b>awaked</b> /ə'weɪkt/ <b>awoken</b> /ə'wəʊkn/	прокидатися, будити, пробуджувати
4	<b>be</b> /bi:/	<b>was</b> /wɒz/ <b>were</b> /wɜ:/	<b>been</b> /bi:n/	бути
5	<b>bear</b> /beə/	<b>bore</b> /bɔ:/	<b>borne</b> /bɔ:n/ <b>born</b> /bɔ:n/	носити, переносити народжувати
6	<b>beat</b> /bi:t/	<b>beat</b> /bi:t/	<b>beaten</b> /bi:tn/	бити
7	<b>become</b> /bɪ'kʌm/	<b>became</b> /bɪ'keɪm/	<b>become</b> /bɪ'kʌm/	ставати, годитися, личити
8	<b>befall</b> /bɪ'fɔ:l/	<b>befell</b> /bɪ'fel/	<b>befallen</b> /bɪ'fɔ:ln/	траплятися
9	<b>begin</b> /bɪ'gɪn/	<b>began</b> /bɪ'gæn/	<b>begun</b> /bɪ'gʌn/	починати(ся)
10	<b>bend</b> /bend/	<b>bent</b> /bent/	<b>bent</b> /bent/ <b>bended</b> /'bendɪd/	згинати(ся), напружувати
11	<b>beseech</b> /bɪ'si:tʃ/	<b>besought</b> /bɪ'sɔ:t/	<b>besought</b> /bɪ'sɔ:t/	благати, просити
12	<b>bet</b> /bet/	<b>bet</b> /bet/	<b>bet</b> /bet/	битися об заклад
13	<b>bid</b> /bɪd/	<b>bade</b> /beɪd/ <b>bid</b> /bɪd/	<b>bid</b> /bɪd/ <b>bidden</b> /bɪdn/	загнуздувати, стримувати
14	<b>bind</b> /baɪnd/	<b>bound</b> /baʊnd/	<b>bound</b> /baʊnd/	зв'язувати
15	<b>bite</b> /baɪt/	<b>bit</b> /bɪt/	<b>bitten</b> /bɪtn/	кусати
16	<b>bleed</b> /bli:d/	<b>bled</b> /bled/	<b>bled</b> /bled/	кровоточити, стікати кров'ю
17	<b>bless</b> /bles/	<b>blessed</b> /blest/ <b>blest</b> /blest/	<b>blessed</b> /blest/ <b>blest</b> /blest/	благословляти
18	<b>blow</b> /bləʊ/	<b>blew</b> /blu:/	<b>blown</b> /bləʊn/	дути
19	<b>break</b> /breɪk/	<b>broke</b> /brəʊk/	<b>broken</b> /brəʊkn/	ламати(ся)
20	<b>breed</b> /bri:d/	<b>bred</b> /bred/	<b>bred</b> /bred/	виховувати, вирощувати
21	<b>bring</b> /brɪŋ/	<b>brought</b> /brɔ:t/	<b>brought</b> /brɔ:t/	приносити
22	<b>build</b> /bɪld/	<b>built</b> /bɪlt/	<b>built</b> /bɪlt/	будувати
23	<b>burn</b> /bɜ:n/	<b>burnt</b> /bɜ:nt/ <b>burned</b> /bɜ:nd/	<b>burnt</b> /bɜ:nt/ <b>burned</b> /bɜ:nd/	палити, горіти

24	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	<b>burst</b> /bɜ:st/	лопатися, розриватися
25	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/ <b>busted</b> /'bʌstɪd/	<b>bust</b> /bʌst/ <b>busted</b> /'bʌstɪd/	збанкрутувати, загуляти
26	<b>buy</b> /baɪ/	<b>bought</b> /bɔ:t/	<b>bought</b> /bɔ:t/	купувати
27	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	<b>cast</b> /kɑ:st/	кидати, метати
28	<b>catch</b> /kæʃ/	<b>caught</b> /kɔ:t/	<b>caught</b> /kɔ:t/	ловити, спіймати
29	<b>choose</b> /tʃu:z/	<b>chose</b> /tʃəʊz/	<b>chosen</b> /tʃəʊzn/	вибирати
30	<b>cleave</b> /kli:v/	<b>clove</b> /kləʊv/ <b>cleft</b> /kleft/	<b>cloven</b> /kləʊvn/ <b>cleft</b> /kleft/	розколювати, розсікати
31	<b>cling</b> /klɪŋ/	<b>clung</b> /klɪŋ/	<b>clung</b> /klɪŋ/	чіплятися, прилипати
32	<b>clothe</b> /kləʊð/	<b>clothed</b> /kləʊðd/	<b>clothed</b> /kləʊðd/	одягати
33	<b>come</b> /kʌm/	<b>came</b> /keɪm/	<b>come</b> /kʌm/	приходити
34	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	<b>cost</b> /kɒst/	коштувати
35	<b>creep</b> /kri:p/	<b>crept</b> /krept/	<b>crept</b> /krept/	повзати, стелитися
36	<b>crow</b> /krəʊ/	<b>crowed</b> /krəʊd/ <b>crew</b> /kru:/	<b>crowed</b> /krəʊd/	кричати кукуріку
37	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	<b>cut</b> /kʌt/	різати
38	<b>deal</b> /di:l/	<b>dealt</b> /delt/	<b>dealt</b> /delt/	мати справу з чимось
39	<b>dig</b> /dɪg/	<b>dug</b> /dʌg/	<b>dug</b> /dʌg/	копати
40	<b>dive</b> /daɪv/	<b>dived</b> /daɪvd/ <b>dove</b> /dəʊv/ (AmE)	<b>dived</b> /daɪvd/	пірнати
41	<b>do</b> /du:/	<b>did</b> /dɪd/	<b>done</b> /dʌn/	робити
42	<b>draw</b> /drɔ:/	<b>drew</b> /dru:/	<b>drawn</b> /drɔ:n /	малювати, креслити
43	<b>dream</b> /dri:m/	<b>dreamed</b> /dri:md/ <b>dreamt</b> /dremt/	<b>dreamed</b> /dri:md/ <b>dreamt</b> /dremt/	мріяти, бачити сон
44	<b>drink</b> /drɪŋk/	<b>drank</b> /dræŋk/	<b>drunk</b> /drʌŋk/	пити
45	<b>drive</b> /draɪv/	<b>drove</b> /drəʊv/	<b>driven</b> /drɪvn/	гнати, їхати
46	<b>dwell</b> /dwel/	<b>dwelt</b> /dwelt/ <b>dwelled</b> /dweld/	<b>dwelt</b> /dwelt/ <b>dwelled</b> /dweld/	мешкати, жити
47	<b>eat</b> /i:t/	<b>ate</b> /et/	<b>eaten</b> /i:tn/	їсти
48	<b>fall</b> /fɔ:l/	<b>fell</b> /fel/	<b>fallen</b> /fɔ:ln/	падати
49	<b>feed</b> /fi:d/	<b>fed</b> /fed/	<b>fed</b> /fed/	годувати
50	<b>feel</b> /fi:l/	<b>felt</b> /felt/	<b>felt</b> /felt/	почувати, відчувати
51	<b>fight</b> /faɪt/	<b>fought</b> /fɔ:t/	<b>fought</b> /fɔ:t/	воювати, битися
52	<b>find</b> /faɪnd/	<b>found</b> /faʊnd/	<b>found</b> /faʊnd/	знаходити



53	<b>flee</b> /fli:/	<b>fled</b> /fled/	<b>fled</b> /fled/	тікати, уникати
54	<b>fling</b> /flɪŋ/	<b>flung</b> /flʌŋ/	<b>flung</b> /flʌŋ/	кидати(ся)
55	<b>fly</b> /flaɪ/	<b>flew</b> /flu:/	<b>flown</b> /fləʊn/	літати
56	<b>forbid</b> /fə'bɪd/	<b>forbade</b> /fə'beɪd/	<b>forbidden</b> /fə'bɪdn/	забороняти
57	<b>forget</b> /fə'get/	<b>forgot</b> /fə'gɒt/	<b>forgotten</b> /fə'gɒtn/	забувати
58	<b>forgive</b> /fə'gɪv/	<b>forgave</b> /fə'geɪv/	<b>forgiven</b> /fə'gɪvn/	прощати
59	<b>freeze</b> /fri:z/	<b>froze</b> /frəʊz/	<b>frozen</b> /frəʊzn/	морозити, замерзати
60	<b>get</b> /get/	<b>got</b> /gɒt/	<b>got</b> /gɒt/ <b>gotten</b> /gɒtn/ (AmE)	діставати, отримувати, одержувати
61	<b>gild</b> /gɪld/	<b>gilt</b> /gɪlt/ <b>gilded</b> /gɪldɪd/	<b>gilt</b> /gɪlt/ <b>gilded</b> /gɪldɪd/	золотити
62	<b>give</b> /gɪv/	<b>gave</b> /geɪv/	<b>given</b> /gɪvn/	давати
63	<b>go</b> /gəʊ/	<b>went</b> /went/	<b>gone</b> /gɒn/	йти, їхати
64	<b>grind</b> /graɪnd/	<b>ground</b> /graʊnd/	<b>ground</b> /graʊnd/	молоти, товкти
65	<b>grow</b> /grəʊ/	<b>grew</b> /gru:/	<b>grown</b> /grəʊn/	рости, вирощувати
66	<b>hang</b> /hæŋ/	<b>hung</b> /hʌŋ/ <b>hanged</b> /hæŋd/	<b>hung</b> /hʌŋ/ <b>hanged</b> /hæŋd/	висіти, страчувати
67	<b>have</b> /hæv/	<b>had</b> /hæd/	<b>had</b> /hæd/	мати
68	<b>hear</b> /hɪə/	<b>heard</b> /hɜ:d/	<b>heard</b> /hɜ:d/	чути
69	<b>heave</b> /hi:v/	<b>heaved</b> /hi:vd/ <b>hove</b> /həʊv/	<b>heaved</b> /hi:vd/ <b>hove</b> /həʊv/	підіймати, тягти, зітхати
70	<b>hew</b> /hju:/	<b>hewed</b> /hju:d/	<b>hewed</b> /hju:d/ <b>hewn</b> /hju:n/	рубати, тесати
71	<b>hide</b> /haɪd/	<b>hid</b> /hɪd/	<b>hidden</b> /hɪdn/	ховати(ся)
72	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	<b>hit</b> /hɪt/	ударяти, забитися
73	<b>hold</b> /həʊld/	<b>held</b> /held/	<b>held</b> /held/	тримати, держати
74	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	<b>hurt</b> /hɜ:t/	здавати болу, боліти
75	<b>keep</b> /ki:p/	<b>kept</b> /kept/	<b>kept</b> /kept/	тримати, зберігати
76	<b>kneel</b> /ni:l/	<b>knelt</b> /nelt/ <b>kneeled</b> /ni:ld/ (AmE)	<b>knelt</b> /nelt/ <b>kneeled</b> /ni:ld/ (AmE)	стояти навколішки
77	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/ <b>knitted</b> /'nɪtɪd/	<b>knit</b> /nɪt/ <b>knitted</b> /'nɪtɪd/	в'язати
78	<b>know</b> /nəʊ/	<b>knew</b> /nju:/	<b>known</b> /nəʊn/	знати

79	<b>lay</b> /leɪ/	<b>laid</b> /leɪd/	<b>laid</b> /leɪd/	класти, накривати
80	<b>lead</b> /li:d/	<b>led</b> /led/	<b>led</b> /led/	вести, керувати
81	<b>lean</b> /li:n/	<b>leant</b> /lent/ <b>leaned</b> /li:nd/	<b>leant</b> /lent/ <b>leaned</b> /li:nd/	нахилияти(ся), прихилиятися
82	<b>leap</b> /li:p/	<b>leapt</b> /lept/ <b>leaped</b> /li:pt/	<b>leapt</b> /lept/ <b>leaped</b> /li:pt/	стрибати, скакати
83	<b>learn</b> /lɜ:n/	<b>learnt</b> /lɜ:nt/ <b>learned</b> /lɜ:nd/	<b>learnt</b> /lɜ:nt/ <b>learned</b> /lɜ:nd/	вчити
84	<b>leave</b> /li:v/	<b>left</b> /left/	<b>left</b> /left/	покидати, від'їжджати
85	<b>lend</b> /lend/	<b>lent</b> /lent/	<b>lent</b> /lent/	позичати
86	<b>let</b> /let/	<b>let</b> /let/	<b>let</b> /let/	дозволяти, пускати
87	<b>lie</b> /laɪ/	<b>lay</b> /leɪ/	<b>lain</b> /leɪn/	лежати
88	<b>light</b> /laɪt/	<b>lit</b> /lɪt/ <b>lighted</b> /'laɪtɪd/	<b>lit</b> /lɪt/ <b>lighted</b> /'laɪtɪd/	освітлювати
89	<b>lose</b> /lu:z/	<b>lost</b> /lɒst/	<b>lost</b> /lɒst/	губити, втрачати
90	<b>make</b> /meɪk/	<b>made</b> /meɪd/	<b>made</b> /meɪd/	робити
91	<b>mean</b> /mi:n/	<b>meant</b> /ment/	<b>meant</b> /ment/	означати, мати значення
92	<b>meet</b> /mi:t/	<b>met</b> /met/	<b>met</b> /met/	зустрічати
93	<b>mishear</b> /mɪs' hɪə/	<b>misheard</b> /mɪs'hɜ:d/	<b>misheard</b> /mɪs'hɜ:d/	недочути
94	<b>mislead</b> /mɪs'li:d/	<b>misled</b> /mɪs'led/	<b>misled</b> /mɪs'led/	вводити в оману
95	<b>mistake</b> /mɪ'steɪk/	<b>mistook</b> /mɪ'stu:k/	<b>mistaken</b> /mɪ'steɪkən/	помилятися
96	<b>mow</b> /məʊ/	<b>mowed</b> /məʊd/	<b>mown</b> /məʊn/ <b>mowed</b> /məʊd/	косити
97	<b>pay</b> /peɪ/	<b>paid</b> /peɪd/	<b>paid</b> /peɪd/	платити
98	<b>pen</b> /pen/	<b>pent</b> /pent/ <b>penned</b> /pend/	<b>pent</b> /pent/ <b>penned</b> /pend/	творити, писати
99	<b>plead</b> /pli:d/	<b>pleaded</b> /'pli:deɪd/ <b>pled</b> /pled/ (AmE)	<b>pleaded</b> /'pli:deɪd/ <b>pled</b> /pled/ (AmE)	просити, благати
100	<b>prove</b> /pru:v/	<b>proved</b> /pru:vd/	<b>proved</b> /pru:vd/ <b>proven</b> /'pru:vən/	доводити, засвідчувати
101	<b>put</b> /pʊt/	<b>put</b> /pʊt/	<b>put</b> /pʊt/	покласти, ставити
102	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	<b>quit</b> /kwɪt/	кидати (роботу)
103	<b>read</b> /ri:d/	<b>read</b> /red/	<b>read</b> /red/	читати
104	<b>rend</b> /rend/	<b>rent</b> /rent/	<b>rent</b> /rent/	рвати, шматувати

105	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/ <b>ridded</b> /'rɪdɪd/	<b>rid</b> /rɪd/ <b>ridded</b> /'rɪdɪd/	звільняти, позбавляти чогось
106	<b>ride</b> /raɪd/	<b>rode</b> /rəʊd/	<b>ridden</b> /rɪdn/	їхати верхи
107	<b>ring</b> /rɪŋ/	<b>rang</b> /ræŋ/	<b>rung</b> /rʌŋ/	дзвонити
108	<b>rise</b> /raɪz/	<b>rose</b> /rəʊz/	<b>risen</b> /rɪzn/	вставати, піднімати
109	<b>run</b> /rʌn/	<b>ran</b> /ræn/	<b>run</b> /rʌn/	бігти
110	<b>saw</b> /sɔ:/	<b>sawed</b> /sɔ:d/	<b>sawn</b> /sɔ:n/ <b>sawed</b> /sɔ:d/	пиляти, розпилювати
111	<b>say</b> /seɪ/	<b>said</b> /sed/	<b>said</b> /sed/	говорити, казати
112	<b>see</b> /si:/	<b>saw</b> /sɔ:/	<b>seen</b> /si:n/	бачити
113	<b>seek</b> /si:k/	<b>sought</b> /sɔ:t/	<b>sought</b> /sɔ:t/	шукати
114	<b>sell</b> /sel/	<b>sold</b> /səʊld/	<b>sold</b> /səʊld/	продавати
115	<b>send</b> /send/	<b>sent</b> /sent/	<b>sent</b> /sent/	надсилати
116	<b>set</b> /set/	<b>set</b> /set/	<b>set</b> /set/	ставити, поміщати
117	<b>sew</b> /səʊ/	<b>sewed</b> /səʊd/	<b>sewed</b> /səʊd/ <b>sewn</b> /səʊn/	шити
118	<b>shake</b> /ʃeɪk/	<b>shook</b> /ʃʊk/	<b>shaken</b> /ʃeɪkn/	трясти
119	<b>shave</b> /ʃeɪv/	<b>shaved</b> /ʃeɪvd/	<b>shaved</b> /ʃeɪvd/ <b>shaven</b> /ʃeɪvn/	голитися
120	<b>shear</b> /ʃɪə/	<b>sheared</b> /ʃɪəd/	<b>shorn</b> /ʃɔ:n/	стригти
121	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	<b>shed</b> /ʃed/	втрачати, лити (сльози)
122	<b>shine</b> /ʃaɪn/	<b>shone</b> /ʃəʊn/	<b>shone</b> /ʃəʊn/	світити(ся), сяяти
123	<b>shoe</b> /ʃu:/	<b>shod</b> /ʃɒd/	<b>shod</b> /ʃɒd/	взувати, підковувати
124	<b>shoot</b> /ʃu:t/	<b>shot</b> /ʃɒt/	<b>shot</b> /ʃɒt/	стріляти, проростати
125	<b>show</b> /ʃəʊ/	<b>showed</b> /ʃəʊd/	<b>shown</b> /ʃəʊn/	показувати
126	<b>shrink</b> /ʃrɪŋk/	<b>shrank</b> /ʃræŋk/	<b>shrunk</b> /ʃrʌŋk/	скорочуватись, давати усадку
127	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	<b>shut</b> /ʃʌt/	закривати(ся)
128	<b>sing</b> /sɪŋ/	<b>sang</b> /sæŋ/	<b>sung</b> /sʌŋ/	співати
129	<b>sink</b> /sɪŋk/	<b>sank</b> /sæŋk/	<b>sunk</b> /sʌŋk/	опускатися, тонути
130	<b>sit</b> /sɪt/	<b>sat</b> /sæt/	<b>sat</b> /sæt/	сидіти
131	<b>sleep</b> /sli:p/	<b>slept</b> /slept/	<b>slept</b> /slept/	спати
132	<b>slide</b> /slaɪd/	<b>slid</b> /slɪd/	<b>slid</b> /slɪd/	ковзати
133	<b>smell</b> /smel/	<b>smelt</b> /smelt/	<b>smelt</b> /smelt/	пахнути, нюхати
134	<b>sow</b> /səʊ/	<b>sowed</b> /səʊd/	<b>sowed</b> /səʊd/ <b>sown</b> /səʊn/	сіяти
135	<b>speak</b> /spi:k/	<b>spoke</b> /spəʊk/	<b>spoken</b> /spəʊkn/	говорити

136	<b>speed</b> /spi:d/	<b>ped</b> /ped/	<b>ped</b> /ped/	прискорюватись, поспішати
137	<b>spell</b> /spel/	<b>spelt</b> /spelt/ <b>spelled</b> /speld/	<b>spelt</b> /spelt/ <b>spelled</b> /speld/	писати, вимовляти по літерах
138	<b>spend</b> /spend/	<b>spent</b> /spent/	<b>spent</b> /spent/	витрачати
139	<b>spill</b> /spɪl/	<b>spilt</b> /spɪlt/ <b>spilled</b> /spɪld/	<b>spilt</b> /spɪlt/ <b>spilled</b> /spɪld/	розливати
140	<b>spin</b> /spɪn/	<b>spun</b> /spʌn/ <b>span</b> /spæn/	<b>spun</b> /spʌn/	прясти, плести
141	<b>spit</b> /spɪt/	<b>spat</b> /spæt/	<b>spat</b> /spæt/	плювати(ся)
142	<b>split</b> /splɪt/	<b>split</b> /splɪt/	<b>split</b> /splɪt/	розколювати(ся)
143	<b>spoil</b> /spɔɪl/	<b>spoilt</b> /spɔɪlt/ <b>spoiled</b> /spɔɪld/	<b>spoilt</b> /spɔɪlt/ <b>spoiled</b> /spɔɪld/	псувати
144	<b>spread</b> /spred/	<b>spread</b> /spred/	<b>spread</b> /spred/	розповсюджувати (ся)
145	<b>spring</b> /sprɪŋ/	<b>sprang</b> /spræŋ/	<b>sprung</b> /sprʌŋ/	стрибати, з'являтися
146	<b>stand</b> /stænd/	<b>stood</b> /stʊd/	<b>stood</b> /stʊd/	стояти
147	<b>steal</b> /sti:l/	<b>stole</b> /stəʊl/	<b>stolen</b> /stəʊln/	красти
148	<b>stick</b> /stɪk/	<b>stuck</b> /stʌk/	<b>stuck</b> /stʌk/	встромляти, приклеювати
149	<b>sting</b> /stɪŋ/	<b>stung</b> /stʌŋ/	<b>stung</b> /stʌŋ/	жалити(ся)
150	<b>stink</b> /stɪŋk/	<b>stank</b> /stæŋk/ <b>stunk</b> /stʌŋk/	<b>stunk</b> /stʌŋk/	смердіти
151	<b>strew</b> /stru:/	<b>strewed</b> /stru:d/	<b>strewn</b> /stru:n/ <b>strewed</b> /stru:d/	розкидати, посипати
152	<b>stride</b> /straɪd/	<b>strode</b> /strəʊd/	<b>stridden</b> /strɪdn/	крокувати
153	<b>strike</b> /straɪk/	<b>struck</b> /strʌk/	<b>struck</b> /strʌk/	бити, вдаряти(ся)
154	<b>string</b> /strɪŋ/	<b>strung</b> /strʌŋ/	<b>strung</b> /strʌŋ/	зав'язувати, шнурувати
155	<b>strive</b> /straɪv/	<b>strove</b> /strəʊv/	<b>striven</b> /strɪvn/	старатися, намагатися
156	<b>sweep</b> /swi:p/	<b>swept</b> /swept/	<b>swept</b> /swept/	нестися, підмітати
157	<b>swell</b> /swel/	<b>swelled</b> /sweld/	<b>swollen</b> /swəʊln/	надувати(ся), розростатися
158	<b>swim</b> /swɪm/	<b>swam</b> /swæm/	<b>swum</b> /swʌm/	плавати
159	<b>swing</b> /swɪŋ/	<b>swung</b> /swʌŋ/	<b>swung</b> /swʌŋ/	коливати(ся)
160	<b>take</b> /teɪk/	<b>took</b> /tʊk/	<b>taken</b> /teɪkn/	брати
161	<b>teach</b> /ti:tʃ/	<b>taught</b> /tɔ:t/	<b>taught</b> /tɔ:t/	вчити, навчати
162	<b>tear</b> /tɪə/	<b>tore</b> /tɔ:/	<b>torn</b> /tɔ:n/	рвати
163	<b>tell</b> /tel/	<b>told</b> /təʊld/	<b>told</b> /təʊld/	розповідати, казати

164	<b>think</b> /θɪŋk/	<b>thought</b> /θɔ:t/	<b>thought</b> /θɔ:t/	думати
165	<b>throw</b> /θrəʊ/	<b>threw</b> /θru:/	<b>thrown</b> /θrəʊn/	кидати
166	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	<b>thrust</b> /θrʌst/	штовхати, тикати, КОЛОТИ
167	<b>tread</b> /tred/	<b>trod</b> /trɒd/	<b>trodden</b> /trɒdn/	ступати, крокувати
168	<b>unbend</b> /ˈʌnˈbend/	<b>unbent</b> /ˈʌnˈbent/	<b>unbent</b> /ˈʌnˈbent/	розгинатися
169	<b>understand</b> /ˈʌndəˈstænd/	<b>understood</b> /ˈʌndəˈstʊd/	<b>understood</b> /ˈʌndəˈstʊd/	розуміти
170	<b>undertake</b> /ʌndəˈteɪk/	<b>undertook</b> /ʌndəˈtu:k/	<b>undertaken</b> /ʌndəˈteɪkn/	починати, братися за щось
171	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	<b>upset</b> /ʌpˈset/	перекидатися, засмучувати
172	<b>wake</b> /weɪk/	<b>woke</b> /wəʊk/ <b>waked</b> /weɪkt/	<b>woken</b> /wəʊkn/ <b>waked</b> /weɪkt/	прокидатися, будити
173	<b>wear</b> /weə/	<b>wore</b> /wɔ:/	<b>worn</b> /wɔ:n/	носити (одяг)
174	<b>weave</b> /wi:v/	<b>wove</b> /wəʊv/	<b>woven</b> /wəʊvn/	ткати, плести
175	<b>weep</b> /wi:p/	<b>wept</b> /wept/	<b>wept</b> /wept/	плакати
176	<b>wet</b> /wet/	<b>wet</b> /wet/ <b>wetted</b> /ˈwetɪd/	<b>wet</b> /wet/ <b>wetted</b> /ˈwetɪd/	змочувати, зволожувати
177	<b>win</b> /wɪn/	<b>won</b> /wʌn/	<b>won</b> /wʌn/	вигравати, перемагати
178	<b>wind</b> /waɪnd/	<b>wound</b> /waʊnd/	<b>wound</b> /waʊnd/	намотувати(ся), заводити
179	<b>withdraw</b> /wɪðˈdrɔ:/	<b>withdrew</b> /wɪðˈdru:/	<b>withdrawn</b> /wɪðˈdrɔ:n/	брати назад, відкликати
180	<b>wreak</b> /ri:k/	<b>wreaked</b> /ri:kt/ <b>wrought</b> /rɔ:t/	<b>wreaked</b> /ri:kt/ <b>wrought</b> /rɔ:t/	давати волю почуттям
181	<b>wring</b> /rɪŋ/	<b>wrung</b> /rʌŋ/	<b>wrung</b> /rʌŋ/	скручувати
182	<b>write</b> /raɪt/	<b>wrote</b> /rəʊt/	<b>written</b> /rɪtn/	писати

## REFERENCES AND FURTHER READINGS

1. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Beginner / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 128 p.
2. Clandfield Lindsay. Straightforward. Elementary / Lindsay Clandfield. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2006. – 160 p.
3. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Elementary / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 174 p.
4. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Pre-Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2006. – 175 p.
5. Cunningham Sarah. New Cutting Edge. Intermediate / Sarah Cunningham, Peter Moor. – Longman, 2005. – 175 p.
6. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 1. Beginner / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2006. – 166 p.
7. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 2. Elementary / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2007. – 168 p.
8. Evans Virginia. Enterprise Plus. Pre-Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2009. – 176 p.
9. Evans Virginia. Enterprise 4. Intermediate / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Express Publishing, 2011. – 198 p.
10. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 4 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2010. – 144 p.
11. Evans Virginia. New Round - Up 5 / Virginia Evans, Jenny Dooley. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2011. – 144 p.
12. Exam Excellence / [Danuta Gryca, Joanna Sosnowska, Russel Whitehead and others]. – Oxford University Press, 2012. – 200 p.
13. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Pre-Intermediate / Philip Kerr. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2004. – 160 p.
14. Kerr Philip. Straightforward. Intermediate / Philip Kerr, Ceri Jones. – Macmillan Publishers Ltd, 2005. – 168 p.
15. Longman Dictionary of Contemporary English, Fifth Edition. – Pearson Education, Longman, 2009. – 2082 p.



16. Mann Malcolm. Macmillan Exam Skills for Russia: Speaking and Listening / Malcolm Mann, Steve Taylore-Knowles. – MacMillan, 2010. – 167 p.
17. McCarthy Michael. English Vocabulary in Use. Upper-Intermediate and Advanced / Michael McCarthy, Felicity O'Dell. – Cambridge University Press, 2006. – 307 p.
18. Murphy Raymond. Essential Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2007. – 319 p.
19. Murphy Raymond. English Grammar in Use / Raymond Murphy. – Cambridge University Press, 2004. – 379 p.
20. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Beginner / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 120 p.
21. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Elementary / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 160 p.
22. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Pre-Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig, Paul Seligson. – Oxford University Press, 2005. – 160 p.
23. Oxenden Clive. New English File. Intermediate / Clive Oxenden, Christina Latham-Koenig. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 160 p.
24. Oxford Advanced Learner's Dictionary. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 1952 p.
25. Radchenko I.A. Notes on English phonetics with seven laboratory sessions. Introductory-Corrective Course / I.A.Radchenko. – Kiev, 1977. – 88 p.
26. Redman Stuart. English Vocabulary in Use. Pre-Intermediate and Intermediate / Stuart Redman. – Cambridge University Press, 2008. – 263 p.
27. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Beginner / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 144 p.
28. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Elementary / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2008. – 143 p.
29. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Pre-Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2009. – 143 p.
30. Soars Liz and John. Headway. New English Course. Intermediate / Liz and John Soars. – Oxford University Press, 2001. – 160 p.
31. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2011. – 384 p.

32. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 1 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 1986. – 182 p.
33. Thomson A.J. A Practical English Grammar: Exercises 2 / A.J.Thomson, A.V.Martinet. – Oxford University Press, 2010. – 208 p.
34. Vince Michael. First Certificate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2009. – 352 p.
35. Vince Michael. Intermediate Language Practice: English Grammar and Vocabulary / Michael Vince. – Macmillan Education, 2010. – 312 p.
36. Wellman Guy. The Heinemann ELT English Wordbuilder / Guy Wellman. – Macmillan Education, 1998. – 270 p.
37. Wells J.C. Longman Pronunciation Dictionary / J.C.Wells. – Longman, 2004. – 896 p.
38. Англо-український словник / Є.І.Гороть, Л.М.Коцюк, Л.К.Малімон, А.Б.Павлюк. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2006. – 1700 с.
39. Базовий тематичний англо-український словник студента-перекладача [уклад. Л.В.Козяревич, Н.Ю.Мароха] – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2000. – 98 с.
40. Верба Г.В. Довідник з граматики англійської мови / Г.В.Верба, Л.Г.Верба. – К.: Логос, 2007. – 352 с.
41. Гужва Т. Английский язык. Разговорные темы: [уч. пособ.] / Т.Гужва. – К.: Тандем, 1995. – 352 с.
42. Корчажжина О.М. Мои любимые звуки. Фонетико-орфографический справочник английского языка / О.М.Корчажжина, Р.М.Тихонова. – М.: Гуманитарный издательский центр ВЛАДОС, 1996. – 256 с.
43. Посібник з практики усного та писемного мовлення. Ч.І.: [навч. посіб.] / [В.В.Богдан, О.О.Галух, А.Б.Пожар, В.Б.Скрябіна]. – К.: ВЦ КНЛУ, 2004. – 228 с.
44. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 1: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
45. Практична граматика англійської мови з вправами. Том 2: [посібн. для студ. вищ. навч. закл.] / [Л.М.Черноватий, В.І.Карабан, І.Ю.Набокова та ін.]. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2005. – 288 с.
46. Прискорений курс англійської мови: [підруч.] / Л.Ю.Куліш, Є.О.Друянова, В.Л.Мотова, А.І.Мостицька. – К.: Чумацький Шлях, 2001. – 360 с.

47. Сборник упражнений по грамматике английского языка. Ч.1. Морфология / [В.Л.Каушанская, Р.Л.Ковнер, О.Н.Кожевникова, и др.]. – М.: Фирма Старт, 2000. – 320 с.
48. Симхович В.А. Практическая грамматика английского языка: [уч. пособ.] / В.А.Симхович. – Мн.: ИП «Экоперспектива», 1999. – 350 с.
49. Сліпченко Л.Д. Новий курс англійської мови. Ч.1.: [навч. посіб.] / Л.Д.Сліпченко, Г.С.Лисюк, М.І.Соловей. – К.: ВЦ КДЛУ, 2001. – 329 с.
50. Титова Н.Ю. English Articles. Англійські статті: [навч. посіб.] / Н.Ю.Титова, Л.М.Яценко. – Ірпінь: Національна академія ДПС України, 2007. – 157 с.
51. Українсько-англійський словник / Є.І.Гороть, С.В.Белова, Л.К.Малімон. – Вінниця: Нова Книга, 2009. – 1040 с.
52. Черноватий Л.М. Курс англійської мови для дорослих: [підруч.] / Л.М.Черноватий. – К.: Вид. ім. Олени Теліги, 1995. – 480 с.
53. Офіційний сайт British Council Україна [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.britishcouncil.org/uk/ukraine.htm>
54. Офіційний сайт Cambridge University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.cambridge.org>
55. Офіційний сайт Dinternal-Book. Англійська мова в Україні [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.dinternal.com.ua>
56. ISL Collective. Main page for sharing ESL and EFL teaching resources [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.islcollective.com>
57. Wikipedia, the free encyclopedia [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.en.wikipedia.org>
58. Офіційний сайт Headway – Oxford University Press [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.oup.com/elt/headway>
59. Наукова бібліотека НаУКМА [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.library.ukma.kiev.ua>
60. Электронный словарь АБВУД Lingvo x5 [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.lingvo.ru>
61. Словарь Мультитран [Електронний ресурс]. – Режим доступу: <http://www.multitrans.ru>

## CONTENTS

<b>ПЕРЕДМОВА .....</b>	<b>3</b>
<b>Module 1: Seasons and Weather.....</b>	<b>4</b>
Section I	
<b>Seasons and Weather. Natural Phenomena .....</b>	<b>4</b>
Section II	
<b>The Climate of Ukraine. Weather and Mood.....</b>	<b>39</b>
Section III	
<b>Weather Forecast and Weather Wisdom .....</b>	<b>56</b>
<b>Module 2: City and Transport .....</b>	<b>76</b>
Section I	
<b>City and Countryside .....</b>	<b>76</b>
Section II	
<b>Public Transportation .....</b>	<b>108</b>
Section III	
<b>Traffic Rules .....</b>	<b>139</b>
Section IV	
<b>Asking the Way, Giving the Directions .....</b>	<b>157</b>
<b>Grammar Reference .....</b>	<b>179</b>
<b>Appendix .....</b>	<b>240</b>
<b>References and Further Readings .....</b>	<b>247</b>

Підписано до друку 28.09.2021 р. Формат 60X84 1/16  
Папір друк. №1 Спосіб друку офсетний. Умовн. друк. арк. 19,26  
Умовн. фарбо-відб. 19,37 Обл.-вид. арк. 19,37  
Тираж 100. Зам. № 21 - 149

---

Видавничий центр КНЛУ  
Свідоцтво: серія ДК 1596 від 08.12.2003 р.

---

Віддруковано “Видавництво Ліра-К”  
03115, Київ, вул. Василя Стуса 22/1  
Свідоцтво про внесення до державного реєстру  
Серія ДК № 3981.